This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

RY STANFORD

MILITARY PUBLICATIONS.

Will be forwarded by mail, postpaid, on receipt of the price by the Publishers.

LANE
MEDICAL LIBRARY
SEAL OF THE LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY
SEMPER VIRENS
1885
LEVI COOPER LANE FUND

of the organization of the Cavalry Service among the principal nations of Europe; comprising England, France, Russia, Prussia, Austria, and Sardinia. By Geo. B. McClellan, Major-General U.S. Army. One vol. 12mo. Fully illustrated. $1.25.

Cavalry Tactics. Published by order of the War Department. First Part: School of the Trooper; of the Platoon and of the Squadron Dismounted. Second Part: Of the Platoon and of the Squadron Mounted. Third Part: Evolutions of a Regiment. Three vols. 18mo. $3.75.

Ordnance Manual. The Ordnance Manual, for the use of the Officers of the Army and others. Prepared under the direction of the War Department. Third edition. One vol. demi 8vo. Fully illustrated with Engravings on Steel. $2.50.

MILITARY PUBLICATIONS.

Evolutions of the Line. Field Manual of Evolutions of the Line, arranged in a tabular form, for the use of officers of the United States Infantry; being a sequel to the authorized United States Infantry Tactics. Translated, with adaptation to the United States Service, from the latest French authorities, by Captain Henry Coppée, late Instructor in the United States Military Academy at West Point. 18mo. 50 cents.

Manual of Battalion Drill. The Field Manual of Battalion Drill, containing all the movements and manœuvres in the School of the Battalion, with the commands arranged in tabular forms, and properly explained. Translated from the French, with adaptation to the United States Service, by Capt. Henry Coppée, late Instructor in the United States Military Academy at West Point. 18mo. 50 cents.

Longmore's Gunshot Wounds. A Treatise on Gunshot Wounds. By T. Longmore, Deputy Instructor of Hospitals, Professor of Military Surgery at Fort Pitt, Chatham. In two Parts.

Part I. Gunshot Wounds in General.
Part II. Gunshot Wounds in Special Regions of the Body.

One vol. 12mo.

The Soldier's Handy-Book. The Handy-Book for the U.S. Soldier on coming into Service. Containing a complete System of Instruction in the School of the Soldier; embracing the Manual for the Rifle and Musket, with a preliminary explanation of the Formation of a Battalion on Parade, &c. &c. Being a First Book or Introduction to the authorized United States Infantry Tactics. Complete in one vol., 128 pages, illustrated. 25 cents.

Ambulance Surgeon. The Ambulance Surgeon; or, Practical Observations on Gunshot Wounds. By T. W. Nunn, F.R.C.S., and A. M. Edwards. [In press.]

Military Encyclopædia. A comprehensive Encyclopædia of Military Science, Art, and History; containing a Complete Explanation of all Military Terms, with their Pronunciation, and Descriptions of the Principal Battles in the World's History. Fully illustrated. [In press.]

J. B. LIPPINCOTT & Co., Publishers,
PHILADELPHIA.

ANATOMY

OF THE

ARTERIES OF THE HUMAN BODY,

WITH THE

DESCRIPTIVE ANATOMY OF THE HEART.

PUBLISHERS' NOTICE.

In compliance with authority from the Surgeon-General of the United States Army, the present edition of Power's Anatomy of the Arteries is issued for the use of surgeons on the field of battle and in army hospitals.

Besides the excellent illustrations in the English edition (from drawings by Dr. B. Wills Richardson), numerous other engravings, executed under the inspection of one of our most distinguished American anatomists, have been inserted. In the general execution of the work, special reference has been had to making it of the most convenient form for the surgeon's use.

We believe that it will be found an indispensable *vade mecum* for those engaged in the delicate operations incident to military surgery.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

PHILADELPHIA, Sept. 1, 1862.

ANATOMY

OF THE

ARTERIES OF THE HUMAN BODY

DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL

WITH THE

DESCRIPTIVE ANATOMY OF THE HEART.

LANE LIBRARY

BY

JOHN HATCH POWER, M.D.

FELLOW, AND MEMBER OF COUNCIL, OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SURGEONS; PROFESSOR
OF DESCRIPTIVE AND PRACTICAL ANATOMY IN THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF
SURGEONS; SURGEON TO THE CITY OF DUBLIN HOSPITAL, ETC.

AUTHORIZED AND ADOPTED BY THE SURGEON-GENERAL OF
THE UNITED STATES ARMY FOR USE IN FIELD AND
GENERAL HOSPITALS.

LANE MEDICAL LIBRARY
7888
SAN FRANCISCO

PHILADELPHIA:
J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
1862.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1862, by
J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States in and for the
Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

P8
362.

PREFACE.

THE present work has been undertaken chiefly with the view of assisting the student whilst engaged in the study of Practical Anatomy, and of affording him such practical information in connection with the Anatomy of the Arterial System as may be of advantage to him long after his studies have been completed.

For the purpose of effecting these desirable objects, I have endeavored to simplify as much as possible the anatomical details, and to bring together such material facts in relation to the operations upon the principal arteries of the body, as may lead to correct conclusions relative to the treatment of the various accidents and diseases to which these vessels are exposed.

The recent alterations which have been made by some of the licensing bodies in these kingdoms have rendered their examinations more demonstrative in their character than heretofore; and I trust it will be found that, in the arrangements which I have adopted, the student will receive such assistance in this respect as the improved mode of examination would appear to render necessary.

I have not overlooked the fact that there are many practitioners, particularly those in rural districts, who do not possess any opportunity of refreshing their memories upon anatomical points by actual dissection; and I am not without hope that to such the present volume may afford some useful hints as to the relations of those blood-vessels which, from time to time, may become the subjects of their operations.

The Illustrations have been executed from drawings made expressly for the work by Mr. B. WILLS RICHARDSON, Examiner in Anatomy and Physiology in the Royal College of Surgeons, and late Demonstrator of Anatomy in the Carmichael School of Medicine. The elevated position to which this gentleman has been raised in the College, and which he continues to fill with so much honor, sufficiently indicates his reputation as an Anatomist. The accurate and beautiful plates of Tiedeman and Cloquet, of Professor Quain and Maclise, have been rendered available for the illustrated portion of the work.*

I cheerfully acknowledge my obligations to the labors of the late Professor Harrison, Professor Alcock, and particularly to those of my former colleague in the Carmichael School of Medicine, the late Dr. Flood. In the year 1850 I brought out a new edition of this last gentleman's work upon the arteries, which has for some time since been out of print, but of which the principal part has been embodied in the present work.

---

* Additional illustrations have been inserted in the American edition.

The greater number of the illustrations have been executed by Mr. Oldham, of this city, and the remainder by Messrs. Butterworth and Heath, of London. It would be superfluous to say any thing here in praise of Mr. Oldham as an artist: his talents are so well known and valued as to render such commendation upon my part unnecessary. Messrs. Butterworth and Heath are also well known as artists of considerable merit and high standing in their profession.

JOHN HATCH POWER.

95 HARCOURT STREET, DUBLIN,
October, 1860.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

PREFACE........ 5

DESCRIPTIVE ANATOMY OF THE HEART........ 19
Preliminary Directions........ 19
Pericardium........ 20
General Description of the Heart........ 22
External Surface........ 24
Right Auricle........ 27
Tuberculum Loweri........ 28
Fossa Ovalis........ 28
Foramen of Galen or Botal........ 29
Annulus Vieussenii........ 29
Great Eustachian Valve........ 29
Lesser Eustachian Valve........ 30
Openings of the Venæ Cavæ........ 30
Venæ Thebesianæ........ 32
Left Auricle........ 32
Right Ventricle........ 34
Infundibulum........ 34
Carneæ Columnæ........ 34
Chordæ Tendineæ........ 34
Tricuspid Valve........ 35
Valvular Septum of Lieutaud, of Right Ventricle........ 35
Functions of the Tricuspid Valve........ 36
Mr. Hunter's Views........ 36
Mr. Adams's Views........ 36
Mr. King's Safety-Valve........ 37
Left Ventricle........ 39

DESCRIPTIVE ANATOMY OF THE HEART (continued). PAGE

Mitral Valve of Vesalius.......... 39
Valvular Septum of Lieutaud, of Left Ventricle.......... 39
Zonæ Tendinosæ.......... 40
Opinions of Bouillaud.......... 41
Relative Capacities of the Cavities of the Heart.......... 41
Structure of the Heart.......... 43
Muscular fibres of the Heart.......... 43
Mr. Searle on the arrangement of the Muscular fibres of the Heart.......... 46
Endocardium.......... 48
Arteries of the Heart.......... 49
Posterior or right Coronary Artery.......... 49
Anterior or left Coronary Artery.......... 50
Veins of the Heart.......... 50
Greater and Lesser Coronary Veins.......... 51
Vena Galeni.......... 51
Nerves of the Heart.......... 51
Superior Cardiac Nerve.......... 52
Middle Cardiac Nerve.......... 52
Inferior Cardiac Nerve.......... 52
Cardiac Plexuses.......... 53
Great Cardiac Plexus.......... 53
Superficial or Anterior Plexus.......... 53
Deep or Posterior Plexus.......... 53
Cardiac Ganglion of Wrisberg.......... 53
Coronary Plexuses.......... 53
Lymphatics of the Heart.......... 53

PULMONARY ARTERY.......... 54
Ductus Arteriosus.......... 54
Right Pulmonary Artery.......... 56
Left Pulmonary Artery.......... 56
Dr. Hope on the position of the Heart and its great Vessels 56

AORTA.......... 58
Arch of Aorta.......... 58
Anterior or Ascending portion of the Arch of Aorta.......... 58
Connection of the Aorta with the Left Ventricle.......... 59
Sinuses of Valsalva.......... 59
Great Sinus of the Aorta.......... 61

AORTA (continued).

PAGE
Middle Portion of the Arch of the Aorta.......................... 62
Posterior or Descending portion of the Arch of the Aorta... 64
Practical Deductions.. 65
Development of the Aorta.. 66

BRANCHES OF THE ARCH OF THE AORTA.............................. 67

ARTERIA INNOMINATA.. 67
Veins related to the Arteria Innominata.......................... 68
Ligature of the Arteria Innominata, with tabular view....... 71
Professor Porter's case.. 71
Modes of Operation... 72

COMMON CAROTID ARTERIES... 75
First or inferior Stage of the right Common Carotid......... 76
First or inferior Stage of the left Common Carotid........... 77
Veins related to the Thoracic portion of the left Carotid.... 78
Second or superior Stage of the Common Carotid Artery... 79
Veins of the Neck... 82
Ligature of the Common Carotid Artery........................... 83
The Hunterian operation... 83
Brasdor and Dessault's operation................................. 83
Wardrop's operation.. 84
Operation in case of wound or ulceration........................ 85
Hebenstreit's case.. 85
Mr. Abernethy's case... 85
Mr. Ellis's case... 85
Sir A. Cooper first tied the Artery for Aneurism.............. 86
Modes of the operation... 87
Operation, in its inferior Stage.................................. 87
Sedillot's operation.. 88
Operation, in its superior Stage.................................. 89
Bifurcation of the Common Carotid................................ 90

EXTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY.. 90
Ligature of the External Carotid Artery......................... 92
Branches of the External Carotid................................. 93
Superior Thyroid Artery.. 93
Branches of the Superior Thyroid Artery......................... 94
Lingual Artery... 96

EXTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY (continued). PAGE
Branches of the Lingual Artery 98
Accompanying Veins 99
Operation of Tying the Lingual Artery 99
Wounds of he Ranine Artery 100
Facial Artery 100
Facial Vein 102
Branches of the Facial Artery 103
Occipital Artery 107
Branches of the Occipital Artery 109
Posterior Auricular Artery 110
Pharyngea Ascendens Artery 111
Branches of Pharyngea Ascendens Artery 112
Transversalis Faciei Artery 112
Superficial Temporal Artery 113
Branches of the Superficial Temporal Artery 113
Internal Maxillary Artery 114
Branches of the Internal Maxillary Artery 118

INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY 125
Branches of the Internal Carotid Artery 129
Ophthalmic Artery 130
Branches of the Ophthalmic Artery 131
Cerebral Branches of the Internal Carotid Artery 133
Rete Mirabile of Galen 140

SUBCLAVIAN ARTERIES 140
Ligature of the Subclavian Artery in the first Stage 147
Tabular View of Operation 147
Professor Colles's case 147
Mr. Hayden's case 147
Mr. O'Reilly's case 150
Mode of Performing the Operation 153
Ligature of Left Subclavian in its first Stage 154
Dr. Rodgers's case 155
Ligature of Subclavian Artery in its second Stage 158
Ligature of Subclavian Artery in its third Stage 159
Application of the Distal Ligature on the Subclavian and Carotid Arteries 161
Mr. Wardrop's Operation 162

SUBCLAVIAN ARTERIES (continued).

PAGE
Mr. Wickham's Operation........ 163
Dr. Hobart's Operation........ 163
Branches of the Subclavian Artery........ 166
Vertebral Artery........ 166
Branches of the Vertebral Artery........ 168
Basilar Artery........ 171
Branches of the Basilar Artery........ 171
Circle of Willis........ 173
Internal Mammary Artery........ 174
Branches of the Internal Mammary Artery........ 175
Thyroid Axis........ 177
Branches of the Thyroid Axis........ 178
Cervicalis Profunda Artery........ 181
Superior Intercostal Artery........ 182

AXILLA........ 183

AXILLARY ARTERY........ 186
Ligature of the Axillary Artery........ 189
Ligature of Axillary Artery in its first Stage........ 189
Mr. Hodgson's Method........ 190
Manec's Method........ 192
Ligature of Axillary Artery in its second Stage........ 193
Ligature of Axillary Artery in its third Stage........ 193
Rupture or Laceration of Axillary Artery........ 194
Mr. Adams's case........ 194
Branches of the Axillary Artery........ 197
Acromial or Thoracica Acromialis Artery........ 197
Thoracica Suprema Artery........ 198
Thoracica Alaris Artery........ 198
Thoracica Inferior, or External Mammary Artery........ 198
Infra or Subscapular Artery........ 199
Posterior Circumflex Artery........ 199
Anterior Circumflex Artery........ 200
Scapular Anastomosis........ 200
Veins of the Arm and Fore-Arm........ 202
Venæsection........ 202
Aneurismal Varix........ 204
Varicose Aneurism........ 204

PAGE
BRACHIAL ARTERY 204
    Brachial Nerves 205
    Ligature of the Brachial Artery 207
    Aneurisms of the Brachial Artery 207
    Treatment of the various Forms of Aneurism of the Brachial Artery 209
    Compression of the Brachial Artery 209
    Modes of Operation 213
    Branches of the Brachial Artery 216
    Superior Profunda Artery 216
    Arteria Nutritia 216
    Inferior Profunda Artery 217
    Anastomotic Artery 217
    Muscular Branches 217

ULNAR ARTERY 218
    Branches of the Ulnar Artery 218
    Anterior Ulnar Recurrent Artery 219
    Posterior Ulnar Recurrent Artery 219
    Common Interosseal Artery 219
    Muscular Branches 220
    Anterior Carpal Branch 221
    Posterior Carpal Branch 221
    Communicans Profunda Artery 221
    Superficial Palmar Artery 221
    Superficial Palmar Arch and Branches 221
    Operation of Tying the Ulnar Artery 223

RADIAL ARTERY 224
    Branches of the Radial Artery 227
    Radial Recurrent Artery 227
    Muscular Branches 227
    Superficialis Volæ 227
    Anterior Carpal Artery 227
    Posterior Carpal Artery 227
    Dorsalis Pollicis 229
    Metacarpal Artery 229
    Radialis Indicis Artery 229
    Princeps Pollicis Artery 229
    Palmaris Profunda Artery 229

RADIAL ARTERY (continued).

PAGE
Deep Palmar Arch........ 230
Ligature of the Radial Artery........ 231

DESCENDING AORTA........ 233

THORACIC AORTA........ 233
Branches of the Thoracic Aorta........ 235

ABDOMINAL AORTA........ 238
Ligature of the Abdominal Aorta........ 239
Tabular View of Operation........ 240
Sir A. Cooper's case........ 240
Mr. James's case........ 241
Dr. Murray's case........ 242
Dr. Monteiro's case........ 247
Mr. South's case........ 247
Branches of the Abdominal Aorta........ 248
Cœliac Axis........ 249
Gastric, or Coronaria Ventriculi Artery........ 250
Hepatic Artery........ 250
Circulation of the Blood in the Liver........ 258
Umbilical Vein in the Fœtus........ 253
Vena Portæ in the Fœtus........ 254
Source of the Biliary Secretion........ 254
Kiernan's Observations on the Liver........ 255
Todd and Bowman's Opinions........ 258
Splenic Artery........ 258
Structure of the Spleen........ 260
Superior Mesenteric Artery........ 261
Branches of the Superior Mesenteric Artery........ 262
Inferior Mesenteric Artery........ 264
Branches of the Inferior Mesenteric Artery........ 264
Proper Phrenic Arteries........ 266
Middle Capsular Arteries........ 267
Renal Arteries........ 267
Renal Veins........ 269
Arrangement of the Vessels in the Kidney........ 270
Spermatic Arteries........ 272
Lumbar Arteries........ 275
Middle Sacral Artery........ 276

PAGE
Common or Primitive Iliac Arteries 276
  Ligature of the Common Iliac Artery 278
  Mr. Mott's case 280
  Sir P. Crampton's case 282
  Mr. Hey's case 283

Internal Iliac Artery 284
  Internal Iliac Artery in the Fœtus 284
  Ligature of the Internal Iliac Artery 286
  Dr. Steven's and Mr. Atkinson's cases 286
  Mr. White's case 286
  Branches of the Internal Iliac Artery 287
  Glutæal Artery 288
  Operation of Tying the Glutæal Artery 289
  Mr. Lizars's method 289
  Mr. Carmichael's case 289
  Sciatic, or Ischiatic Artery 291
  Branches of the Sciatic or Ischiatic Artery 292
  Obturator Artery 293
  Branches of the Obturator Artery 294
  Anatomy of the Ano-Perineal Region 294
  Lateral Operation for Lithotomy 306
  Internal Pudic Artery 309
  Branches of the Internal Pudic Artery 313
  External Hæmorrhoidal Artery 313
  Long Perineal Artery 313
  Transverse Artery of the Perineum 313
  Artery of the Bulb 314
  Artery of the Corpus Cavernosum 314
  Dorsal Artery of the Penis 316
  Ilio Lumbar Artery 317
  Lateral Sacral Artery 319
  Middle Hæmorrhoidal Artery 319
  Vesical Artery 319
  Umbilical Artery 320
  Uterine Artery 320
  Vaginal Artery 321

External Iliac Artery 321
  Ligature of the External Iliac Artery 322

EXTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY (continued). PAGE
- Mr. Abernethy's operation.. 322
- Sir A. Cooper's operation. 323
- Branches of the External Iliac Artery 325
- Epigastric Artery 327
- Internal Circumflexa Ilii Artery 328

FEMORAL ARTERY. 328
- Femoral Vein. 335
- Operations on the Femoral Artery 336
- Professor Porter's Operation. 337
- Compression on the Femoral Artery 341
- Mr. Todd's cases 341
- Mr. M'Coy's case 342
- Dr. Hutton's case. 342
- Dr. Cusack's case 343
- Dr. Bellingham's cases. 343
- Branches of the Femoral Artery 345
- Superficial Epigastric Artery 345
- External Pudic Arteries.. 345
- Superficial Circumflexa Ilii Artery 345
- Muscular Branches. 346
- Anastomotica Magna Artery 346
- Profunda Femoral Artery 346
- External Circumflex Artery 347
- Internal Circumflex Artery 348
- Perforating Arteries 350

POPLITEAL SPACE 351

POPLITEAL ARTERY 354
- Ligature of the Popliteal Artery 356
- Branches of the Popliteal Artery 358
- Articular Arteries 358

ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY 359
- Ligature of the Anterior Tibial Artery 361
- Branches of the Anterior Tibial Artery 362
- Tibial Recurrent... 362
- Muscular Branches. 362
- Internal Malleolar Artery 362

ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY (continued).

PAGE
External Malleolar Artery.. 862
Tarsal Artery.. 863
Metatarsal Artery 863
Dorsalis Pollicis.. 864
Ramus Communicans... 864

POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.. 864
Ligature of the Posterior Tibial Artery........................ 866
Branches of the Posterior Tibial Artery........................ 867
Muscular Arteries.. 867
Nutritious Artery.. 867
Peroneal Artery.. 867
Ligature of the Peroneal Artery.................................... 868
Internal Plantar Artery.. 870
External Plantar Artery.. 870
Branches of the External Plantar Artery........................ 871

SOME OF THE PRINCIPAL VARIETIES OR ANOMALIES OF THE ARTERIES.. 874

ANATOMY

OF THE

HEART AND ARTERIES.

DESCRIPTIVE ANATOMY OF THE HEART.

PRELIMINARY DIRECTIONS.

For the purpose of exhibiting the heart contained within its envelope the pericardium, together with the great vessels connected with it, particularly the aorta, the student is advised, in the first instance, to make a longitudinal incision through the abdominal parietes of about six inches in length, the centre being situated at the umbilicus: the bifurcation of the abdominal aorta should then be exposed, and a full-sized pipe of the injecting apparatus inserted from below upwards into this vessel, about two inches above the origin of the common iliac arteries; the injection should then be directed upwards, towards the heart. By this method the thoracic aorta, the arch of the aorta, its relation to the sternum, together with its other numerous important relations, will be best seen, whilst the arteries of the head, neck, and upper extremities will be much better filled than if the subject were injected from the ordinary situation, the arch of the aorta. The following dissection should now be performed: a perpendicular incision should be made, commencing from below the centre of the clavicle, and passing across the second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs of the left side: these bones should then be sawn through, a little in front of their centres, and the cartilage of the first rib of the same side divided. A second perpendicular incision should next be made through the integument covering the sternum, and then through the bone, keeping a little to the right side of the middle line. The lower extremities of these two incisions should now be connected by means of an oblique incision, and the parts included within them should be next raised off carefully from below upwards, and then forcibly turned backwards upon the front of the neck. Whilst making this dissection, the soft parts lying behind the divided portions of the ribs and sternum should be carefully detached from these bones. The mammary artery is particularly liable to injury in this stage of the dissection. By adopting the plan now recommended, the student will be able to expose the pericardium, and to observe its relation to the parietes of the thorax, whilst the relations of the arch of the aorta, the proximity of this vessel to the right side of the sternum, and to the cartilage of the second rib, at its junction with the former bone, will attract his attention. The same plan of dissection may afterwards be pursued at the right side, with this difference, that the cartilage of the first rib should not be disturbed, in order that the dissection of the lower portion of the neck at that side, together with the dissection of the arteria innominata, may be pursued with advantage.

THE PERICARDIUM.

The pericardium, properly speaking, is a specimen of what Bichat calls a fibro-serous membrane, consisting of two layers of membrane, an external or fibrous, and an internal or serous layer. It is the immediate envelope of the heart, and of certain portions of the great vessels entering into and issuing from it. Its form is somewhat conoid; the *apex* corresponds to the large vessels in immediate connection with the heart, in which situation the fibrous layer of the sac may be seen extended over them, and identified with their external tunic: the *base* may be seen resting on the cordiform tendon of the diaphragm, to which it adheres so firmly in the adult as to be with great difficulty separated from it; it also rests on a small triangular portion of the fleshy fibres of the diaphragm, to the left of the tendon, from which it may very easily be separated. In the fœtus the pericardium is but loosely connected with the tendon and fleshy fibres of the diaphragm.

The anterior surface of the pericardium is covered by the thymus gland in the fœtus, and in the adult by a considerable quantity of loose areolar tissue, which occupies the situation of the thymus gland; by the internal and anterior portion of each lung and pleura, and by the sternum: and inclining towards the left side inferiorly, we find lying in front of it also the cartilages of the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs. The sides of the pericardium are over-lapped by the lungs, and are covered by the pleuræ, the phrenic nerve being interposed at the left, and thrown more anteriorly, so as to bend over the pericardium at a point corresponding to the apex of the heart. Its posterior surface lies in front of the posterior mediastinum and the parts contained within this region, more particularly the œsophagus and descending aorta. An incision may now be made through the anterior part of this envelope, when its internal or serous layer will be exposed: this consists of two portions,—the one lining the inner surface of the fibrous layer, and the other, with which the former is perfectly continuous, surrounding the heart. The continuity of these two portions of the serous membrane may be demonstrated, in the first place, by tracing that lining the inner surface of the fibrous layer from off that structure, to form a cylindrical sheath which encloses both the aorta and pulmonary artery; and secondly, by following the course which that membrane takes in forming partial investments for the two venæ cavæ and the four pulmonary veins. These two portions of the serous layer, viz., that lining the fibrous layer of the pericardium, and that lining the exterior of the heart itself, are perfectly continuous with each other, thus constituting a completely shut sac, so that the vessels going to, or issuing from, the heart, do not perforate the serous membrane, but receive coverings more or less perfect from it.

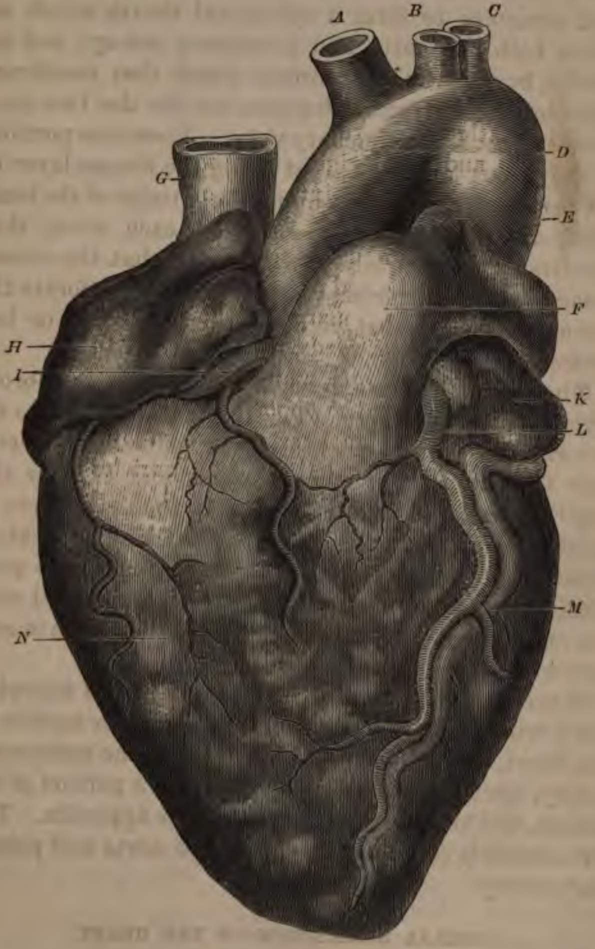
Nine openings have been enumerated in the fibrous layer of the pericardium, viz., one for the aorta, two for the right and left branches of the pulmonary artery, four for the four pulmonary veins, and two for the superior and inferior venæ cavæ. In the fœtus there is another for the ductus arteriosus. Strictly speaking, these are not openings in the fibrous layer of the pericardium, for this structure becomes incorporated with the external tunic of the vessels where they come in contact with it.

When the pericardium has been opened, the following parts will be exposed:—the anterior superior surface of the heart, the two venæ cavæ, the aorta, the pulmonary artery, the right auricular appendix and a portion of the auricle, and the tip of the left auricular appendix. The left auricle is concealed chiefly by the aorta and pulmonary artery.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE HEART.

The HEART is a hollow muscular organ of a somewhat conical form, consisting of four chambers, grouped to-

Fig. 1.—Anterior View of the Heart.



A, Arteria Innominata. B, Left Carotid Artery. C, Left Subclavian Artery. D, Aorta. E, Remains of Ductus Arteriosus. F, Pulmonary Artery. G, Superior or Descending Vena Cava. H, Right Auricle. I, Posterior or Right Coronary Artery. K, Left Auricular Appendix. L, Anterior or Left Coronary Artery. M, Left Coronary Vein. N. Anterior surface of Right Ventricle.

gether so as to form an individual mass; two of these are called the auricles, the other two the ventricles. The *apex* of the heart is formed (in the adult) by the extremity of the left ventricle; and looks downwards, forwards, and to the left side, towards the interval between the fifth and sixth ribs: in many subjects it is curved a little backwards. The *base* is turned upwards, backwards, and to the right side, and corresponds to the right side of the fifth, sixth, seventh, and, sometimes, partly to the eighth, dorsal vertebræ. The *posterior inferior surface* is flat and triangular, and the *anterior superior surface* convex and more extensive: these surfaces are separated by two margins: the *anterior margin* is thin, and looks downwards, forwards, and to the right side: the *posterior margin*, which is shorter but considerably thicker, looks in the opposite direction.

The chief bulk of the heart is formed by the ventricles, particularly by the left; and the auricles seem like appendages situated at its base.

The *two auricles* are situated at the base of the ventricles, and towards its posterior part. When injected, and viewed as one, they form a crescentic mass, the concavity of which looks forwards and rather upwards, and embraces within it the aorta and pulmonary artery. The convexity looks backwards and somewhat downwards. The two extremities of the crescent are formed by the tips of the right and left auricular appendices.

The *two ventricles* taken together form a conical mass, which gives the peculiar form to the heart; it is obliquely situated, the apex being directed downwards, forwards, and to the left side; the base upwards, backwards, and to the right side.

The anterior superior surface of this mass is convex, and presents a fissure which runs from the base to the right side of the apex; this fissure lodges the anterior coronary artery and vein, and a quantity of fat, and divides the anterior surface into a right and left portion: the latter is formed by the anterior surface of the left ventricle, and the former, which is much larger, is formed by the anterior surface of the right ventricle. In this latter situation, Dr. Baillie has described a white opaque spot, like a thickening of the serous layer covering the heart: it is sometimes not broader than a sixpence; at other times broader than a crown piece; "it is so very common, that it can hardly be considered as a disease."*

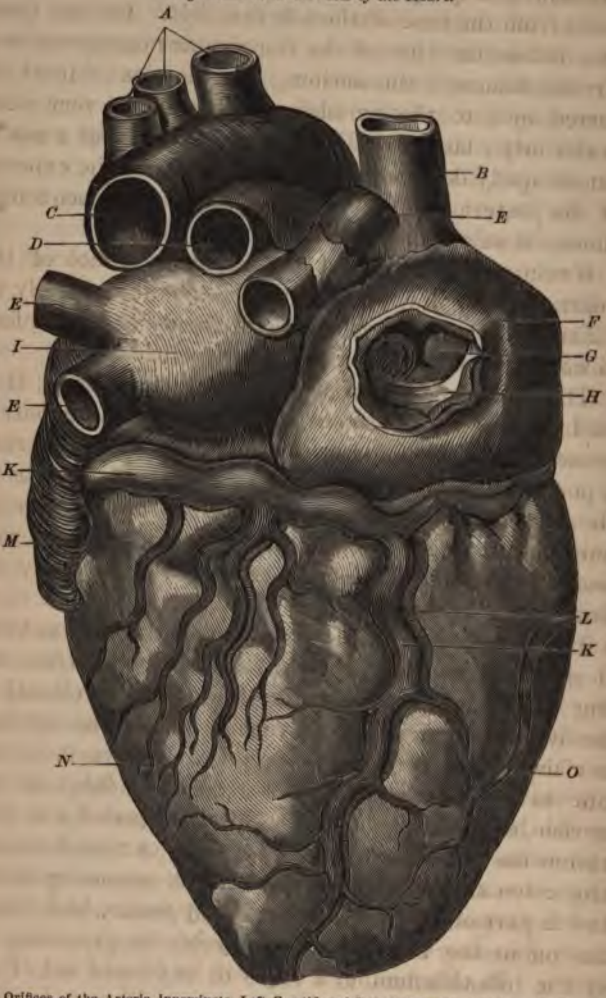
The posterior inferior surface of the ventricular mass, which is less extensive than the superior, is nearly flat, and rests on the superior surface of the diaphragm, with the interposition of the base of the pericardium. This surface also is divided into two portions of unequal size by a fissure running from the base to the right side of the apex, and containing within it the posterior coronary artery and vein, and some fatty tissue: the larger portion is formed by the left ventricle, the remaining portion by the right.

The anterior margin of the ventricular mass is thin, longer than the posterior, and formed by the right ventricle: the posterior margin is thick and convex, and is partly lodged, with the intervention of the pericardium, in a depression of the left lung, and is formed by the left ventricle. The apex is formed, in the adult, entirely by the left ventricle; and the base presents for examination the following parts: anteriorly, a funnel-shaped projection of the right ventricle which passes upwards, and is termed the *infundibulum*, and from which arises the pulmonary artery: on a posterior plane, concealed by the infundibulum, and more to the right side than

---

* Baillie's Morbid Anatomy, by Wardrop, p. 54.

Fig. 2.—Posterior View of the Heart.



A, Orifices of the Arteria Innominata, Left Carotid and Left Subclavian Arteries. B, Superior Vena Cava. C, Orifice of the Aorta. D. Orifice of the Pulmonary Artery. E, E, E, Orifices of the Pulmonary Veins. F, Right Auricle. G, Orifice of the Inferior Vena Cava. H, Eustachian Valve. I, Left Auricle. K, Posterior Coronary Vein. L, Posterior Coronary Artery. M, Left Auricular Appendix. N, Posterior part of Left Ventricle. O Posterior part of Right Ventricle.

the orifice of the pulmonary artery, is the origin of the aorta from the base of the left ventricle. Behind these two orifices the base of the ventricular mass presents a circular fissure, circumscribing that portion of it which corresponds to the auricles: this fissure is very deep posteriorly: lastly, the base of the ventricular mass is cut obliquely downwards and backwards at the expense of the posterior inferior surface, which is consequently shorter than the anterior superior surface.

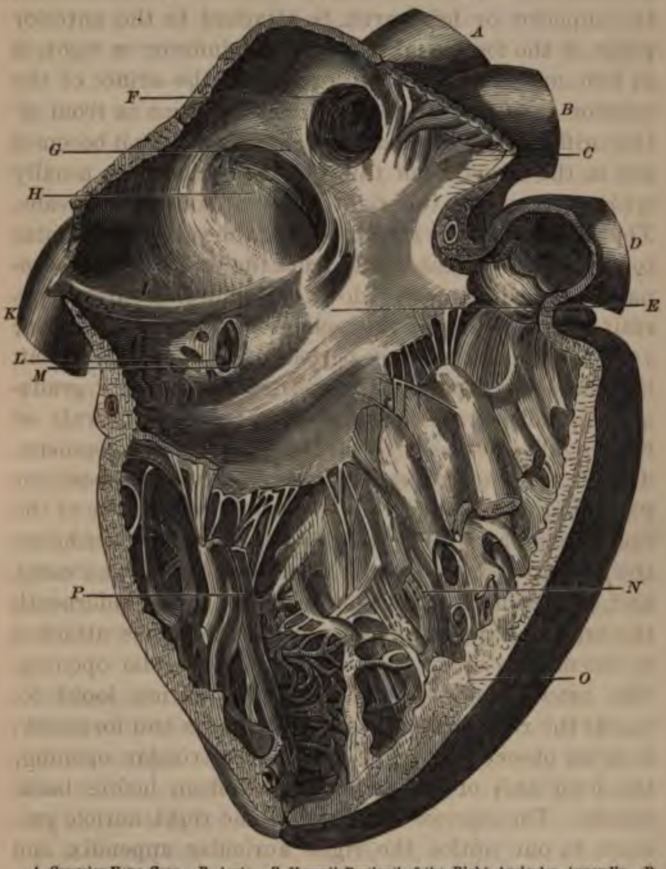
Having thus described the external surface of the heart, we may now proceed to consider individually its chambers, which are, as we have already observed, four in number: two auricles and two ventricles.

The RIGHT AURICLE is of an irregular shape; it is said to possess the form of the segment of an ovoid: it presents for examination three walls, an antero-external, a posterior situated behind and between the orifices of the two venæ cavæ, and an internal or the septum auricularum: and two extremities, an anterior inferior, and a superior. The *antero-external wall* is easily defined, as it is formed by all that portion of the right auricle which may be seen on opening the pericardium; it is convex, and presents several dark lines corresponding to the intervals between the musculi pectinati, to be described hereafter. In order to see the internal surface of the auricle, we should make two incisions; one in a vertical direction through the front of the auricle, connecting the orifices of the superior and inferior venæ cavæ; the other in a slightly curved direction, the convexity directed downwards, commencing at the lower part of the right auricular appendix, and terminating in the superior extremity of the preceding incision. In this manner a flap will be formed out of the external wall of the auricle; and we will now have an opportunity of examining the structure of this wall.

Its muscular fibres are arranged in fasciculi, somewhat resembling the teeth of a comb; they have been therefore termed the *musculi pectinati*: in the intervals between these fasciculi, the lining membrane of the interior of the auricle, and the serous membrane covering the heart, are almost in immediate contact. A tubercle has been described as projecting from the back part of the *posterior wall* into the auricle, called the *tuberculum Loweri.* If we examine the entrance of the great veins into the auricle, we will observe that the superior cava passes downwards, forwards, and to the left side; and the inferior cava, upwards, backwards, and to the left side: we can readily understand, therefore, that the portion of the auricle between their orifices must of necessity be salient towards the interior of this cavity; this projecting part of the auricle placed between the openings of these two great veins, forms the *tubercle of Lower.* The use ascribed to it, is, to direct the blood towards the centre of the auricle, and thus prevent the currents of the superior and inferior venæ cavæ from directly opposing each other.

The *internal wall* constitutes the *septum* between the two auricles; it is obliquely situated, so that its right surface, which we are at present examining, looks also a little forwards. On its lower portion it presents a well-marked depression, somewhat oval in form, called the *fossa ovalis:* it is bounded by two well-defined ridges or pillars, one on either side; that on the right side being also placed posteriorly; that on the left, anteriorly: the latter is much stronger than that on the right side, and it separates the fossa ovalis from the opening of the coronary vein, and gives attachment to the left cornu of the great Eustachian valve. These two pillars are continuous with one another superiorly, so as to form an arch over the fossa ovalis, the concavity of which is directed downwards. This prominent margin which bounds the fossa, has received the name of the *annulus Vieussenii.* It is not, however, correctly speaking, an annular projection, the pillars not being joined together inferiorly. That portion of the septum included between the pillars, and which may be called the *floor of the fossa ovalis,* contributes to form a valvular opening between the auricles in the intra-uterine period of life. This opening has been called the foramen ovale, or *foramen of Botal,* although it had been previously described by *Galen.* The upper part of the floor projects into the left auricle above the point of junction of the pillars of the fossa, and there forms an arch, the concavity of which is directed upwards; this can be seen only from the interior of the left auricle. Before the second month of intra-uterine life, this valvular apparatus does not exist; there is in fact at this period a direct communication between the auricles: at the end of the second month, it begins to be developed; and at the seventh month, the superior margin of what we have called the floor of the fossa ovalis, ascends sufficiently high into the left auricle, to cut off the direct aperture of communication; leaving however an oblique or valvular channel between the auricles. This aperture of communication is, in the normal state, closed in the adult by the adherence of the upper edge of the valve to that surface of the annulus of Vieussens which looks towards the left auricle. Related to the opening of the inferior vena cava and to the fossa ovalis, we observe the great *Eustachian valve;* it presents a crescentic form: the concave margin, which is generally well defined, is free, and looks upwards and towards the right shoulder; the convex margin is not at all so well defined, being in fact continuous with the lining membrane of the anterior wall of the inferior cava, at that spot where this vein and the auricle become united with each other: this margin of the valve looks downwards and towards the left side. The valve has two cornua or extremities: one, the superior or left cornu, is attached to the anterior pillar of the fossa ovalis; the other, inferior or right, is at first united to the anterior wall of the orifice of the inferior cava, and then sends an expansion in front of this orifice round towards its right side, where it becomes lost in the structure of this portion of the vein, usually without reaching the right pillar of the fossa ovalis. The superior or left attachment of the valve contributes to separate the fossa ovalis from the orifice of the coronary vein, whilst lower down we find this valve separating the opening of this vein from that of the inferior vena cava. In the early periods of fœtal development, the valve is proportionally well marked; but it gradually diminishes as the valve of the foramen ovale or fossa ovalis increases towards its perfect development. The *Lesser Eustachian Valve,* or Valvula Thebesii, or valve of the coronary vein, is a small duplicature of the lining membrane of the vein and auricle: it arises below the anterior attachment of the greater Eustachian valve, and, separating from it as it descends, turns underneath the orifice of the coronary vein, and becomes attached to the margin of the right auriculo-ventricular opening. The *anterior inferior extremity* of the auricle looks towards the right ventricle, *i. e.* downwards and forwards: in it we observe the right auriculo-ventricular opening, the long axis of which is directed from before backwards. The *superior extremity* of the right auricle presents to our notice the right auricular appendix, and the opening of the superior vena cava, with a smooth surface situated between these two parts: the *right auricular appendix* is triangular in its form, and situated between the aorta and right ventricle: its base is con-

Fig. 3.—Interior of Right Auricle and Ventricle.



A, Superior Vena Cava. B, Aorta. C, Musculi Pectinati of the Right Auricular Appendix. D, Pulmonary Artery. E, Interior of the Right Auricle. F, Opening of the Superior Vena Cava. G, Annulus of Vieussens. H, Fossa Ovalis. I, Eustachian Valve. K, Inferior Vena Cava. L, Opening of the Coronary Vein. M, Valve of Thebesius. N, Cavity of Right Ventricle. O, Section of the Right Ventricle at the septum. P, Carneæ Columnæ.

tinuous with the auricle, without any line of demarcation: its apex is turned transversely towards the left side: posteriorly it is concave, and over-laps the aorta: its interior is strongly marked by musculi pectinati. The *superior cava* takes a direction downwards, forwards, and to the left side; its orifice is situated on a plane anterior to that of the inferior cava; two prominent muscular bands bound this opening: one of them separates it from the orifice of the inferior cava; the other, not so well marked, is situated on the left side, and separates the orifice of the vein from the auricular appendix. The *inferior cava,* in approaching the heart, takes a direction upwards, backwards, and to the left side: at first it ascends almost perpendicularly, and then, assuming a more horizontal direction, turns abruptly into the auricle, immediately before which it frequently presents a dilatation. Its orifice is larger than that of the superior cava, and is situated on a plane posterior to it: it likewise differs from it in its relation to the Eustachian valve.

A number of minute openings on the inner surface of the auricle have been described as the orifices of what are termed *venæ Thebesianæ:* it is by no means certain that they are the orifices of vessels.

The LEFT AURICLE when distended presents somewhat the form of a four-sided pyramid, the base of which is situated at its right side and forms the septum auricularum; while the truncated apex constitutes the left wall or side of this cavity. At the anterior and upper portion of this latter wall, where it joins the superior, we find the opening of the left auricular appendix; and farther back, where the left wall unites with the posterior, we find the openings of the left pulmonary veins. The *posterior wall* is directed a little upwards; and at its right extremity, and upper angle, immediately behind the septum auricularum, we find the openings of the right pulmonary veins. The *anterior wall* looks somewhat downwards; it corresponds to the left ventricle, and presents to our view the left auriculo-ventricular opening. The *superior wall* looks a little forward. Lastly, the *inferior wall* is very smooth, and forms with the posterior wall a continuous convex surface which corresponds, with the interposition of the pericardium, to the œsophagus and descending aorta.

The left pulmonary artery may be seen crossing from before backwards, so as to get behind the left auricular appendix.

In order to see the *interior* of the left auricle, an incision should be made vertically through its posterior and superior walls, so as to separate the pulmonary veins of the right and left sides. We may now observe that the septum of the auricles is convex towards the left side; in the fœtus it presents the valve already described in connection with the fossa ovalis, but in the adult it is by no means so distinctly marked. The auriculo-ventricular opening situated in its anterior wall is smaller than that on the right side, and its long axis is directed somewhat transversely. The superior portion of the left wall presents the orifice of the auricular appendix, which is smoother internally than that on the right side: and lastly, opening into the posterior wall, we observe superiorly, the four pulmonary veins, the orifices of which are unprovided with valves: sometimes the two veins of the left side have a common opening; but when there are four, the two inferior veins have the larger openings, and the two left veins are nearer to each other than the two right. From the above account it appears that there are seven openings into the left auricle of the fœtus, viz., the four openings of the pulmonary veins, the opening of the left auricular appendix, the left auriculo-ventricular opening, and the foramen ovale. There are commonly but six in the adult, the foramen ovale being ordinarily closed: a small valvular opening, however, occasionally exists in the adult at the upper part of the fossa ovalis. The interior of this auricle, with the exception of its appendix, is destitute of musculi pectinati; it is therefore smoother than the interior of the right auricle; it is also stronger in its muscular structure, and its capacity is about one-fifth less.

The RIGHT VENTRICLE has the form of a cone, one side of which has been hollowed out to accommodate the convexity of the left ventricle. Its apex is turned in the same direction as the apex of the heart; but, in the adult, does not extend so low. Its base presents, anteriorly and to the left side, a funnel-shaped pouch, called the *infundibulum*, or *conus arteriosus*, from which the pulmonary artery arises; and, posteriorly, the opening into the right auricle: between these two openings it corresponds to the origin of the aorta. In order to expose its interior, an incision should be made into it, in the direction of the axis of the heart, and close to the septum ventriculorum.

The internal surface of the right ventricle is exceedingly rough, from the development of a number of muscular prominences, termed the *carneæ columnæ:* of these there are three orders: those of the first order are attached by both extremities and by one side to the ventricle; those of the second are attached by their two extremities; and those of the third order are attached by only one extremity to the ventricle, the other being connected, through the medium of tendinous chords (*chordæ tendineæ*), to the valves of the auriculo-ventricular opening. The two first are supposed to be for the purpose of mixing the blood more completely; but those of the third order, contracting at the same time with the ventricle, prevent the blood from forcing back the valves into the auricle. That portion of the interior of the ventricle which forms the infundibulum, is exceedingly smooth, in order to facilitate the flow of blood into the pulmonary artery; and it will be observed, that several of the columns of the first and second orders have one of their extremities attached to the commencement of that portion of the septum, which contributes to form the infundibulum. By means of this beautiful arrangement, these columns, during the contraction of the ventricle, draw upon this portion of the infundibulum, and so, by maintaining its tension, preserve its smoothness of surface for the passage of the blood into the pulmonary artery. The *right auriculo-ventricular opening* is seen at the base of the ventricle, posteriorly, and about an inch to the right of the orifice of the pulmonary artery: it is circular when the blood is passing through, but elliptical at other times. Surrounding this opening are seen three triangular folds of the lining membrane or endocardium, which constitute the *tricuspid valve.* This valve consists, as its name implies, of three portions, each triangular; the base attached to the zona tendinosa, surrounding the right auriculo-ventricular aperture, the apex connected with the chordæ tendineæ; the anterior portion corresponds to the anterior wall of the right ventricle; the posterior corresponds to the septum ventriculorum; and the left division looks towards the opening of the pulmonary artery: this last is the largest portion of the valve, and is called the *valvular septum of Lieutaud* of the right ventricle: it is supposed to be of use in preventing any of the blood flowing from the right auricle, from getting directly into the pulmonary artery, until it has first filled the right ventricle: by this arrangement the blood becomes subject to the entire force of the right ventricle, in order to its propulsion through the pulmonary vessels. The auricular surface of the tricuspid valve is extremely smooth, for the purpose of facilitating the flow of blood into the ventricle; whilst the surface which corresponds to the walls of the ventricle is remarkably rough, from the prominences formed by the chordæ tendineæ. To the margins of the valve the chordæ tendineæ are attached, and afterwards become spread out, interlacing with each other, so as to give rise to a strong fibrous expansion between the foldings of the lining membrane which form each division of the valve: they are ultimately lost by becoming continuous with the *zona tendinosa* surrounding the base of the ventricle. The tricuspid valve prevents the blood from returning into the auricle, when the ventricle contracts to expel it into the pulmonary artery: this, however, it does not do completely, as a certain amount of regurgitation is permitted into the right auricle at this particular moment, in the healthy condition of the parts. In 1792, John Hunter writes, "I have reason to believe that the valves in the right side of the heart, do not so perfectly do their duty, as those of the left; therefore, we may suppose it was not so necessary."* Many years back, Mr. Adams saw the force of Hunter's observation, and fully appreciated its importance. In his original and admirable paper on Diseases of the Heart, published in 1827, when speaking of the fact alluded to by Hunter, he observes, "This circumstance, in my opinion, has not been sufficiently noticed, nor the influence that such a structure may have on the circulation in its natural, or morbid state, considered.—Such a provision was absolutely necessary in the right or pulmonary ventricle, as various natural causes must momentarily retard the passage of blood through the lungs. In the natural state of the heart, it is probable that there is constantly some little reflux into the right auricle, during the contraction of its corresponding ventricle, as the valves readily admit it; but the great swelling of the jugular veins is only seen when extraordinary efforts are made, or when, from any enlargement of the right side of the heart, it is capable of containing a larger quantity of blood than it can readily transmit through the lungs, or the left receive; on these occasions it is, that the pulsations in the jugular veins become evident; they are synchronous with the action of the heart. Upon the whole, therefore, I would conclude, that the pulsation in the jugular veins, viewed as a symptom of the disease we have been just considering (contraction of the left auriculo-ventricular opening), depends upon this, that the right ventricle, unable to transmit all the blood which distends it, through the pulmonary artery, part of it must regurgitate towards the auricle, and displace a column of blood descending into this cavity from the jugular veins, causing thus a momentary reflux or pulse in the veins nearest the right auricle."* In the second volume of the Guy's Hospital Reports, 1837, Mr. King published "An Essay on the Safety-valve Function of the Human Heart," &c., and adverts to the fact stated by John Hunter. Mr. King calls the septum of the ventricles the *solid wall* of the right ventricle; and its anterior, he calls the *yielding wall*. Between these two walls he describes a muscular band as stretching across the area of the right ventricle; he calls this the *moderator band*, and believes it to be of

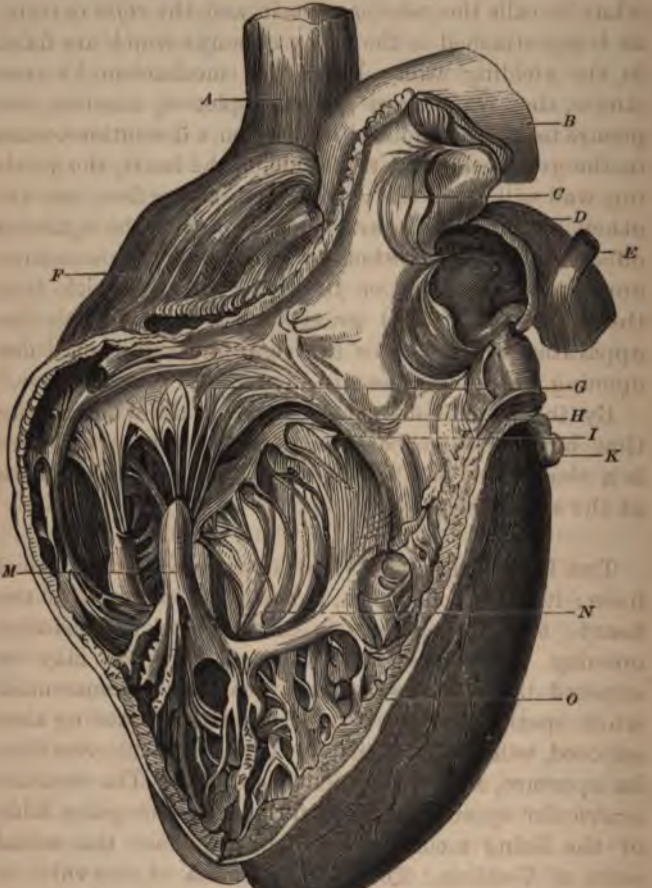
---

* "Treatise on the Blood," &c. page 177.

---

* "Cases of Diseases of the Heart," &c., in 4th vol. of Dublin Hospital Reports, pp. 437–438.

Fig. 4.—This figure represents the anterior part of the Right Ventricle and Pulmonary Artery laid open and turned upwards.



A, Superior Vena Cava. B, The Aorta. C, The Semilunar Valves of Pulmonary Artery. D, The Pulmonary Artery. E, Remains of the Ductus Arteriosus. F, Right Auricle. G, Tricuspid Valve. H, Portion of Right Auriculo-Ventricular Opening. I, Fleshy Column connected with the Septum of the Ventricles by one extremity, and with the Valvular Septum of Lieutaud by the other. K, Part of Left Auricle. M, Carneæ Columnæ attached to the Chordæ Tendineæ. N, Cavity of Right Ventricle. O, Septum Ventriculorum.

use in limiting distention of this cavity. Of the three divisions of the tricuspid valve, he describes two, viz., what he calls the *anterior* curtain and the *right* curtain, as being attached to the fleshy columns which are fixed in the yielding wall. From this mechanism he concludes, that when from sudden repletion, exertion, exposure to cold, or impeded respiration, a distention occurs in the great veins and right side of the heart, the yielding wall will carry the valves partly away from one another, and by such separation will prevent the injurious effects of over-distention, by producing the necessary amount of regurgitation from the right ventricle into the right auricle and great veins. To this valvular apparatus, which guards the right auriculo-ventricular opening, Mr. King gives the name of the "safety-valve."

By the "tendinous zone" is meant the whitish ring that binds the auriculo-ventricular opening: as there is a similar one on the left side, we shall consider both at the same time.

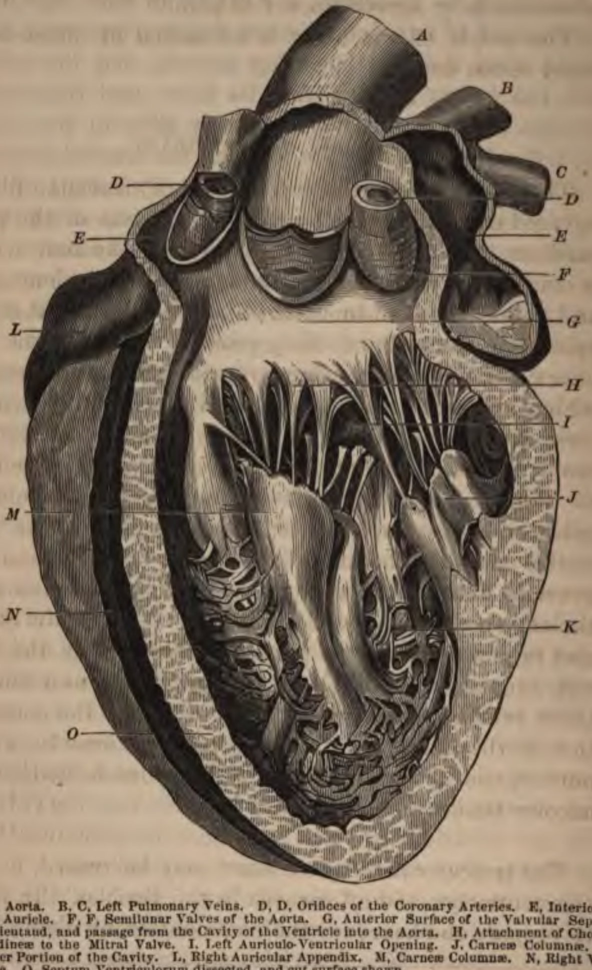
THE LEFT VENTRICLE. This cavity also is of a conical form: its apex constitutes, in the adult, the apex of the heart: and its base has an arterial, and an auricular opening. The interior of the left ventricle may be exposed by an incision similar to that recommended when speaking of the right: the arterial opening thus exposed, will be found in front of the auriculo-ventricular aperture, and a little to its right side. The *auriculo-ventricular opening* is guarded by two triangular folds of the lining membrane, which constitute the *mitral valve* of Vesalius. The *anterior* lamina of this valve is much larger than the *posterior*, and has been correctly termed the valvular *septum of Lieutaud* of the left ventricle; that anatomist supposed that it was applied against the orifice of the aorta while the ventricle was filling: this appears possible, as the aortic opening is in front of the auriculo-ventricular, and the substance of this valve separates the two openings from each other. The mitral valve is similar in structure to the tricuspid: it does not, however, admit of regurgitation of the blood from the left ventricle into the left auricle; and the two surfaces of the anterior division of the valve are equally smooth;—the posterior surface for the purpose of facilitating the flow of blood from the auricle into the ventricle; and the anterior, the flow from the ventricle into the aorta. In this respect this portion of the valve differs from the posterior, and from the three portions of the tricuspid valve. The muscular structure of this ventricle is much thicker and stronger than that of the right ventricle.

The *zonæ tendinosæ* of the heart are four in number; one is situated at the narrow portion of the infundibulum of the right ventricle, and gives attachment to the origin of the pulmonary artery: the second is placed at that part of the left ventricle from which the aorta takes its origin; these may be called the two *arterial zones.* The remaining two may be termed the *auriculo-ventricular zones;* they mark the connection between the auricles and ventricles, surround the auriculo-ventricular orifices, and give attachment to the bases of the tricuspid and mitral valves: they are composed of pale, condensed, tendinous fibres; they have the same form as the auriculo-ventricular openings, which they surround; and they receive and are continuous with those expansions of the chordæ tendineæ, which are placed between the laminæ of the endocardium composing the mitral and tricuspid valves, and which thus add considerably to their strength. These zones may be best seen by dissecting from the interior of the heart. The endocardium, or lining membrane, is in intimate connection with the inner surface of these zones, and is thicker here than in other situations.

According to *Bouillaud*, the cavity of each ventricle is composed of two very distinct regions, one communicating with the corresponding auricle, and the other with the artery arising from its base; and these two portions are not constituted exactly alike in the right and left sides. In the *right ventricle*, the arterial portion is united with the auricular portion, by means of an angle projecting into the ventricle, the sinus of which is consequently turned upwards, embracing the aorta. In the *left ventricle*, the arterial and auricular regions are very nearly parallel to each other, so that their axes approach one another as they proceed from the base to the apex of this cavity: they are separated by the anterior lamina of the mitral valve, and by two large fleshy columns, which are inserted into it by means of numerous tendons. Inferior, posterior, and a little to the left of this septum, is the auricular region of the ventricle; and superior, anterior, and internal to it, is the arterial or aortic portion. These two regions communicate with each other freely at the interval between the two large columns above mentioned. It is in the auricular region of the ventricle that we principally find the fleshy columns; in fact, a large portion of the arterial region is altogether destitute of them; and the same remark will apply to the right ventricle: those that are found in the arterial region are small and interlaced, and are not, like the large ones, inserted into the valves. The left ventricle contains fewer carneæ columnæ than the right; they are, however, more voluminous.

Relative capacities of the Cavities. Each of the four cavities of the heart is capable of containing about two ounces of blood. The ventricles are supposed to contain a little more than the auricles. The right auricle and

Fig. 5.—This figure represents the Interior of Left Ventricle and Aorta laid open by dissecting from before backwards.



A, Aorta. B, C, Left Pulmonary Veins. D, D, Orifices of the Coronary Arteries. E, Interior of Left Auricle. F, F, Semilunar Valves of the Aorta. G, Anterior Surface of the Valvular Septum of Lieutaud, and passage from the Cavity of the Ventricle into the Aorta. H, Attachment of Chordæ Tendineæ to the Mitral Valve. I, Left Auriculo-Ventricular Opening. J, Carneæ Columnæ. K, Lower Portion of the Cavity. L, Right Auricular Appendix. M, Carneæ Columnæ. N, Right Ventricle. O, Septum Ventriculorum dissected, and cut surface shown.

right ventricle are somewhat larger in their capacities than the cavities of the left side; anatomists are not, however, fully agreed upon this point.

The *weight* of the heart is estimated at about from eight to ten ounces.

STRUCTURE OF THE HEART.

The heart is essentially composed of muscular fibres, covered on the outside by the serous layer of the pericardium, and on the inside by the endocardium, which is continuous with the lining membrane of the arteries and veins. It has been ascertained by Müller, that the primitive fasciculi of the muscular structure of the heart, present the transverse striæ or cross markings which are seen upon the primitive fibres of the voluntary muscles. Todd and Bowman state, that "the cross stripes on the fibres of the heart are not usually so regular or distinct, as in those of the voluntary muscles. They are often interrupted, or even not visible at all. The fibres are usually smaller than the average diameter of those of the voluntary muscles of the same subject, by two-thirds, as stated by Mr. Skey; and in most parts of the parietes of this viscus, they are not aggregate in parallel sets, but twine and change their relative positions."* Entering into the composition of the heart, we find also tendons, arteries, veins, nerves, and absorbents: it is said to possess little or no areolar tissue.

The *muscular fibres of the heart* may be traced, first in the ventricles, and afterwards in the auricles. In order to prepare the heart for the examination of these fibres, it should be hardened by maceration in alcohol, or by boiling: its external and internal membranes may be then cautiously raised, and the different layers of muscular fibres examined, commencing with those most internal, and following carefully the course of the fibres.

---

* Physiological Anatomy, vol. i. p. 161.

First:—in each of the ventricles we find a proper set of fibres arranged so as to form a small conical sac, open at both extremities, the inferior opening being much the smaller: these may be termed *ventricular sacs.* In addition to the proper fibres, the ventricles have also a common set, which cover and unite the proper ones, and inferiorly at the apex of the heart become inflected and penetrate the small apertures above mentioned, in the ventricular sacs, on the internal surface of which they are expanded. They have been represented as forming six sets of layers in the left ventricle, and three in the right; the fibres do not confine themselves to particular planes; but the planes mutually penetrate each other, and are moreover united by fibres reciprocally detached from one to the other. The superficial fibres proceed spirally from the base to the apex; those on the anterior surface incline from right to left, and those on the posterior surface from left to right. Having arrived at the apex of the heart, they are inflected, as already observed, towards its interior, and therefore present in this situation, when the pericardium has been carefully dissected off, the appearance of a star, the rays of which are not straight, but curved. The inflected superficial fibres enter the openings in the ventricular sacs, and therefore both ventricles may be penetrated at the apex of the heart, without dividing the fibres. In the interior of the ventricles, some of the inflected fibres ascend from the apex on the interior of the same wall upon which they had descended in passing downwards from the base; others ascend on the opposite wall; and a third set terminate in the carneæ columnæ. Secondly:—in each of the auricles the proper fibres arise from the tendinous zones: on the left side some of them assume a circular arrangement in the vicinity of the auriculo-ventricular openings, and numerous oblique bands proceed from the same origin in various directions: one passes between the appendix and left pulmonary veins; another fills the interval between the pulmonary veins of the right and left sides, and others between the pulmonary veins of the same side, forming a border for their orifices; independently of which, the orifices seem specially provided with proper sphincters. On the right side, the part of the auricle corresponding to the junction of the superior and inferior cavæ has no muscular fibres except a small band on the right side of the orifice of the superior cava.

In the rest of the auricle we distinguish two principal muscular bands: one embracing, in a circular manner, the right auriculo-ventricular opening; and the other descending from the interval between the right auricular appendix and superior cava, to terminate on the right side of the inferior cava. Between these two bands the muscular fibres are arranged in a fasciculated manner, constituting the musculi pectinati.

The superficial fibres of the auricles constitute a thin layer passing transversely from one auricle to another, and arising from, and terminating in, the tendinous zones.

From the above account, it follows that the right and left sides of the heart may be separated from each other by the division of the common fibres, leaving the proper fibres uninjured. For this purpose an incision should be made with caution through the anterior fibres of the ventricles parallel to the anterior fissure of the heart, and then the right and left sacs, above described, constituted by the proper fibres, may be separated with the finger. In order to separate the auricles, the incision should be made parallel to their posterior median fissure, and still greater caution is necessary here than in the separation of the ventricles. The ventricular sacs have been described as having a conical form: this is strictly true, more particularly of the left side, all parts of the exterior of the left sac being convex; but on the right side the part of the sac which is applied to the left ventricle is concave. Now, the reverse occurs in the auricles, the right presenting a convexity which is received into the concavity of the left.

Mr. Searle remarks, that "the fibres of the heart are not connected together by cellular tissue, as are those of other muscles, but by an interlacement which in some parts is very intricate, and in others scarcely perceptible. At the entire boundary of the right ventricle they decussate, and become greatly intermixed; at the apex and base of the left ventricle they twist sharply round each other, and so become strongly embraced; but in general the interlacement is so slight that they appear to run in parallel lines. Whether a mere fasciculus, or a considerable mass of this last description of fibres, be split in the direction of the fibres, a number of delicate parallel fibres will present themselves, some being stretched across the bottom of the fissures, perfectly clean and free from any connecting medium whatever; and although some must necessarily be broken, yet these are so few that they do not attract attention unless sought for. The disposition of the fibres varies in different parts of the heart, forming parallel lines, angles, decussations, flat and spiral twists. The fibres are arranged in fasciculi, bands, layers, and a rope, which are so entwined together as to form the two chambers called the right and left ventricles. These are lined with their internal proper membrane. The *fasciculi* contribute to the formation of the bands. By tracing the fibres in bands, we are enabled to develop the formation of the ventricles in a progressive and systematic manner. The *bands* spring from a mass of fibres which forms the apicial part (the *apex*) of the left ventricle, and which in winding round, just above the apex of the heart, separates into two bands to form the right ventricle. The average width of the bands is not less than a third of the extent between the apex and base of the left ventricle. A considerable mass of fibres may be exposed winding just above the apex; at the septum it splits into two bands: the one, a '*short band*,' encircles spirally both ventricles, one half round the right, the other half round the left ventricle. The second, or '*longer band*,' describes two circles: it first passes through the septum, and round the left ventricle; it secondly passes round the base, and includes both ventricles in its circuit. The fibres of this band, in forming the brim of the left ventricle, make a sharp twist like those of a '*rope*,' by which means they become the inner fibres of this chamber, and expand into a layer which enters largely into the formation of that mass which has already been described as forming the apex of the left ventricle and dividing into the two bands. Thus the principal band, although it receives several increments of fibres, has no complete beginning nor ending, a considerable portion of it originating and terminating in itself.

"The septum of the ventricles is composed of three layers; a left, a middle, and a right layer. The two former properly belong to the left ventricle; and the last, or right layer, exclusively pertains to the right ventricle. The two former are composed of the primitive mass of fibres derived from the '*rope*' already alluded to as forming the brim of the left ventricle, and the carneæ columnæ of the same ventricle. The last, or right layer of the septum, has not the same origin as the two former have; its fibres arise from the root and lower margin of the valve of that section of the aorta which pertains to the right ventricle, from that part of the root of the pulmonary artery contiguous to the aorta, and from the carneæ columnæ of the right surface of the septum."

"It appears from the patient and laborious investigations of Mr. Searle, that the great mass of the fibres of the heart are arranged in a spiral direction; that many of them take a single curve, so as to surround both ventricles; that others dip into the septum and form a double curve, one surrounding the right ventricle, the other the left; whilst several others penetrate from the exterior into the apex, and become continuous with the carneæ columnæ in the interior of the ventricles."*

The spiral course taken by the fibres of the ventricles, and the continuity of the external with the internal fibres of these cavities, were known long ago to Winslow, Lancisi, Lower, and Gerdy.

THE ENDOCARDIUM.

This is a transparent membrane, much more delicate than the serous membranes, which, however, it strongly resembles. Its free surface is highly polished and glistening; its attached surface is united to the subjacent tendinous and muscular structures by very fine areolar tissue, which is often found thickened and altered by disease, particularly at the left side. The endocardium is thicker in the left cavities of the heart than in the right, and thickest opposite the auriculo-ventricular and arterial orifices, in which situations it is often found morbidly thick and rough, in consequence of chronic inflammation. It consists of a layer of epithelium placed on a stratum of fine fibres, which exhibit minute wavings. The epithelium appears to be extremely delicate, but the same in all its characters as that of the blood-vessels. It is so delicate, that to be seen satisfactorily it must be examined in animals just killed. We observe two forms of epithelial particles: one soft, rounded, and globular; the other somewhat compressed and drawn out at opposite poles into pointed or fibre-like processes. It is difficult to determine the precise relative position of these two forms of epithelium; but it seems probable that the pointed processes are the more deeply seated, and are in immediate contact with the subjacent fibrous layer, which here corresponds to the basement membrane beneath the epithelium of serous and mucous membranes.*

---

* Todd's Cyclopædia, p. 619.

The *Arteries of the heart* are two in number, viz., the *posterior* and *anterior coronary.*

The *posterior, or right coronary artery,* arises from the aorta, above the margin of one of the semilunar valves; and after communicating with the left coronary behind the pulmonary artery, proceeds outwards in the groove between the right auricle and right ventricle. Having reached the inferior surface of the heart, it divides into two branches; *one* of which continues in the same groove, and winding around the base of the heart, anastomoses with the left coronary artery; it supplies the right auricle and ventricle: the *second,* from its size, appears the continued trunk: it descends in the groove on the posterior inferior surface of the heart, accompanied by the posterior coronary vein, along the septum ventriculorum, supplies both ventricles, and near the apex of the heart anastomoses with the left coronary. The branches of the right coronary, before its division, are the following: first, auricular branches, five or six in number, which supply the right auricle, the septum auricularum, and the parietes of the venæ cavæ; secondly, ventricular branches, much larger, which are distributed to the right ventricle; some of these descend on the superior surface of the heart, others on the inferior, and one along its right or thin margin.

---

* Todd and Bowman's Physiological Anatomy, vol. ii. p. 335.

The *anterior, or left coronary artery,* smaller than the right, arises from the aorta, above the margin of one of the semilunar valves; it then proceeds to the left, till it escapes from beneath the pulmonary artery and divides into a superior and inferior branch. The *superior* winds round the base of the heart in the groove between the left auricle and left ventricle, concealed by the coronary vein, and anastomoses with the right coronary artery: in this course its branches are distributed principally to the left ventricle; others go to the left auricle and the pulmonary veins. The *inferior* branch is the larger; it descends on the anterior superior surface of the heart, accompanied by the anterior coronary vein, in the groove between the two ventricles. Its first branches ramify on the commencement of the aorta and pulmonary artery; the rest are distributed to the ventricles, principally to the left.

The *Veins of the heart* are the greater and lesser coronary: the *greater coronary vein* commences at the apex of the heart, and ascends, under the name of the anterior coronary vein, through the anterior fissure, gradually increasing in size: having arrived at the base of the ventricles, it quits the coronary artery, and turns off at a right angle to the left side. In this manner it gets into the groove which separates the left auricle from the left ventricle, and having thus arrived at the inferior surface of the heart, it opens into the posterior inferior part of the right auricle, as already described. Immediately before its termination, this vein presents a remarkable ampulla or dilatation. In the ascending part of its course it receives branches from the septum ventriculorum, and from the right and left ventricles; and during its transverse direction it receives descending branches from the auricle, and ascending and larger branches from the ventricle, one of which runs along the left margin of the heart. In its ampulla we usually find terminating, the posterior coronary vein that ascends through the posterior inter-ventricular fissure, and another that crosses from right to left between the right auricle and right ventricle. This vein has no valves, except the lesser Eustachian valve, already described as situated at its opening into the right auricle.

The *lesser coronary veins* open separately into the inferior part of the right auricle: among them we need only notice a small one that descends from the infundibulum of the right ventricle, and another the *vena Galeni*, which ascends along the anterior margin of the heart.

The coronary vein has been seen to enter into the left auricle;[*] and Lecat relates a case in which it opened into the left subclavian vein.[†]

The *Nerves of the heart* are principally derived from the cervical ganglia of the sympathetic nerve; the remainder proceed from the pneumogastric and recurrent nerves: they are distributed in greater number on the right side than on the left.

---

[*] Jeffray on the Fœtal Heart.

[†] Mém. de l'Acad. des Sciences, 1738.

The *Cardiac nerves,* derived from these sources, converge from both sides upon the origin of the aorta and pulmonary artery, and form the cardiac plexuses, which, dividing into the right and left coronary plexuses, surround and accompany the coronary arteries and their branches.

There are three principal cardiac nerves derived from the sympathetic on each side, viz., the *superior* or *superficial cardiac,* the *middle* or *deep cardiac,* and the *inferior* or *small cardiac* nerves.

The *Superior* cardiac nerve arises from the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, or from the communicating branch which connects this ganglion with the middle; it is joined by one or two filaments from the pneumogastric nerve.

The *Middle* cardiac nerve arises from the middle cervical ganglion; but when this ganglion is absent, the nerve arises from the trunk of the sympathetic itself. Scarpa has called this the *great* cardiac nerve, from its frequently being the largest of the three: sometimes, however, it is absent altogether.

The *Inferior* cardiac nerve, called also the *cardiacus minor,* usually arises from the inferior cervical ganglion, very often from the first thoracic ganglion. The middle and inferior cardiac nerves communicate freely with branches from the recurrent.

There are some differences between the cardiac branches of the right and left sides: viz., the middle cardiac nerve of the left side receives its principal branch from the inferior cervical ganglion; and very frequently on this side the middle and inferior cardiac nerves are united into a single trunk. The cardiac branches of the pneumogastric nerve of the right side are usually three or four in number, and arise from their parent trunk about an inch above the origin of the common carotid artery; they are lost in the cardiac filaments of the inferior cervical ganglion. The pneumogastric nerve of the left side generally sends off only a single twig, which runs on the front of the arch of the aorta and enters the neighboring cardiac plexus.

The cardiac *plexuses* are three in number,—the *great*, the *superficial* or *anterior*, and the *deep* or *posterior*. The first is seen in front of the trachea and above the right pulmonary artery, and behind the arch of the aorta; it is formed principally by the middle and inferior cardiac nerves of both sides. The second is situated upon the front of the aorta, close to its origin, and may be exposed by removing the serous layer of the pericardium from this vessel: branches from the great cardiac plexus, from the superior cardiac nerves, and from the cardiac ganglion, enter this plexus. The third is situated immediately behind the origin of the aorta.

The *cardiac ganglion* of Wrisberg, when present, is situated underneath the arch of the aorta, and is in contact with that part of the concavity of the artery which lies to the right side of its connection with the ductus arteriosus: the superior cardiac nerves of the right and left sides, together with filaments from the pneumogastric nerves, enter into its formation. The cardiac branches of the recurrent nerve are pretty numerous, and unite with the cardiac branches of the pneumogastric and great sympathetic.

The anterior and posterior *coronary plexuses* are branches derived from the cardiac plexuses, which accompany the coronary arteries and their branches.

The *Lymphatics of the heart* consist of a superficial and a deep set: the *superficial* set form a net-work under the serous layer of the pericardium; the *deep* set ramify between the endocardium and muscular fibres; and both of them follow the coronary vessels. Some of them unite with the lymphatics of the lung, and others terminate in the lymphatic glands in front of the arch of the aorta and pulmonary veins.

THE PULMONARY ARTERY.

This vessel may be easily injected from the superior or inferior vena cava. It arises from the infundibulum of the right ventricle: its direction is upwards, backwards, and to the left side; and after a course of about an inch and a quarter, it terminates by dividing into a *right* and *left* branch. In the angle between these branches, but more connected with the left than with the right, the ductus arteriosus arises: this vessel in the fœtus equals in size, and seems like a continuation of, the pulmonary artery; it terminates in the concave side of the arch of the aorta, a little beyond the origin of the left subclavian artery. Superiorly, and to the right side of the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery, we see the bifurcation of the trachea into the right and left bronchial tubes. Between the division of the artery below, and that of the trachea above, we find a space somewhat of a lozenge shape, which is filled with a considerable quantity of areolar tissue, a number of black bronchial glands, together with numerous branches of the pulmonary plexuses of nerves, chiefly those derived from the posterior. The pulmonary artery, after its origin, forms a curvature, the convexity of which looks forwards and to the left side, and is covered by the serous layer of the pericardium, with the interposition of some adipose tissue: its concavity looks backwards and to the right side, and corresponds to the commencement of the aorta: on either side it is related to the appendix of the corresponding auricle. The pulmonary artery, unlike the aorta, does not in the undisturbed state retain its cylindrical form; this is owing to the comparative thinness of its proper or middle elastic coat. We have already mentioned that this vessel and the commencement of the aorta have a common sheath formed by the reflexion of the serous layer of the pericardium: within this sheath, and behind and between the vessels, filaments of the sympathetic nerve descend to form the coronary plexuses. If we now cut into the artery, and examine its interior, we observe that there are three semilunar valves at its orifice, and that an incision through its anterior part will divide one of them; whereas an incision into the anterior part of the aorta would nearly separate two of them, viz., the right from the left.

The middle or proper coat of the pulmonary artery will be found to take its origin from the arterial zona tendinosa situated at the termination of the infundibulum of the right ventricle, by a festooned margin presenting three convexities or inverted arches, separated from each other by a small triangular interval, in which we find no proper arterial tunic. The connection between the three inverted arches and the zona tendinosa will be best seen by dissecting the parts from the interior of the ventricle. The muscular fibres of this portion of the ventricle will be seen attached to the lower margin of the tendinous zone, whilst the three inverted arches of the middle coat of the artery will be found connected with its upper margin by condensed areolar tissue. Corresponding to each of the three small triangular intervals between the inverted arches of the middle coat, we will find a fibrous prolongation sent up from the upper margin of the zona tendinosa; this becomes ultimately incorporated with the condensed areolar tunic external to the middle coat. The endocardium within, and the serous layer of the pericardium without, though but partially, complete the connection between the artery and the ventricle. Between each of these convexities and the area of the vessel, we find a corresponding semilunar valve formed by the lining membrane of the artery, the concavity of which looks upwards and is strengthened by a small body called the corpus sesamoideum or corpus Arantii.

The *right pulmonary artery* crosses transversely behind the aorta and superior cava, to which consequently its anterior surface corresponds with the interposition of the serous sheath of the aorta. Posteriorly and superiorly it corresponds to the right bronchus, and inferiorly to the right auricle.

The *left pulmonary artery*, shorter than the right, and less horizontal, ascends in front of the left bronchus, being covered anteriorly by the serous layer of the pericardium, except in the immediate vicinity of the lung, where it is covered by its corresponding veins. Above and behind it, is the arch of the aorta; beneath it, is the superior wall of the left auricle, and in front of it is the left auricular appendix.

It may not be considered out of place to quote the following observations of Dr. Hope, as to the relative positions of the heart and its great vessels with regard to the parietes of the chest.—"A line drawn from the inferior margin of the third ribs, across the sternum, passes over the pulmonic valves a little to the left of the mesial line, and those of the aorta are behind them, but about half an inch lower down. From this point the aorta and pulmonary artery ascend; the former inclining slightly to the right, coming in contact with the sternum, when it emerges from beneath the pulmonary artery, and following, or perhaps rather exceeding, the mesial line till it forms its arch; the pulmonary artery, which is, from the first, in contact with the sternum, inclining more considerably to the left, until it arrives at the interspace between the second and third ribs above described. A vertical line coinciding with the left margin of the sternum has about one-third of the heart, consisting of the upper portion of the right ventricle, on its right; and two-thirds, composed of the lower portion of the right ventricle, and the whole of the left, on its left. The apex beats between the cartilages of the fifth and sixth left ribs, at a point about two inches below the nipple, and one inch on its sternal side.

"The lungs descend along the margins of the sternum, about two inches apart, and overlap the base of the heart, slightly on the right side and more extensively on the left: then, receding from each other, they leave a considerable portion of the right ventricle, and a less extent of the lower portion of the left, in immediate contact with the thoracic walls.

"The right auricle is in front of the heart, at its right side and upper part. One portion of it is overlapped by the right lung, and another, principally the appendix, is in contact with the sternum. The left auricle is situated deeply behind and to the left of the heart at its upper part, opposite to the interval between the cartilages of the third and fourth ribs. The extremity of the appendix is visible in front, but, when the volume of the heart is natural, it is not in contact with the sternum, being considerably overlapped by the left lung. The auricular orifices are situated opposite to the interspace between the third and fourth ribs, and the right is rather lower down than the left."*

---

* Hope on Diseases of the Heart, &c., pp. 3–4.

THE AORTA.

THE AORTA, or great systemic artery of the body, consists of an arch, and descending portion; the latter is divided into the thoracic aorta, and the abdominal aorta. The arch may be exposed by the dissection already recommended for exhibiting the heart: it extends from the base of the left ventricle to the left side of the third dorsal vertebra. In this course its convexity is directed upwards, and its summit is on a level with the body of the second dorsal vertebra; its posterior extremity touches the spine, and in the adult subject its most prominent part is scarcely half an inch distant from the sternum. It is usually divided into three stages or portions, viz., an anterior, middle, and posterior.

The *anterior or ascending portion* arises from the base of the left ventricle, anterior and a little to the right side of the left auriculo-ventricular opening, in front of the left side of the body of the fourth dorsal vertebra, and corresponding to the junction of the cartilage of the fourth rib with the sternum at the left side. From its origin it proceeds upwards, forwards, and to the right side, till it reaches the level of the cartilage of the second rib, at its junction with the cartilage connecting the first and second pieces of the sternum. In this course its *anterior surface* is related to the pericardium, which separates it from the anterior mediastinum and back of the sternum; to the right coronary artery, the infundibulum of the right ventricle, the pulmonary artery at its origin, and to the tip of the right auricular appendix: the *posterior surface* corresponds to a part of the left auricle and to the right pulmonary artery; the *left surface* is related to the pulmonary artery immediately before it divides; and the *right surface* first rests on a part of the base of the right ventricle between its arterial and auricular openings, and corresponds in the rest of its course to the descending or superior vena cava. The greatest part of this ascending portion is within the pericardium, the serous layer of which forms a sheath common to the aorta and pulmonary artery. This sheath also contains the right inferior cardiac nerve, which lies between these great vessels, in its course to the coronary plexus of the heart; together with the anterior and posterior cardiac plexuses. We may observe, also, that the serous sheath extends higher up on the aorta than on the pulmonary artery, and higher up on its right than on its left side. The fibrous layer of the pericardium is lost a little higher up on the external coat of the artery, by becoming continuous on this vessel with the descending layer of the thoracic fascia.

If we look at the origin of the aorta through the left ventricle, we observe a triangular opening, the area of which is more contracted than any other part of the arch is naturally found; immediately outside this triangular opening we observe three small bulgings or dilatations, called the sinuses of Valsalva; and above it the aorta enlarges and assumes a form nearly cylindrical, but not exactly so, on account of certain deviations to be noticed hereafter. In order to examine its connection with the heart, we may slit up the front of it longitudinally from the left ventricle. We then find that the aorta is united to the heart in the following manner: first—internally by the continuity of their lining membrane; secondly —by the serous layer of the pericardium, forming a sheath passing up on the vessels as already described; thirdly—on removing these two layers of membrane, we find that the proper fibrous tunic of the artery does not present a straight edge to the ventricle, but that it is formed into three distinct arches, the convexities of which are directed towards the heart. Each of the convexities, or *festoons*, as they are also called, is separated from its fellow by a small triangular interval, the base of which corresponds to the ventricle. The origin of the vessel will thus present three inverted arches, separated from each other by three small triangular spaces. On examining the base of the left ventricle in this situation, we observe the *zona tendinosa*, which forms the principal medium of connection between it and the aorta. The inferior margin of this zone is imbedded in the muscular fibres of the ventricle, whilst to its superior margin are intimately and strongly attached by condensed areolar tissue, the three convexities already described. Fourthly, when we examine the small triangular intervals between the festoons, after having removed both the serous layer of the pericardium and the lining membrane of the aorta and left ventricle, we perceive that a process of fibrous membrane, prolonged from the superior margin of the zona tendinosa, fills up each of these intervals, and becomes continuous with the "sclerous" or external tunic of the vessel.

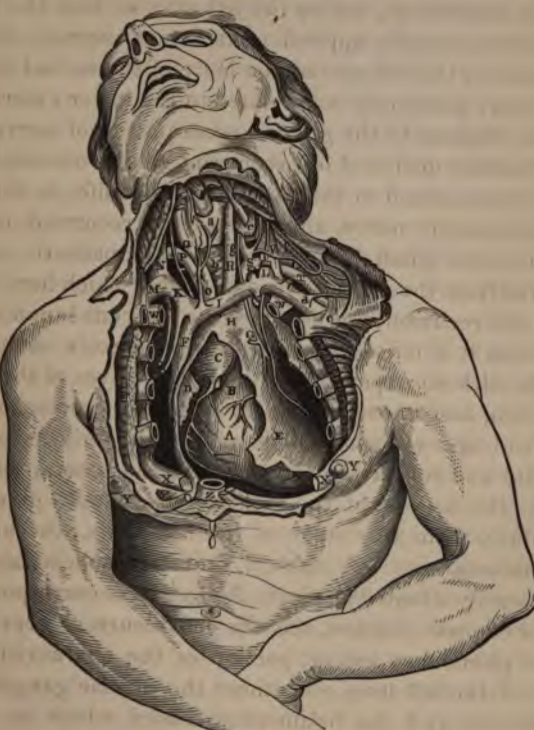
The description, therefore, which represents the lining membrane of the artery, and the serous layer of the pericardium, as being "in apposition" in those triangular spaces, is not correct. The processes from the tendinous zone which fill up the intervals between the three convexities may be easily demonstrated: they are by no means so strong as the rest of the ring, but, though very delicate, have considerable resistance, and are separated from the serous layer of the pericardium by areolar tissue continuous with the external tunic of the artery. It is clear, however, that the lining membrane of the aorta and serous layer of the pericardium could not possibly be in apposition in that situation, where the pulmonary artery and aorta are in contact with each other, and where the serous layer of the pericardium does not dip in between these vessels.

On the inside of the aortic opening we find three folds of the lining membrane forming *three semilunar valves,* the inferior convex margins of which are attached opposite to the convex margins of the three inverted arches; their free or concave margins look upwards, and each of them is strengthened in its centre by a small prominent body termed the *corpus Arantii,* or *corpus sesamoideum.* When the aorta contracts, these valves are thrown away from the walls of the artery, inwards towards the centre or area of the aortic opening, and thus prevent the return of blood into the ventricle: this object is supposed to be more completely effected by the corpora Arantii closing up at that instant the small triangular space which would otherwise exist at the common centre of approximation of the three semilunar valves. Corresponding to the outer surfaces of these valves, the aorta presents three pouches or dilatations termed *the lesser sinuses of the aorta,* or *sinuses of Valsalva.* These exist at birth, but are better marked in the adult than in the young subject, on account of the constant pressure of the blood during the contraction of the vessel. By *the great sinus of the aorta* is meant an enlargement of the tube at the upper part of its first stage, where the vessel begins to change its direction. It does not engage the whole circumference of the tube, but is limited to its anterior and right side. It is obviously the effect of the impulse of the blood from the left ventricle, and is therefore better marked in the old than in the young subject.

If a cast of the interior of the aorta be taken in wax or plaster, it will present at its origin three distinct bulgings, corresponding to the sinuses of Valsalva; these bulgings will appear to be separated from each other by three small fissures, which unite in the centre of the area of the artery: the same observation applies to the monary artery.

The *middle portion* of the arch passes obliquely wards, backwards, and to the left side, so that the t transverse, usually applied to it, is not correct: it minates on the left side of the body of the second do vertebra: *posteriorly* it is related to the lower extrem of the trachea, to the great cardiac plexus of nerves the thoracic duct, and left recurrent nerve: *anteriorly* the thymus gland in the early periods of life; to the pneumogastric nerve, and also to the recurrent ne and to some small branches of the sympathetic ne derived from the superior cardiac nerve, which here un with the recurrent: *above it* are the left vena innomin to which it is united by a dense aponeurosis, connec below with an expansion of the fibrous layer of the p cardium, and above with a deep-seated process of cervical aponeurosis, which covers the origins of carotid and subclavian arteries, and the arteria inno nata: the origins of the great arterial trunks given regularly from this stage of the aorta, viz., the art innominata, the left carotid, and left subclavian, necessarily situated above it. *Beneath it,* or correspond to its concave portion, are, the left recurrent nerve, right pulmonary artery, portion of the left auricle, root of the left lung, sometimes the cardiac ganglion Wrisberg, and the ligamentous chord which in in uterine life had been the ductus arteriosus: this struct enters the concavity of the arch at a point correspond inferiorly to the origin of the left subclavian artery fr the convexity of the vessel, but a little nearer to its side. The left recurrent nerve curves underneath t portion of the aorta which is joined by the ductus a riosus, so that the nerve embraces within its curve termination of the ligamentous remains of this la

Fig. 6.—Dissection to show the relations of the Vessels and Nerves in the lower part of Neck; and some of the relations of the Arch of the Aorta and its Branches. Pericardium opened, and portions of Heart exposed.



A, Right Ventricle of the Heart. B, Pulmonary Artery and Infundibulum. C, Ascending Aorta. D, Right Auricular Appendix. E, Pericardium. F, Superior Vena Cava. G, Left Pneumogastric Nerve, with loop of left Recurrent Nerve: Phrenic Nerve to their left side. H, Middle portion of the Arch of Aorta. I, Left Vena Innominata. K, Right Vena Innominata. L, Lower end of left Internal Jugular Vein cut. M, Right Subclavian Vein. N, Right Internal Jugular Vein about to join Subclavian Vein. O, Arteria Innominata. P, Right Subclavian Artery crossed by Right Pneumogastric Nerve, and in loop of Right Recurrent Nerve. Q, Right common Carotid Artery. R, Left common Carotid Artery. S, Left Subclavian Artery in relation with left Pneumogastric Nerve. T, Third stage of left Subclavian Artery. V, Left Scalenus Anticus Muscle, with Phrenic Nerve. W, W, First Ribs. X, X, Fifth Ribs cut across. Y, Y, Right and Left Mamillæ. Z, Lower part of Sternum. a, Thyroid body. b, Trachea. c, Left Internal Jugular Vein cut across. d, Left Subclavian Vein. e, Clavicle cut across, and drawn downwards. f, Brachial Plexus of Nerves. g, Inferior Thyroid Artery, passing behind the cut extremity of Internal Jugular Vein, Pneumogastric Nerve, and Carotid Artery.

vessel as well as the concavity of the arch of the aorta.

The *posterior or descending portion* of the arch extends from the body of the second to that of the third dorsal vertebra: *posteriorly, and at its right*, it rests against the spine and left longus colli muscle; on its *right side* also are the œsophagus, thoracic duct, and vena azygos: *anteriorly* it is covered by the root of the left lung; and on its *left side* the left lung and pleura are situated. In these different stages, besides the various relations already enumerated, the artery is surrounded by a number of dark-colored bronchial glands: when these become enlarged by disease, to which they are very liable, they occasionally produce most serious effects by their pressure on the air-tubes, on the vena cava, and on the large arteries of the neck which they accompany.

Taking the entire of the arch of the aorta, we will find the following parts embraced within its concavity: first, the right pulmonary artery; second, that portion of the left auricle with which the appendix is connected; third, the left division of the trachea; fourth, the cardiac ganglion of Wrisberg; fifth, the ligamentous remains of the ductus arteriosus; sixth, the left recurrent nerve.

The arch of the aorta has important *venous* relations: we may observe the superior vena cava, when all the vessels are moderately filled, lying to the right side of the first stage of the arch, and the left vena innominata, lying above, and very near the upper margin of the second stage. The student would do well to attend to the anatomy of these venous trunks: he will perceive, after opening the pericardium, a large vein presenting a dark blue color, lying to the right of the aorta: this is the vena cava superior or descendens; it is covered, except at its most posterior part, by the serous layer of the pericardium: it is about three inches in length; it enters the fibrous layer of the pericardium, so that about one-third of the vessel is contained within this sac; and it is situated entirely within the thorax. It is formed chiefly by the confluence of the right and left venæ innominatæ, or brachio-cephalic veins: this union takes place about an inch and a half below the bifurcation of the arteria innominata, and corresponds anteriorly to the upper part of the second rib, near its articulation with the right side of the sternum. The vein descends nearly in a vertical direction, but slightly curved, the concavity being directed to the left, and corresponding to the right side of the first stage of the aorta; the convexity is to the right side. It here lies anterior to the right pulmonary vessels, and enters into the upper part of the right auricle behind the auricular appendix. The *vena azygos* enters the cava at its posterior surface, just before this large vein passes into the pericardium. The other veins which pour their blood into the superior cava, are, the right inferior thyroid and internal mammary veins, the thymic, pericardial, mediastinal, and right superior phrenic: these veins usually enter the vessel at its commencement, and in its extra-pericardial stage. In this stage the vein has numerous relations: *behind* it we observe the vena azygos, a portion of the trachea, the right vagus nerve, some lymphatic glands, and loose areolar tissue; to the *outside*, we have the right phrenic nerve, the right pleura and lung; *anteriorly*, the remains of the thymus gland, some areolar tissue belonging to the anterior mediastinum, and the phrenic nerve; and to its *left* or *inner* side we have the arch of the aorta.

The arch of the aorta being in close relation both to the anterior and posterior walls of the chest, as well as to its interior, and being surrounded by numerous cavities and tubes, it is evident that an aneurismal tumor affecting this portion of the vessel may open in a great variety of situations. We frequently find it absorbing the sternum at its junction with the cartilage of the second or third rib of the right side, and pointing, or even opening, anteriorly. It has also been known to burst into the right auricle of the heart, into the pericardium, the pulmonary artery, the trachea, bronchial tubes, and air-cells; into the mediastinum, œsophagus, right and left pleuræ, and into the spinal canal; also to press upon and obstruct the thoracic duct, or obliterate the subclavian or common carotid artery. In some cases the tumor ascends behind and above the clavicle, and simulates subclavian or carotid aneurism; in other cases its pressure anteriorly has been known to dislocate the clavicle, and the occurrence of dyspnœa, aphonia, and dysphagia during its progress can be accounted for by pressure on the air-passages, recurrent nerve, and œsophagus.

Mr. Smith has described a very remarkable case of aneurism of the ascending portion of the aorta, the front of which was divided by the pulmonary artery into two portions, one of which projected into the right ventricle, and the other into the left. From each of these cavities the sac was divided only by a very delicate membrane, that must have been absorbed had the patient lived a very little longer.*

Development of the Aorta.—This vessel is formed after the portal system, with which it is connected by a dilatation which is the rudiment of the future heart. In the young child it lies nearer the spine than in the adult, on account of the larger size of the thymus gland which lies in front of it, and the comparatively imperfect development, at this period of life, of the trachea and bronchial tubes, which are situated behind it: but as the right bronchus becomes developed, and the thymus gland absorbed, the arch of the aorta advances nearer to the sternum. We also find that in the young subject the arch is situated higher up than in the adult: this is owing to the thorax of the child having less proportional height; and for the same reason the arch is higher in the adult female than in the male. In some cases we find it unnaturally high, independently of the age or sex of the individual. In the old subject the swell of the arch is considerably increased by the development of the great sinus. If a vertical section be made of the arch of the aorta, the convexity of the arch will be found to be thicker than the concavity.

---

* Dublin Journal, vol. ix.

BRANCHES OF THE ARCH OF THE AORTA.

From the Arch of the Aorta five branches usually arise, viz.:

Right and Left Coronary, . .	From the ascending portion of the arch.
Arteria Innominata, Left Carotid, and Left Subclavian, .	From the middle portion of the arch.

The anatomy of the two coronary arteries has been already described.

ARTERIA INNOMINATA.

The *Arteria Innominata*, or *Brachio-cephalic artery*, arises from the arch of the aorta at the commencement of its second stage, and corresponding to the termination of the great sinus of Morgagni; it lies on the front of the trachea, a little to the left side of the middle line, and on a level with the cartilage of the second rib. From its origin it proceeds upwards, backwards, and to the right side, to terminate behind the right sterno-clavicular articulation by dividing into the right subclavian and right carotid arteries. If a needle be passed directly backwards and immediately on a level with the top of the sterno-clavicular articulation of the right side, it will be found to pass between the two origins of the sterno-mastoid muscle and through the angle formed by the bifurcation of the arteria innominata into the right subclavian and carotid arteries. The arteria innominata varies in length from an inch to about an inch and a half: it may be dissected either from the neck or from the interior of the thorax; and the student is recommended to adopt both of these methods. On dissecting from the neck downwards to the thorax, the following parts will be found related to the artery. *Anteriorly*, after removing the integuments and fascia of the neck, we see the sternal origin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, the first bone of the sternum, the sterno-clavicular articulation, and the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles: near the origin of the artery the left vena innominata, with which it is connected by the descending layer of the thoracic fascia, crosses in front of it; and still higher up, in the young subject, the thymus gland. *Posteriorly*, the artery rests upon the trachea: on its *left* side we find the middle and inferior thyroid veins, and occasionally a middle thyroid artery, which separates it from the left carotid. On its *right* side, and on a plane anterior to it, we observe the right vena innominata, and between the two vessels the pneumogastric nerve runs in close relation to the bifurcation of the artery: still more externally than the vagus, the phrenic nerve may be seen lying behind the right vena innominata; and in its passage to the outside of the superior vena cava, still lower down, the vessel is accompanied by the inferior cardiac nerve or nerves: the superior part of the parietal division of the right pleura is situated *inferior* and *external* to the artery.

We have spoken of a fascia in connection with the left vena innominata, as it passes across the arteria innominata: this fascia will be found to connect not merely those two vessels with one another, and to afford them coverings, but by a deeper-seated process to connect the artery with the trachea, to which latter tube also it furnishes an investment. This fascia has been described by Sir A. Cooper as enveloping these vessels, connecting them with the bones which form the opening of the thorax, and continuous with the fibrous portion of the pericardium. He also describes this fascia as continuous above with the deep-seated fascia of the neck described by Burns.*

Mr. Godman, of Philadelphia, also described this the thoracic fascia, and its continuity with the pericardium and fascia of the neck.†

The anatomy of the great *venous trunks* in relation to the arteria innominata, next demands our attention. The *left vena innominata* will be seen crossing obliquely above the middle portion of the arch of the aorta, in front of the left carotid, trachea, and arteria innominata, downwards and towards the right side of this latter vessel, a distance of about three inches. The *right vena innominata* will be seen passing in a more vertical direction, but taking a shorter course, and ranging below the level of the first stage of the right subclavian artery. The two venæ innominatæ unite to form the *vena cava descendens*, upon a plane anterior and to the right of the arteria innominata, and about half an inch below its bifurcation. An intervascular space will be found in this situation, formed superiorly and internally by the trunk of the arteria innominata and part of the right subclavian artery; inferiorly and to the right side by the right vena innominata; internally the interval is closed by the termination of the left vena innominata in the vena cava descendens; and superiorly by the internal jugular uniting with the subclavian vein to form the right vena innominata. This interval will be found to contain a quantity of loose areolar tissue, the vagus nerve, and the origin of its recurrent branch or inferior laryngeal nerve, which may be seen in this situation passing underneath the right subclavian artery: the inferior cardiac nerve will be found here also: the layer of fascia, already described, as continuous with the deep layer of the cervical fascia, covers all these parts. It is this space which the surgeon's aneurism-needle must traverse in the operation of tying the arteria innominata.

---

* Anatomy of the Thymus Gland, p. 24.

† Anatomical Investigations, by John D. Godman, in Philadelphia Journal, 1824.

If the dissection of the artery be made from the chest, the apex of the right lung should be drawn downward; the finger may be then passed upwards into the summit of the supra-clavicular region, so as to pass behind the middle stage of the right subclavian artery; it will be then found that the parietal layer of the pleura will ascend from the thorax into this region, forming the apex of the cone of the pleura. If the finger be now pressed internally and anteriorly, the under surface of the arteria innominata may be felt, through the pleura.

If a vertical section of the arteria innominata and arch of the aorta be made, the right wall of the former vessel will be observed to form nearly a directly continuous surface with the convexity of the arch; whilst its left wall will be seen forming a spur-like projection into the aorta: a considerable amount of the column of blood issuing from the heart will be thus directed into the arteria innominata. The same observation will apply to the origins of the left carotid and left subclavian arteries, though in these vessels the arrangement is not so distinctly seen.

Operation of tying the arteria innominata.—This operation has been performed in about ten cases: in nine for subclavian aneurisms; and in one, where hemorrhage took place after ligature of the subclavian: all these cases were attended with fatal results.

LIGATURE OF THE ARTERIA INNOMINATA.

No.	Operator.	Date of Operation.	Results and Observations.
1	Mott of New York....	1818	Death on the 26th day, from hemorrhage: ligature came away on the 14th day.
2	Norman of Bath.......	1824	Death.
3	Graefe of Berlin.......	1829	Death on the 67th day, from hemorrhage: ligature came away on the 14th day.
4	Arendt, a Russian surgeon..............	1830	Death on the 8th day, from inflammation of the lungs, pleura, and aneurismal sac.
5	Bland of Sydney, New South Wales	1832	Death on the 18th day, from hemorrhage.
6	Hall of Baltimore.....	1833	Death on the 5th day, from hemorrhage. Coats of the artery were diseased.
7	A Parisian surgeon; —case alluded to by Dupuytren, Clinique Chirurgicale, vol. iv. p. 611....................	1834	Death from hemorrhage.
8	Lizars of Edinburgh	1837	Death on the 21st day, from hemorrhage.
9	Hutin, a French surgeon................	1842	Death in 12 hours, from hemorrhage.
10	Cooper of San Francisco..................	1859	Death on the 9th day.

In the year 1831, Professor Porter, of this city, exposed the artery for the purpose of including it in a ligature, but, finding it diseased throughout its entire length, he thought it advisable not to tie the vessel: the wound was therefore closed. After some time the tumor had undergone considerable diminution in size, and when the patient left the hospital it had become nearly consolidated, and the pulsation had almost ceased.* A nearly similar case occurred in the practice of Mr. Key. The operator attempted to pass the ligature round the arteria innominata, but did not persevere. On the 18th day the patient was going on tolerably well, but the sac, increasing in size, pressed upon the trachea, and stopped respiration. The patient died on the 23d day after the operation.†

In none of these cases did the sudden abstraction of blood from the head, neck, and right upper extremity produce any serious consequence, or even inconvenience; though, as Dr. Mott observes, "to intercept suddenly one-fourth quantity of blood so near the heart, without producing some unpleasant effect, no surgeon, *a priori*, would have believed possible." The profession were not, however, altogether unprepared for these important results; for cases were occasionally observed in which the obstruction of considerable trunks supplying the brain, did not appear to be followed by any alarming consequence. Thus Pelletan dissected a case in which the right subclavian, right carotid, and termination of the arteria innominata, had been completely impervious during life, without having produced any serious consequence; and Mr. W. Darrach has related a similar case, except that the right subclavian was in this instance pervious.

Mode of performing the operation.—The patient should lie on his back on a table, with both the shoulders thrown forwards, the right being at the same time drawn forcibly downwards, and the head leaning backwards, and to the left side. An incision should then be made transversely from the external margin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle parallel to and above the clavicle, till it terminates opposite the trachea: a second incision is then to be made along the anterior margin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, about three inches in length, and terminating inferiorly at the internal extremity of the preceding incision. On raising the flap, the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle is brought into view: under this a director should be conveyed from within outwards, keeping it close to the muscular fibres, in order to exclude the veins and nerves in this situation. On this we divide the sternal, and part (almost all, according to Guthrie) of the clavicular origin of the muscle. We then, by a similar proceeding, divide successively the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles of the right side above the sternum. With the nail, or handle of the scalpel, we should now tear through the dense aponeurosis covering the carotid artery, and in the same way dissect the small veins in this situation, not using the cutting edge of the knife as long as we can avoid it. When the carotid artery is exposed, it will serve (unless there be an irregularity) to conduct the finger to the arteria innominata, which, on account of the patient's position, will be drawn up from the thorax. The left vena innominata should now be depressed, and the aneurism-needle passed from without inwards and upwards, keeping it close to the vessel to avoid the pleura, and the pneumogastric and inferior cardiac nerves, all of which are on its right side. By tying the artery near its termination, there is more room left for the formation of an internal coagulum. After the needle is passed underneath the vessel, considerable difficulty is often experienced in depressing its handle, so as to raise its point sufficiently on the opposite side: it became desirable, accordingly, that some means should be contrived to obviate this difficulty, and facilitate the conveyance of the ligature in deep situations. For this purpose a very ingenious instrument has been invented by Mr. L'Estrange, of this city.

---

* Dub. Jour. 1832, vol. i.

† Crisp on "Diseases of the Blood-Vessels," p. 206.

Two other methods have been proposed to effect a ligature of the arteria innominata. The first is to trepan the upper piece of the sternum, and tie this vessel below the left vena innominata: this is a most objectionable proceeding. The second has been proposed originally by Dr. O'Donnell, of Liverpool,* and subsequently recommended by Velpeau: the following is an abridged account of it; the operator stands at the *left* side of the patient's head; an incision is to be made through the skin, commencing at the internal margin of the *left* sterno-mastoid muscle, and carried downwards and towards the right side for the extent of about two inches. The next incisions should divide the two layers of fascia in this situation, so as to expose the trachea. The middle thyroid artery, if present, and veins, are to be pushed aside, and, if necessary, tied. The index finger is now made to glide between the right sterno-hyoid muscle and the trachea, in order to detect the arteria innominata. The operator then passes a curved staff with great caution and management from before backwards, between the artery and vena cava superior. The posterior surface of the vessel is next to be denuded, and raised with the staff in the same cautious manner. Guided by this, the "stylet port fil" should be introduced from left to right, and from behind forwards. Velpeau says, that this operation is incontestably more simple, more rational, and less dangerous than any other; and has, moreover, this advantage, that the same proceeding will serve for the ligature of either of the subclavians in the first stage, or either of the carotids near its origin. Unfortunately, however, no matter how simple the steps of the operation may be made for including the arteria innominata in a ligature, the results of the operation have been so uniformly fatal that the surgeon has nothing to encourage him in its adoption.

---

* Cyclopædia of Practical Surgery, vol. i. p. 260.

COMMON CAROTID ARTERIES.

The common carotid of the right side arises from the arteria innominata at the superior outlet of the thorax, behind, and on a level with the upper portion of the right sterno-clavicular articulation, and between the sternal and clavicular origins of the right sterno-cleidomastoid muscle. On the left side it arises within the thorax, from the arch of the aorta. As the two common carotid arteries ascend in the neck they separate from each other, and terminate one on either side opposite the superior margin of the thyroid cartilage, below the great cornu of the os hyoides, and at a point corresponding to about the third cervical vertebra, about an inch below the angle of the lower jaw. In this course they are separated inferiorly by the trachea and œsophagus, and superiorly, at a greater distance, by the larynx and pharynx. Each of the carotid arteries is contained within a fibrous sheath, formed by a process of the deep cervical fascia; the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve are also contained within it. The tendinous centre of the omo-hyoid muscle may be seen crossing in front of the sheath, and attaching itself intimately to it, nearly opposite the cricoid cartilage. The common carotid of each side may be thus considered as divided into two stages,—one *below* the omo-hyoid muscle, the other *above* it. We shall first describe the relations of the right common carotid artery in these two stages, then the course and relations of the left, and afterwards point out the differences between them.

First or inferior stage of the right Common Carotid.—This vessel, as has been stated, arises from the arteria innominata immediately behind the upper part of the sterno-clavicular articulation, and inclines a little backwards as it ascends in the neck. In this stage it is covered *anteriorly* by the teguments, by the platysma myoides (except in the immediate neighborhood of its origin from the innominata);—more deeply by the sterno-mastoid enclosed within a proper sheath of the cervical fascia; by the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles, and still deeper, by branches of the descendens noni nerve, and by the cervical fascia. When the sterno-mastoid muscle is largely developed, its sternal portion considerably overlaps the artery after its origin from the arteria innominata. *Internally* it is related to the trachea, œsophagus, and thyroid gland, which often overlaps it; and to the larynx and inferior portion of the pharynx. *Externally* it is related to the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve, which latter lies deeply concealed between the artery and vein,—the nerve, artery, and vein being contained in a common sheath of fascia: sometimes a distinct septum of the same structure passes from the front to the back part of the sheath, so as to separate the artery from the vein. *Posteriorly*, it is crossed by the inferior thyroid artery, which separates it from the vertebral: the sympathetic nerve and its branches descending, and the recurrent nerve ascending, and some loose areolar tissue lie also behind the common carotid, and separate it from the spine and longus colli muscle.

First or inferior stage of the left Common Carotid.—The left carotid artery arises from the arch of the aorta. The first stage of this artery may be divided into two portions,—a *thoracic* and *cervical:* the thoracic extends from the origin of the vessel from the arch of the aorta, between the origins of the arteria innominata and left subclavian, and opposite to the second dorsal vertebra, to the upper and back part of the left sterno-clavicular articulation. This portion is therefore situated within the cavity of the thorax. *Anteriorly,* its origin is covered by the sternum, sterno-clavicular articulation, sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles, and the commencement of the left vena innominata; and higher up, in its second or cervical portion, it has the same anterior relations as the artery of the right side. *Internally* it is related to the arteria innominata, trachea, œsophagus, and thymus gland which usually overlaps it. In close relation to it *externally* we find the internal jugular vein, and the pneumogastric nerve, which lies concealed deeply between the artery and the vein; the phrenic nerve, and the upper part of the left pleura and lung are also related to its outer side: the thoracic duct lies posterior to the artery at its origin, but afterwards passes to its external side. *Posteriorly*, it first rests on the left side of the trachea, and on the œsophagus, and afterwards upon parts similar to those which constitute the posterior relations of the right common carotid. Higher up it is separated from the spine and longus colli muscle by the sympathetic nerve and its cardiac branches, as at the right side. These are the usual relations of the left carotid, but they may vary, or their number be increased in consequence of irregularities.

Hence it appears that the right and left common carotids differ in the following respects in their first stage. The right comes from the arteria innominata, and the left from the arch of the aorta; consequently the left is longer than the right. The left lies within the cavity of the thorax, on the front of the trachea and œsaphagus, and is intimately connected with the thoracic duct. On the right side the internal jugular vein separates from the artery inferiorly, passing outwards from its external surface; a small vascular triangle is thus formed, bounded internally by the carotid artery, externally by the internal jugular vein, and inferiorly by the first stage of the subclavian artery. On the left side the jugular vein overlaps the outer edge of the carotid artery inferiorly, so that no such vascular triangle exists.

The student should now examine the large venous trunks which are related to the thoracic portion of the left carotid artery. The left internal jugular vein will be seen descending along the outer side of the artery, and in this situation uniting with the left subclavian vein to the right side of, and on a plane anterior to, the left subclavian artery, to form the left vena innominata. When the jugular vein is distended it overlaps the outer part of the left common carotid artery in this situation. The origin of the left vena innominata will be therefore anterior to a point corresponding to the narrow interspace between the lower parts of the thoracic portions of the left carotid and subclavian arteries: it then passes obliquely in front of the left common carotid, the trachea and arteria innominata, and unites, as already described, with the right vena innominata to form the vena cava descendens. In its course the left vena innominata receives the inferior thyroid, the left internal mammary, left phrenic, pericardial, and anterior mediastinal veins. The left vena innominata is retained in its position by a thin layer of the descending portion of the thoracic fascia.

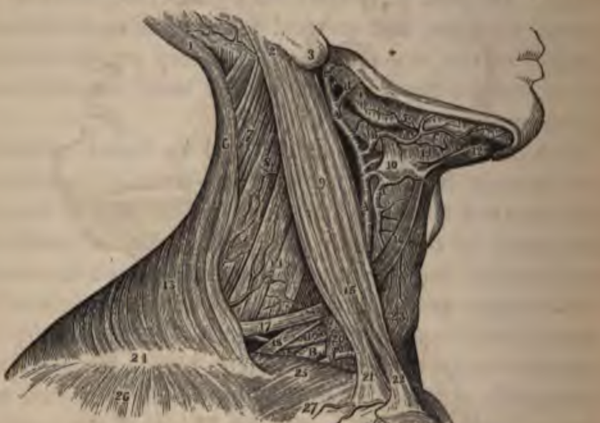
Second or superior stage of the common carotid artery.—In this stage the artery of each side lies close to the bodies of the cervical vertebræ, resting *posteriorly* on the longus colli muscle and sympathetic nerve: *internally* it is related to the larynx, pharynx, and thyroid gland: *externally* its relations are the same as in the inferior stage. In *front* it is covered by the integuments, platysma myoides, and cervical fascia: the sterno-mastoid branch of the superior thyroid artery crosses it anteriorly, whilst the superior thyroid itself descends on a plane anterior and internal to it.

The common carotid artery will be found related to two triangular regions in the neck,—namely, the anterior inferior, and the anterior superior: the first is bounded internally by the middle line, which may be considered as the base; the two other sides are situated externally,—the lower side formed by the external origin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, and the upper by the anterior belly of the omo-hyoid; the apex is situated externally at the decussation between these two muscles. The carotid artery will be seldom found contained fairly within this triangular region; in an emaciated subject a small portion of the vessel may lie within it, corresponding to the apex; but in a muscular subject the artery lies under cover of the sterno-mastoid muscle, until it has passed into the anterior superior lateral triangle. This latter space is bounded superiorly by the posterior belly of the digastric and the stylo-hyoid muscles; this may be considered the base: externally by the sterno-mastoid muscle, and internally by the anterior belly of the omo-hyoid: the apex is situated inferiorly at the point of separation between these two muscles.

uld appear from the preceding account that the
he common carotid artery may be effectually

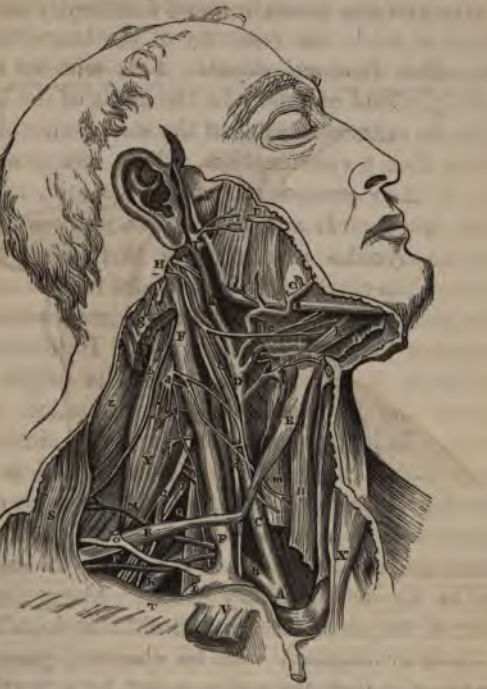
compressed against the spinal column, so as to prevent hemorrhage in case of a wound of the trunk or its branches. Such pressure, however, could not in a great majority of cases be maintained sufficiently long in consequence of the great suffering produced by pressure on the adjacent nerves; still it is often of the greatest importance to know a means of arresting the flow of blood, until the surgeon shall be in attendance to perform the operation of tying the wounded artery.

Fig. 7.—Dissection to show part of the course of the External Carotid Artery, of some of its branches, and part of the course of the right Subclavian Artery.



1, Occipital portion of Occipito-frontalis Muscle. 2, Insertion of Sterno-mastoid Muscle—aponeurotic connection between it and Trapezius removed. 3, Lobe or Lobulus of the Ear. 4, Ramus of the lower jaw. 5, Masseter Muscle. 6, Upper portion of Trapezius Muscle. 7, Splenius Muscle. 8, Levator Anguli Scapulæ. 9, Sterno-mastoid. 10, Great Cornu of the Os-hyoides,—the Lingual Artery getting above it to pass deeper than the Hyo-glossus Muscle. 11, Mylo-hyoid Muscle. 12, Anterior belly of Digastric Muscle—the posterior has been removed. 13, Lower part of Trapezius. 14, Scalenus Medius and Posticus. 15, Relation between the Omo-hyoid and Sterno-mastoid Muscles. 16, Anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid. 17, Posterior belly of Omo-hyoid. 18, One of the Nerves of the Brachial Plexus. 19, Posterior Scapular Artery given off in this case by Subclavian Artery behind Anterior Scalenus. 20, Anterior Scalenus Muscle. 21, Portion of clavicular origin of Sterno-mastoid. 22, Sternal origin of Sterno-mastoid Muscle. 23, Thyroid Gland. 24, Aponeurotic junction between the Trapezius and Deltoid Muscles. 25, Clavicle. 26, Deltoid Muscle. 27, Small Arterial twig. Lower A, Bifurcation of Common Carotid Artery. Upper A, External Carotid Artery. B, Subclavian Artery after having passed behind the Anterior Scalenus Muscle. a, Superior Thyroid Artery. b, Facial or External Maxillary Artery: Submaxillary Gland removed. The Inferior Palatine Artery is seen behind b. c, Inferior Mental or Sub-mental Artery. d, Transversalis Faciei Artery. e, External Carotid near its termination: lower part of Parotid Gland removed. f, Suprascapular Artery crossing the Anterior Scalenus Muscle.

Fig. 8.—Dissection to show the relations of the Nerves, Arteries, and Veins of the right side of the neck.



A, Arteria Innominata. B, Subclavian Artery crossed by the Vagus Nerve. C, Common Carotid Artery having the Vagus Nerve to its outside. D, E, External Carotid Artery. F, F, Internal Jugular Vein crossed by branches of the Cervical Plexus, which join the Descendens Noni Nerve. G, Facial Artery. H, Occipital Artery in relation with Internal Jugular Vein, and Ninth Nerve. I, Superior Thyroid Artery. K, Subclavian Artery in relation with Brachial Plexus of Nerves. L, Part of Subclavian Vein lying on Scalenus Anticus Muscle. M, Transversalis Colli Artery. O, Union of External Jugular and Posterior Scapular Veins. P, Transversalis Humeri Artery. Q, Q, Q, Branches of Brachial Plexus of Nerves. R, R, Omo-hyoid Muscle. S, Trapezius Muscle. T, Clavicle. V, Clavicular origin of Sterno-mastoid Muscle. Y, Scalenus Posticus Muscle. Z, Splenius Muscle. a, Cervical Plexus assisting in forming the Phrenic Nerve which descends on the Scalenus Anticus Muscle. b, Spinal Accessory Nerve, which pierces the Sterno-mastoid Muscle. c, Internal Carotid Artery, with Descendens Noni Nerve lying on it. d, Vagus Nerve between the Carotid Artery and Internal Jugular Vein. e, Ninth Nerve. f, Lingual Artery passing under the Hyo-glossus Muscle. g, Mastoid portion of Sterno-mastoid Muscle. h, Genio-hyoid Muscle. i, Mylo-hyoid Muscle cut and turned forwards. l, Internal Maxillary Artery passing behind the neck of the lower jaw. m, Sterno-thyroid Muscle cut across. n, Sterno-hyoid Muscle cut across. p, Sympathetic Nerve behind and between Carotid Artery and Jugular Vein. r, Parotid Duct.

VEINS OF THE NECK.

Before we proceed to speak of the operation of tying the trunk of the common carotid artery, the student is advised to study the anatomy of the large veins of the neck. The *External Jugular Vein* will be seen commencing behind and close to the angle of the lower jaw, and to the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid muscle: it is in fact a continuation of the temporo-maxillary vein: it then crosses the sterno-mastoid, running obliquely downwards and backwards, and covered by the platysma-myoides muscle, until it reaches about the centre of the clavicle; it then sinks behind and underneath the posterior border of the sterno-mastoid and terminates in the subclavian vein. It pierces the cervical fascia in two situations,—at its origin near the angle of the jaw, and at its termination above the clavicle. In its intermediate course it is situated immediately under cover of the platysma, and is comparatively superficial. Sometimes a large branch of communication will be seen passing from the external to the internal jugular vein below the angle of the jaw, and close to the sub-maxillary gland. Along the anterior border of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, a large vein, the *Anterior Jugular*, will be observed passing down towards the sternum and covered by a portion of the cervical aponeurosis: it lies in front of the sterno-hyoid muscle, and close to the upper margin of the sternum it passes outwards behind the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, runs for a short distance along the upper and back part of the clavicle across a space filled with loose areolar tissue, situated between the lower part of the sterno-mastoid muscle anteriorly and the insertion of the scalenus anticus posteriorly, and finally terminates in the subclavian vein internal to the entrance of the external jugular vein, or in common with this vessel: a transverse branch of communication will sometimes be found connecting the two anterior jugular veins immediately above the sternum.

The *Internal Jugular Vein* should be carefully studied in relation to the common carotid artery of each side. These vessels are contained within a sheath formed by the cervical aponeurosis, and, as has been already stated, the vein lies upon the outer side of each of the common carotid arteries in their two cervical stages: there is, however, at the lower portion of the artery of the left side, a closer connection between it and the internal jugular vein than at the right. Frequently a well-marked aponeurotic septum will be found running from the anterior to the posterior portion of the sheath, so as to divide it into two canals, the inner containing the artery, the outer containing the vein and vagus nerve.

LIGATURE OF THE COMMON CAROTID ARTERY.

This operation has been performed on several occasions, and under various circumstances. The four following heads will include these different operations:—

1. The common carotid has been tied for wounds or ulceration of this vessel or of its branches.

2. It has been tied according to the Hunterian method, *i.e.* between the aneurismal tumor and the heart, in cases of aneurism of the trunk of the artery itself, or of its branches.

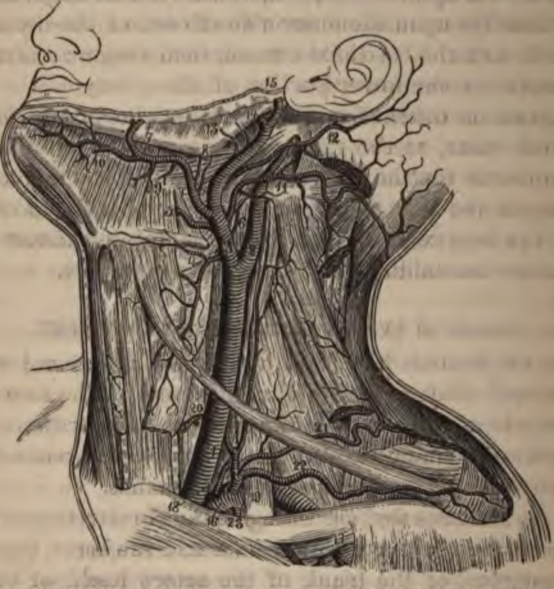
3. The artery has been tied according to the method proposed by Brasdor and Dessault, *i.e.* beyond the aneurismal tumor,—between it and the capillary system of vessels,—for the cure of aneurism of the trunk of the artery itself.

4. Upon the same principle as that adopted by Brasdor, the common carotid has been tied beyond the tumor,

in cases of aneurismal disease of the arteria innominata, including the origin of the right carotid. This plan was first recommended by Mr. Wardrop.

That the direct flow of blood through the common carotid artery may be arrested without impairing the functions of the brain, has been abundantly proved by dissection. In a man who died seven years after aneurism of the neck, *Petit* found the common carotid obliterated. *Haller* has noticed a similar occurrence. *Baillie* found it obliterated on one side and contracted on the

Fig. 9.—Left Common Carotid dividing into the External and Internal Carotid Arteries.



1. Common Carotid Artery. 2, Internal Carotid. 3, External Carotid. 4, Superior Thyroid. 5, Lingual. 6, Pharyngeal Artery. 7, Facial. 8, Inferior Palatine and Tonsillar Arteries. 9, Submaxillary. 10, Submental. 11, Occipital. 12, Posterior Auricular. 13, Parotid branches. 14, Internal Maxillary. 15. Temporal Artery. 16, Subclavian Artery. 17, Axillary. 18. Vertebral Artery. 19, Thyroid Axis. 20, Inferior Thyroid giving off the Ascending Cervical. 21, Transverse Cervical. 22, Supra-scapular. 23, Internal Mammary Artery.

other, and *Jadelot* is said to have observed a case in which both common carotids were obliterated. By the experiments of Galen and Valsalva upon dogs, and by the success of the operation on the human subject, the same fact has been demonstrated. This will not appear surprising, if we recollect that the brain is supplied by four large arteries, viz.:—the two internal carotids, and the two vertebrals arising from the subclavian arteries, and that these anastomose in the freest manner by large branches at the base of the brain, independently of their extensive communication by smaller branches. Mr. Hodgson is inclined to believe that the brain, in its natural state, receives a larger quantity of blood than is requisite for the due performance of its functions; having found that in a dog whose two carotids had been tied, the aggregate of the anastomosing tubes was not equal to the calibre of one carotid artery in its natural state.

The trunk of the common carotid has been tied in cases of wound or ulceration of this vessel or of its branches. Hebenstreit relates the first case on record in which it was tied in the human subject, in consequence of its having been divided during the removal of a schirrous tumor: the operation succeeded. In a second case Mr. Abernethy tied the common carotid for hemorrhage from a lacerated wound: and though the patient did not recover, yet his death was not occasioned by an insufficient quantity of blood being transmitted to the brain. My colleague, Mr. Ellis, one of the surgeons of the Jervis Street Hospital, tied this artery with complete success* in an individual who, in an attempt to commit suicide, had opened some of the branches of the artery by an incision which extended from the angle of the jaw towards the chin. Sir A. Cooper was the first who tied the artery for the cure of aneurism, according to the Hunterian method, and this operation has since been repeatedly performed, and with considerable success. The same operation has also been performed for aneurism by anastomosis of the orbit, by Travers and Dalrymple. It was also tied successfully by Professor Pattison, for a large aneurism by anastomosis of the cheek;* and both common carotids were tied successfully by Dr. Mussey, of New Hampshire in America, for aneurism by anastomosis on the crown of the head :† between the two operations there was an interval of only twelve days: the tumor was subsequently removed, and the patient recovered. It has been observed that when this vessel is the seat of aneurism, it frequently occurs at its bifurcation, where there exists even in health a transverse dilatation.

---

* Ellis's Clinical Surgery, p. 25.

The operation of tying the common carotid artery beyond the aneurismal tumor, *i.e.* at the *capillary* side of the aneurism, has been performed by Deschamps and Sir A. Cooper, but with fatal results. In 1825 Mr. Wardrop performed this operation with success.‡ The common carotid has also been tied in accordance with the proposal of Mr. Wardrop. Acting on the suggestion of Mr. Wardrop, Mr. Evans of Derbyshire tied the artery in a case of aneurism of the arteria innominata involving the origin of the right common carotid; this operation was successful.§ This vessel was also tied for aneurism of the arteria innominata by Dr. Hutton, one of the surgeons of the Richmond Hospital, in June, 1842: the patient died on the seventy-sixth day. There was no union of the coats of the artery where the ligature had been applied.*

---

* Med. and Phys. Jour. vol. 48.

† Amer. Jour. Med. Sciences for February, 1830.

‡ Trans. of Med. Chir. Soc., 1825.

§ Lancet, 1828.

This artery has been tied about eleven times for aneurism of the arteria innominata, upon the principle advocated by Mr. Wardrop. Two out of the eleven recovered; the rest died.

The operation of including the Common Carotid Artery in a ligature may be performed either in its inferior stage below the omo-hyoid muscle, or in its superior stage, above this muscle.

The operation of tying the Common Carotid Artery in its inferior stage. An incision should be made through the integuments along the internal margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, for the extent of about three inches above the clavicle. In most cases a vein may be observed descending along the anterior margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle communicating with the facial vein above, and with the thyroid plexus of veins, or the subclavian vein, below: care must be taken not to injure this. A portion of the fascia at the lower part of the incision should next be raised in the forceps, and divided in a horizontal direction: through the opening thus made a director should be introduced from below upwards in the line of the first incision, and the fascia slit up on it as far as may be necessary. The lips of the wound are now to be separated by retractors, the sterno-mastoid muscle being drawn outwards, and the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid inwards. The sheath of the vessels will be thus exposed, and on the front of it may be seen the internal branch of the descendens noni nerve, which should be drawn inwards, and the sheath divided in the same cautious way as the fascia.

---

* Dublin Pathological Reports, 1842, p. 197.

A ligature is now to be passed round the artery, directing the needle from without inwards, in order to avoid the jugular vein, which sometimes suddenly swells out during expiration, and then contracts during inspiration. As the vein fills at both its upper and lower extremity, an assistant should in such case compress it both at the upper and lower angle of the wound. In very many cases the vein, so far from giving any trouble, is not even observed during the whole of the operation. In a case operated on by Dr. Browne, of the Navan County Infirmary, "the internal jugular vein did not appear, nor was it a source of the slightest inconvenience during the operation." In a similar case related by Mr. Hodgson, "the jugular vein afforded no trouble in the operation; it was not even seen." Mr. Read, of Dublin, whose experience is very considerable, is reported by Mr. Hargrave to have said that "in all the operations he performed, or assisted in, on this vessel, the vein was not found to interfere with the operation, nor was it even seen."* The existence of the fibrous septum extending from the anterior to the posterior part of the sheath, and thus separating the artery from the vein, may explain this fact. Care is to be taken to avoid including the pneumogastric nerve, which lies behind and between the vessels: the nerve should be drawn outwards with the vein. The sympathetic and recurrent nerves are behind the sheath, and there is comparatively little danger of including them in the ligature. In operating on the left side, the proximity of the thoracic duct is to be borne in mind.

Sedillot's operation. He makes an incision two and a half inches long, which passes from the internal end of the clavicle obliquely upwards and outwards in the direction of *the interval between the two origins of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle.* The skin, platysma, and deep fascia are successively divided, the two portions of the muscle drawn apart with the edges of the wound, and the internal jugular vein is reached inside the anterior scalenus and phrenic nerve. The sheath of the vessel is opened, the vein drawn to the outside, and the artery sought at its internal side. The decided objection to this operation is that there is the greatest possible danger of wounding the internal jugular vein, which lies at the bottom of *this* incision, and which, if distended, as it is most likely to be during the operation, from the struggles of the patient or from other causes, will present itself in such a manner as to obscure the artery from the view of the surgeon. In a word, the operator, instead of getting into that compartment of the sheath which contains the artery, gets into that which contains the vein.

---

* Operative Surgery, p. 68.

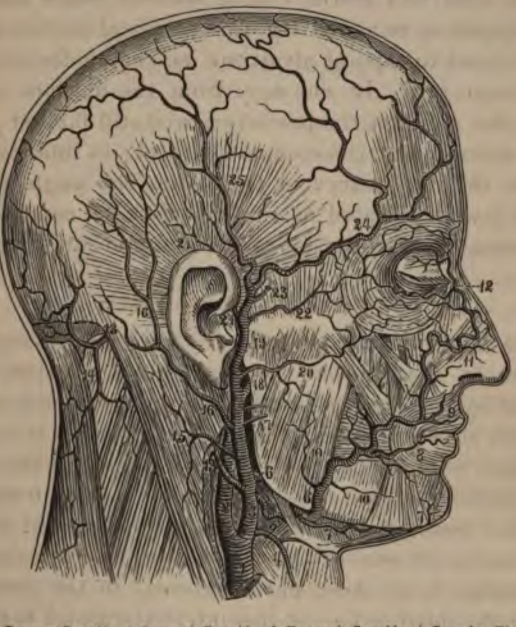
Operation of tying the Common Carotid in its superior stage. The first incision should commence a little beneath the angle of the lower jaw, and terminate on the side of the cricoid cartilage. This incision will divide the skin, platysma myoides, and cervical fascia, and expose the sheath of the vessels with the descendens noni nerve lying on its front. The nerve is to be drawn outwards, and the sheath opened in the cautious manner already described. The artery being now exposed, the needle is to be carried around it from without inwards, taking care (as in the inferior operation) not to wound the jugular vein nor include the pneumogastric nerve. It should also be remembered that the communicans noni, a branch of the cervical plexus, not unfrequently descends within the sheath of the vessels between the carotid artery and jugular vein.

Having arrived opposite the superior margin of the thyroid cartilage, and below the great cornu of the os hyoides, the common carotid artery of each side divides into the *external* and *internal* carotid arteries. At the point of bifurcation the artery generally presents a transverse dilatation, so that the vessel appears enlarged in this situation. This enlargement lies anterior to the longus colli and rectus capitis anticus major muscles, corresponding to about the third cervical vertebra, and in the adult to a point about one inch below the angle of the lower jaw. In old age, from the absence of the teeth, the angle of the jaw is removed still farther above the bifurcation of the common carotid; in infancy also, before the appearance of the teeth, the angle of the lower jaw is situated at a comparatively considerable distance above the division of the common carotid artery.

EXTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY.

This artery usually arises nearly opposite the superior margin of the thyroid cartilage; it is situated, until crossed by the digastric and stylo-hyoid muscles, in the anterior superior lateral triangle of the neck. It derives its name, not from its position with regard to the internal carotid at the origin of these vessels from the common trunk, for in this situation the external carotid is the more internal of the two, but because its ultimate destination is to those parts external to the cranium, whilst the destination of the internal carotid is principally to the parts contained within this cavity. The external carotid may be divided into two stages, the *first* extending from its origin to the lower part of the parotid gland; and the *second* where the artery lies within the substance of this gland. After its origin it ascends towards the sub-maxillary gland, but afterwards turns outwards, and plunges into the parotid gland, through which it ascends as far as the neck of the inferior maxillary bone, where it terminates by dividing into the temporal and internal maxillary arteries. In this course it describes a curvature, the convexity of which looks upwards, backwards, and inwards towards the tonsil. In its first stage, before it reaches the parotid gland, its cutaneous surface is at first comparatively superficial, being covered by the skin, platysma myoides, and cervical fascia; by the union of the temporo-maxillary with the facial vein at the commencement of the external jugular; it is then covered a little higher up by

Fig. 10.—The External Carotid Artery and its Branches.



1, Right Common Carotid. 2, Internal Carotid. 3, External Carotid. 4, Superior Thyroid. 5, Lingual. 6, Facial. 7, Submental. 8, Inferior Coronary. 9, Superior Coronary. 10, Muscular Branches. 11, Lateral Nasal Artery. 12, Angular Artery. 13, Occipital Artery. 14, Descending Cervical. 15, Muscular Branch. 16, Posterior Auricular Artery. 17, Parotid Branches. 18, Internal Maxillary. 19, Temporal. 20, Transverse Facial. 21, Anterior Auricular. 22, Supra-orbital. 23, Middle Temporal. 24, Anterior Temporal. 25, Posterior Temporal Artery.

the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, the stylo-hyoid muscle, and the hypo-glossal nerve. At its commencement it lies in front of the superior laryngeal nerve, and the longus colli and rectus capitis anticus major muscles. On its outer side we find the internal carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and pneumogastric nerve. On its inner side we find the superior cornu of the thyroid cartilage, the posterior margin of the thyro-hyoid ligament, the great cornu of os hyoides, the side of the pharynx, the sub-maxillary gland, angle of the jaw, and still more internally the tonsil. After it has entered into the substance of the parotid, it is covered by the skin, the platysma, the cervical fascia, a portion of the gland, by its corresponding vein, namely, the temporo-maxillary, and by the facial nerve. Its deep surface is here separated from the internal carotid by the stylo-glossus and stylo-pharyngeus muscles, the styloid process, or, when this process is short, by the stylo-hyoid ligament, the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and occasionally the pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric nerve, and part of the gland.

Operation of tying the External Carotid.—The external carotid may be tied either above or below the crossing of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle. For the latter purpose an incision should be made through the integuments and platysma myoides, from beneath the angle of the jaw to the side of the thyroid cartilage. This incision will expose the digastric muscle, and by drawing it a little upwards the artery may be exposed and secured beneath the origin of its superior thyroid branch. Care should be taken not to include the superior laryngeal nerve, which descends obliquely inwards behind the origin of the external carotid. Mr. Guthrie is of opinion that the ligature should be applied near its origin, that is, immediately below where the superior thyroid artery is given off. In opening abscesses of the tonsil it should be borne in mind that the convexity of the external carotid may be closely applied to the outside of the swollen gland.

The branches of the external carotid artery are nine in number, and may be included under the following heads:—

Anterior.

Superior Thyroid.
Lingual.
Facial or Labial.

Posterior.

Occipital.
Posterior Auricular.

Internal, or Ascending.

Pharyngea Ascendens.

External.

Transversalis Facici.

Terminating.

Superficial Temporal.
Internal Maxillary.

The SUPERIOR THYROID ARTERY arises opposite the thyro-hyoid space. It first ascends towards the os hyoides, and then descends on the side of the larynx on a plane anterior and internal to the external carotid, to terminate in the thyroid gland. In this course it describes a curvature, the convexity of which looks upwards, touches the os hyoides, and corresponds to the concavity of a similar curvature in the lingual artery. *Posteriorly* it rests on some areolar tissue and the superior laryngeal nerve: *anteriorly* it is covered by the integuments, platysma myoides, cervical fascia, and by some small veins passing outwards from the larynx to the internal jugular vein; also by the sterno-hyoid, sterno-thyroid, and omo-hyoid muscles, and an internal branch of the descendens noni nerve which supplies the latter muscle.

The superior thyroid artery gives off the following branches:—

Hyoidean. Sterno-Mastoid.
Superior Laryngeal. Inferior Laryngeal or Crico-Thyroid.
Terminating.

The *Hyoidean branch*, which is small, passes inwards beneath the thyro-hyoid muscle, supplies the areolar tissue in this situation, and anastomoses with the corresponding branch of the opposite side.

The *Superior laryngeal branch* descends with the superior laryngeal nerve, passes beneath the thyro-hyoid muscle, and pierces the ligament of the same name. Here it divides into two branches,—one of which ascends behind the os hyoides to supply the anterior surface of the epiglottis and mucous membrane: the other descends on the inside of the ala of the thyroid cartilage, and terminates in the crico-arytenoid and crico-thyroid muscle, and by a great number of small branches in the mucous membrane of the larynx.

The *Sterno-mastoid branch* is constant, but variable in size: it crosses in front of the sheath of the carotid artery to reach the deep surface of the sterno-mastoid muscle, in which it is lost. This artery frequently arises from the posterior part of the external carotid, close to the origin of the lingual; from this point it first runs upwards, hooks over the lingual nerve, which it draws into an angle salient downwards; and then, running downwards and outwards, it reaches the deep-seated surface of the sterno-mastoid.

The *Inferior laryngeal* or *crico-thyroid branch* may come directly from the superior thyroid, but more usually it arises from its internal terminating branch. It passes horizontally inwards in front of the crico-thyroid membrane, and along the inferior margin of the thyroid cartilage, to anastomose with its fellow of the opposite side and supply the crico-thyroid membrane. This artery is pretty constant, though it varies as to size and origin. If it be absent at one side, the artery of the opposite side will be found larger than usual. It is often a branch of the superior laryngeal.

When the superior thyroid artery arrives near the thyroid gland it divides into *four terminating* or proper thyroid branches, namely, the internal, external, anterior, and posterior.

The *internal terminating branch* descends along the internal margin of the corresponding lobe, and unites in forming an arch with the corresponding branch of the opposite side: this branch usually gives off the inferior laryngeal artery.

The *external terminating branch* descends along the external margin of the corresponding lobe, and anastomoses with the inferior thyroid.

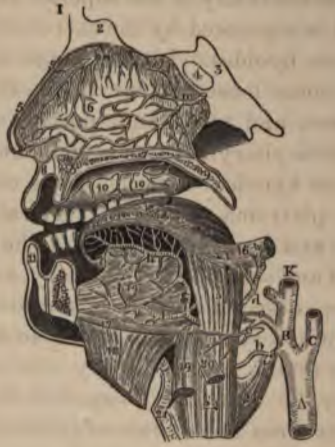
The *anterior terminating branch* is distributed to the anterior surface of the upper portion of the gland: it is not always present.

Lastly, the *posterior terminating branch* descends between the front of the trachea and the thyroid gland, in the substance of which gland it is lost.

The superior thyroid artery lies on a plane anterior and internal to the common carotid; and, therefore, in attempts at suicide, it is the vessel usually divided. In this case, we may either secure the bleeding vessel, or put a ligature on the external carotid beneath the origin of the former. This artery has been tied for the purpose of reducing the size of a bronchocele, or preparatory to extirpating the thyroid gland. The incision that exposed the external carotid will also expose the origin of the superior thyroid. In a case related in Houston's Catalogue (p. 80), this vessel crossed the crico-thyroid membrane.

The LINGUAL ARTERY is the next in order, but, as the branches of the facial or labial are more superficial, the student will find it expedient to dissect these first, and afterwards examine the course and branches of the lingual. This latter vessel arises a little above the superior

Fig. 11.—Dissection of the Lingual Artery.



1, Frontal Bone. 2, Crista Galli of the Ethmoid bone. 3, Sphenoid Bone. 4, Sphenoidal Sinus. 5, 5, Vertical section of the Nose. 6, Septum of Nose, with arterial anastomoses. 7, Twig from one of the terminating branches of the Spheno-palatine Artery, descending through the Canal, O. 8, Upper Lip. 9, Soft Palate, or Velum Pendulum Palati. 10, 10, Branches of the Superior Palatine Artery which descend through the Posterior Palatine Canal. 11, Lower Lip. 12, The Tongue. 13, Lower Jaw. 14, Genio-hyo-glossus Muscle. 15, Hyo-glossus Muscle. 16, Stylo-glossus Muscle. 17, Genio-hyoid Muscle. 18, Mylo-hyodeus cut and reflected. 19, Portion of Sterno-hyoid Muscle. 20, Part of the Omo-hyoid Muscle. 21, Thyroid Cartilage. 22, Thyro-hyoid Muscle. 23, Portion of Inferior Constrictor of the Pharynx. A. Common Carotid Artery. B, K, External Carotid Artery. C, Internal Carotid. a, Superior Thyroid Artery cut. b, Superior Laryngeal Branch of Thyroid. c, Lingual Artery. d, Dorsalis Linguæ. e, Hyoidean Branch of Lingual Artery. f, Sublingual Artery. g, Ranine Artery ascending to the base of the Tongue. h, Continuation of Ranine Artery. l, Facial or External Maxillary Artery. m, Branch of Spheno-palatine Artery. n, Branch of Anterior Ethmoidal Artery. o, Incisive Canal.

thyroid, and nearly opposite the os hyoides: it may be divided into three stages: in the first, it extends from its origin to the outer edge of the hyo-glossus muscle; in the second, it passes behind (or, more correctly speaking, deeper than) the muscle; in the third stage it gets the name of *the ranine artery,* and extends from the internal margin of the hyo-glossus muscle to its termination.

In the *first stage* it ascends a little, and then turns inwards, to get above the great cornu of the os hyoides, making a curvature, the convexity of which looks upwards, while the concavity, looking downwards, corresponds to the convexity of the superior thyroid artery, from which it is separated by the extremity of the great cornu of the os hyoides. In this stage it corresponds *posteriorly* to some loose areolar tissue, to the superior laryngeal nerve, and to a small portion of the middle constrictor of the pharynx at its attachment to the great cornu of the os hyoides: *anteriorly* it is covered by the integuments, platysma myoides, cervical fascia, lymphatic glands, and some small veins. The lingual nerve lies superficial and superior to the artery, and sometimes, when the nerve descends a little lower down than usual, it touches the artery: corresponding to the first stage of the course of the lingual artery, the tendon of the digastric may be seen lying superior to the lingual nerve; so that from above downwards in this situation we find, first the tendon, secondly the nerve, and lastly the artery.

In the *second stage* the artery passes upwards and inwards, and frequently pierces the posterior fibres of the hyo-glossus muscle in order to get to its deep-seated surface, along which it then passes: the hyo-glossus thus separates the lingual artery from the lingual nerve, which latter lies upon the cutaneous surface of the muscle. In this second stage the artery at first frequently lies superficial to a few of the posterior fibres of the hyoglossus muscle; these fibres have received the name of cerato-glossus muscle: afterwards when it gets to the deep-seated surface of the hyo-glossus, it runs along the external surface of the middle constrictor of the pharynx at its origin from the great cornu of the os hyoides: this portion of the bone lies immediately below the artery, and the vessel itself still lies below the level of the nerve. In this situation the artery sends minute branches to the middle constrictor.

In the *third stage*, where it is sometimes called the *ranine* artery, it ascends a little to reach the base of the tongue, and then proceeds horizontally along the inferior surface of this organ between the genio-glossus and lingualis muscles, and above the frænum linguæ: here it terminates in anastomosing with the artery of the opposite side. In this third stage it is accompanied by the ninth nerve, which at the anterior edge of the hyo-glossus muscle turns under, that is, superficial to the artery, and then proceeds along its inner side, towards the tip of the tongue; so that in this situation the two lingual nerves lie between the two arteries.

The branches given off by the lingual artery are three in number:

The Hyoidean, Dorsalis Linguæ and Sublingual.

The *Hyoidean branch* usually arises at the outer edge of the hyo-glossus muscle: it supplies the epiglottidean gland, and the muscles attached to the os hyoides, and anastomoses with the corresponding branch of the opposite side and with the superior thyroid artery.

The *Dorsalis linguæ* may be traced running upwards and outwards, under cover of the hyo-glossus muscle, towards the base of the tongue; some of its branches are lost in the stylo-glossus muscle and base of the tongue; while others, ascending, supply the tonsil and velum palati. It lies immediately under the mucous membrane. In many cases this artery is deficient or diminutive, and sometimes its place is supplied by two or three very small branches.

The *Sublingual artery* proceeds forwards and outwards to supply the gland of the same name: it also sends branches to the mucous membrane of the mouth, and often one that pierces the mylo-hyoid muscle to arrive at the anterior belly of the digastric. It anastomoses with that of the opposite side and with the submental artery. Sometimes the place of this artery is supplied by a large branch from the submental, which pierces the mylo-hyoid muscle to arrive at the gland.

Accompanying Veins. The lingual artery is accompanied in its first and second stages by one or two *venæ comites,* which arise from a plexus at the base of the tongue, and terminate in the internal jugular vein. From the same plexus arises a *satellite vein of the lingual nerve*, which accompanies the hypo-glossal or ninth nerve, and opens into the facial, or into the pharyngeal vein: lastly, the *ranine vein* lies on the inferior surface of the tongue, superficial and external to the artery in its third stage, and then passes between the mylo-hyoid and hyo-glossus muscles to terminate in the facial vein.

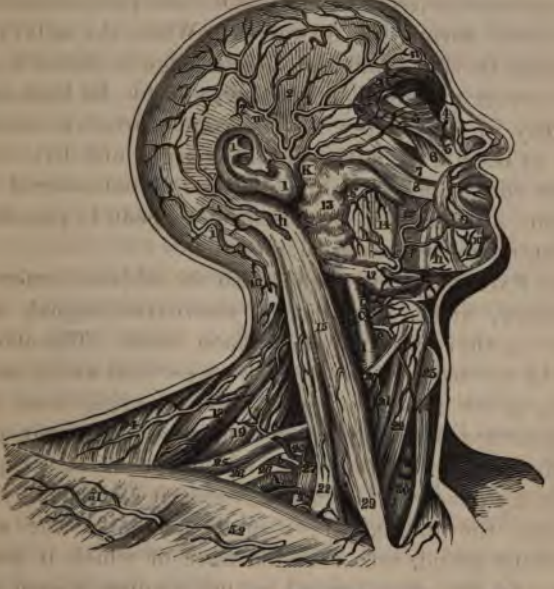
Operation of tying the Lingual Artery. This operation has been proposed by Beclard for hemorrhage after extirpation of portion of the tongue, or from other causes. The lingual artery may be exposed by an incision extending transversely from the os hyoides to the margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle. The skin, platysma, and fascia being divided, the glistening tendon of the digastric muscle is brought into view: beneath this, and lower down, is the hypo-glossal nerve, much duller in its appearance than the tendon; whilst the artery will be found situated still lower and a little deeper than the nerve.

Mr. Guthrie advises that the trunk of the external carotid should be tied whenever there is unmanageable hemorrhage from its branches.

The ranine artery may be wounded in the operation of dividing the frænum linguæ. This will not occur if blunt-pointed scissors be used, and their points directed *downwards* during the operation. When the artery is wounded in the child, the hemorrhage is favored by the vacuum produced in sucking, and by the heat and mobility of the parts. As the ranine arteries anastomose at their extremities only, the right and left sides of the tongue may be filled with different-colored injections. It has been proposed by Velpeau to puncture the ranine veins in cases of glossitis.

The Facial Artery, called also the labial or external maxillary, arises immediately above the lingual, and often together with it by a common trunk. The artery may be divided into two stages,—a cervical and a facial stage; in its *cervical stage* it ascends, lying near the outer surface of the mylo-hyoid and hyo-glossus muscles and under cover of the skin and superficial fascia, platysma myoides, cervical fascia, digastric and stylo-hyoid muscles, the lingual nerve, and portion of the submaxillary gland, into the substance of which it penetrates: in this situation it lies under cover also of the body of the inferior maxillary bone, and, after passing through the gland, touches the internal pterygoid muscle: it here makes a turn, the convexity of which is directed upwards and lies anterior and external to the tonsil: from this point it descends, reaches the inferior margin of the body of the bone and curves underneath its cutaneous surface where the first stage terminates. In its *facial stage* it ascends tortuously from the inferior margin of the body of the inferior maxilla, along the side of the face, till it arrives at the internal angle of

Fig. 12.—Dissection of some of the terminating branches of the External Carotid Artery and part of the course of the Subclavian Artery.



A, Right Subclavian Artery in third stage. B, Internal Carotid Artery. C, External Carotid Artery. K. Temporal Artery dividing lower down than usual. a, Supra-scapular Artery crossing Anterior Scalenus Muscle. b, Irregular Posterior Scapular Artery coming from Subclavian, and in this case passing between branches of Brachial Plexus. c, Muscular Artery. e, Superior Thyroid Artery. f, Facial Artery. g, Branch of Transverse Artery of face. h, Branch of Posterior Auris Artery. i, Branch of Occipital Artery. l, Anterior branch of Temporal Artery. m, Posterior branch of Temporal Artery. n, Frontal Artery. 1, 1, Pinna. 2, 2, Temporal Muscle covered by Temporal Aponeurosis. 3, Orbicularis Palpebrarum. 4, Angular Artery. 5, Levator Labii Superioris. 6, Levator Anguli Oris, or Musculus Caninus. 7, Zygomaticus Minor. 8, Zygomaticus Major. 9, Orbicularis Oris. 10, Muscular branches of Mental Artery. 11, Depressor Anguli Oris, or Triangularis Oris. 12, Buccinator Muscle. 13, Parotid Gland. 14, Masseter Muscle. 15, Sterno-mastoid Muscle. 16 Muscular branch of Occipital Artery. 17, Submaxillary Gland. 18, Levator Anguli Scapulæ Muscle. 19. Middle and Posterior Scaleni Muscles. 20, Anterior belly of Omo-hyoid Muscle. 21. Sterno-thyroid Muscle. 22, Sterno-hyoid Muscle. 23, Thyroid Cartilage. 24, Trapezius Muscle. 25, Posterior belly of Omo-hyoid Muscle. 26, 26, 26, Brachial Plexus. 27, Anterior Scalenus Muscle. 28, 29, Origins of Sterno-mastoid Muscle. 30, Trachea. 31, Deltoid. 32, Pectoralis Major.

the eye, where it terminates in anastomosing with the nasal and frontal branches of the ophthalmic artery. In this stage it lies on the inferior maxillary bone, in a groove frequently provided for its reception, between the masseter muscle posteriorly, and the triangularis oris anteriorly: it next lies on the buccinator muscle, the levator anguli oris or musculus caninus, the levator labii superioris proprius; and, lastly, on the nasal division of the levator labii superioris alæque nasi. In this stage it is covered by the skin and superficial fascia, platysma, and frequently by a few of the posterior fibres of the triangularis oris muscle; by the zygomaticus major and minor, by the labial division of the levator labii superioris alæque nasi near its insertion, and finally by a few of the internal and inferior fibres of the orbicularis palpebrarum muscle. In this situation the artery may be seen, after it has escaped from under cover of the labial portion of the levator labii superioris alæque nasi, lying against the outer side of the nasal portion of this muscle and thus separating the two portions from each other.

The *Facial Vein* is much less tortuous than the artery, and at the root of the nose and inner angle of the eyelids it communicates with the ophthalmic and with a large vein that descends on the middle line of the forehead, and communicates with its fellow of the opposite side by means of a short branch which passes across the root of the nose: as the facial vein descends, it crosses the cutaneous surface of the parotid duct, being external to the artery. On the body of the inferior maxillary bone, it lies close to the artery, touching its outer surface: it then descends superficial to the submaxillary gland, and either terminates in the external, internal, or anterior jugular vein.

The facial artery usually gives off eleven branches,—five in its cervical, and six in its facial stage.

Branches of Cervical stage.	*Branches of the Facial stage.*
Inferior Palatine.	Buccal.
Tonsilitic.	Inferior Labial.
Submaxillary.	Inferior Coronary.
Inferior or Submental.	Superior Coronary.
Internal Pterygoid.	Dorsalis Nasi.
	Angular.

The *Inferior Palatine branch* is usually small: it penetrates between the stylo-glossus and stylo-pharyngeus muscles to arrive at the superior and lateral part of the pharynx, where it divides into two principal branches, which are distributed to the pharynx, tonsils, and Eustachian tube.

The *Tonsilitic artery* sometimes comes off directly from the facial, and passes between the internal pterygoid and stylo-glossus muscles to its destination.

The *Submaxillary.* As the facial artery is passing through the substance of the submaxillary gland, it gives off several small branches, which are distributed to this structure and also to the tongue and mucous membrane of the mouth.

The *Inferior mental*, or *submental branch*, is a larger artery than the preceding; it runs along the base of the inferior maxillary bone towards the symphysis menti, being covered by the platysma myoides, and lying upon the cutaneous surface of the mylo-hyoid muscle. Near the middle line it divides into two branches, one of which crosses in front of the anterior belly of the digastric muscle to anastomose with that of the opposite side, while the other ascends on the front of the chin to supply the integuments, and communicates with the inferior dental branch of the internal maxillary artery. In some cases the inferior mental gives off the sublingual artery, which more usually arises from the lingual.

The *Internal Pterygoid branch*. On reaching the anterior margin of the internal pterygoid muscle the facial artery gives off a small branch which is distributed to the substance of this muscle.

The artery in its facial stage usually gives off the six branches already enumerated: these may be divided into external, internal, and terminating. The buccal and some small muscular branches constitute the external; the inferior labial, the two coronaries, and the dorsalis nasi compose the internal, and the angular is the terminating artery.

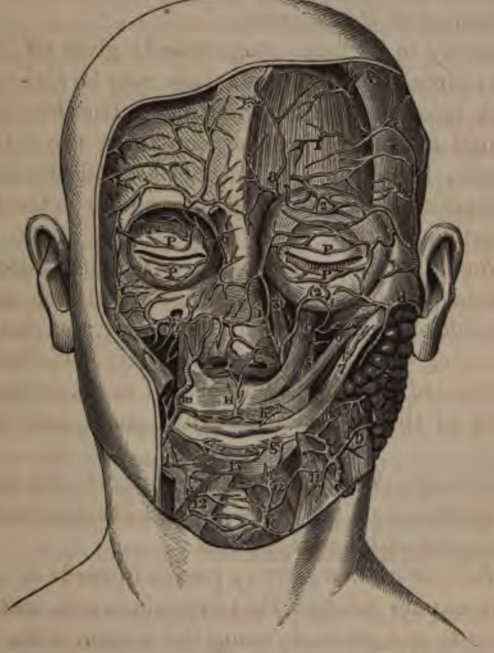
The *Buccal branch* runs backwards from the outer part of the facial over the buccinator muscle, and then, getting on the inside of the ramus of the lower jaw, terminates by anastomosing with the internal maxillary. Its branches are distributed to the buccinator and masseter muscles, to the fat of the cheek, the parotid gland, and Steno's duct.

The *Inferior labial branch* is distributed to the muscles and integuments of the lower lip, and anastomoses with the submental and dental arteries.

The *Inferior coronary artery* passes inwards in a very tortuous manner beneath the triangularis oris, and quadratus menti, and proceeds along the margin of the lower lip, close to its mucous membrane, where it anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side. In its course it supplies the above-mentioned muscles, and anastomoses with the inferior labial, submental, and dental arteries.

The *Superior coronary artery* arises near the commissure of the lips, and runs tortuously inwards between the labial glands and mucous membrane of the upper lip. On the middle line it anastomoses with the artery of the

Fig. 13.—Dissection of the anastomosis between the Facial, Transverse Facial, branches of the Internal Maxillary, Ophthalmic, and Temporal Arteries.



1, Frontal portion of Occipito-frontalis Muscle. 2, 2, Orbicularis Palpebrarum. 3, 4, Levator Labii Superioris Alæque Nasi. 5, Levator Anguli Oris. 6, Zygomaticus Minor. 7, Zygomaticus Major. 8, Parotid Gland. 9, Masseter. 10, Small Artery to Buccinator Muscle. 11, Depressor Anguli Oris. 12, 12, Quadratus Menti of each side. 13, Orbicularis Oris. 14, Artery of the Filtrum coming off from the junction of the Superior Coronaries. K, Ascending branch of Submental Artery. P, P, P, P, Palpebræ. a, Frontal Artery. b, b, c, c, Branches of Temporal Artery, the upper branch anastomosing with a branch of the Frontal Artery. d, Transversalis Faciei Artery. e, e, Facial or External Maxillary Artery. f, Twig to Masseter Muscle. g, Inferior Coronary Artery. h, Superior Coronary Artery. i, Anastomosis between the Nasal branch of the Ophthalmic and Angular Arteries. l, Inferior Labial Artery. m, Facial Artery giving off Superior Coronary Artery. n, Infraorbital Artery. o, Portion of Corrugator Supercilii Muscle.

opposite side, and sends upwards, towards the septum of the nose, a small branch termed *the artery of the filtrum*, the branches of which are distributed to the muscles, integuments, and mucous membrane of the upper lip and to the gums, where these small vessels anastomose with branches of the inferior dental artery.

The *Dorsalis, or lateralis nasi artery*, ascends obliquely inwards, and lies on the outer surface of the nasal portion of the levator labii superioris alæque nasi muscle, and distributes its branches to the muscles, cartilages, and integuments of the nose; after which it anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side. Some of its minute branches pierce the fibro-cartilages to reach the mucous membrane. We often find the place of this artery supplied by a number of small branches; or, on the contrary, there may be a very considerable single branch, in which case the angular or terminating branch is particularly small.

The *Angular artery* is the terminating branch of the facial: it ascends between the two portions of the levator labii superioris alæque nasi, and anastomoses with the nasal or terminating branch of the ophthalmic artery. When it becomes necessary to make an incision into the lachrymal sac, it should be made external to the angular artery.

The facial artery can be readily compressed or tied, as it is passing over the body of the inferior maxillary bone.

At its origin this vessel is covered by a few lymphatic glands, some of which accompany it on the face: these may enlarge and displace the submaxillary gland so as to occupy its natural position. A tumor of this kind may be removed without dividing the trunk of the facial artery; and such has probably been the nature of the tumor in many of those operations that have been termed extirpation of the submaxillary gland. Mr. Colles doubts the possibility of removing it, on account of its connection with the facial artery, and its dipping behind the mylo-hyoid muscle; but a still greater difficulty arises from its vicinity to the lingual nerve, and its intimate connection with the gustatory nerve.

In certain amputations of a portion of the lower jaw, the artery is necessarily cut across, and care should be taken to divide it on the bone, and not beneath it, lest it should retract too deeply into the submaxillary space. Its coronary branches are divided in the operation for hare lip; it is not necessary to tie them, but the suture-needle must be passed sufficiently deep, and near the mucous membrane, in order to close the posterior part of the wound, as otherwise there might be serious hemorrhage into the mouth.

No artery presents greater varieties either as to origin, termination, size, or relations, than the facial; it sometimes arises in company with the lingual; in many cases it terminates by its coronary branches, and in others by the dorsalis nasi; in these cases the branches of the facial are replaced by those of the transversalis faciei: on the other hand, according to Sœmmering, it may extend to the forehead, giving off the palpebral and lachrymal arteries. On one side there may be a large facial artery, and a mere rudimentary artery on the other.

The facial artery communicates with the internal maxillary by the infra-orbital and inferior dental branches of the latter, and with the internal carotid by its inosculation with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic.

The Occipital Artery arises from the posterior part of the external carotid, nearly opposite to the origin of the lingual artery: it may be divided into three stages.

In its *first stage* it lies in the anterior superior lateral triangle of the neck, running towards the digastric groove of the temporal bone, and extends as far as the anterior margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, passing obliquely over the concavity of the arch formed in the neck by the hypo-glossal nerve, which is therefore said to pass round it. In this stage the occipital artery at first runs along the inferior margin of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle; more posteriorly, however, this muscle partly covers the artery, and forms one of its superficial relations; still more superficially we find a portion of the parotid gland, the fascia of the neck, a few fibres of the platysma, and the integuments. Its *deep-seated* relations are the internal carotid artery, the pneumogastric nerve, and the internal jugular vein, from which last it is separated by the spinal accessory nerve.

In its *second stage* it passes somewhat horizontally from before backwards, and in its course is covered by the following parts:—the skin and a strong layer of condensed areolar tissue, the sterno-mastoid muscle, and behind this by the splenius capitis; then deeper, by the trachelo-mastoideus or complexus minor, then by the mastoid process itself, and still deeper by the origin of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle. In this stage the artery is lodged in a distinct, but frequently superficial, groove in the temporal bone, internal to the deep groove for the posterior belly of the digastric, and lies on, or more correctly speaking, external to the outer margin of the rectus capitis lateralis muscle, and above the transverse process of the atlas; it then passes across the insertion of the obliquus superior, and afterwards arches over the insertion of the complexus major muscle: it occasionally lies underneath this muscle.

In its *third stage* it arrives at the posterior region of the neck by passing through a condensed fascia, which unites the posterior margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle with the anterior border of the trapezius at their insertions, and then ascends obliquely inwards and ramifies on the occipital region of the head. In this stage it appears in the triangular space which the splenii capitis muscles form by their divergence on the middle line in the superior part of the back of the neck, and then ascends on the back of the head, through the fibres of the occipital muscle, in company with the posterior branch of the second cervical nerve.

The occipital artery gives off the following branches:

Muscular. Descending Cervical.
Posterior Meningeal. Mastoidean.
Terminating.

The *Muscular branches* are distributed to the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, and to the stylo-hyoid and sterno-mastoid muscles. It occasionally gives off the *stylo-mastoid* artery, which enters the stylo-mastoid foramen and anastomoses with a branch of the middle meningeal from the internal maxillary.

The *Posterior Meningeal branch* arises from the occipital as it lies on the side of the internal jugular vein; it enters the foramen lacerum posterius, and is distributed to the dura mater in the posterior and lateral regions of the interior of the cranium.

The *Descending Cervical branch* arises from the artery as it lies under cover of the splenius, near its posterior margin: it sends branches to the muscles in the immediate neighborhood, and anastomoses with the cervicalis superficialis and cervicalis profunda arteries. There are sometimes two or even three descending cervical branches present.

The *Mastoidean branch*, at its origin, corresponds to the posterior surface of the mastoid process of the temporal bone; it passes through the mastoidean foramen in this part of the bone, accompanied by a vein, sends minute branches to the mastoid cells, and is distributed within the cranium to the dura mater of the occipital fossæ. As the occipital artery is arching over the obliquus superior muscle, it communicates with the vertebral artery; sometimes it gives off the stylo-mastoid artery.

The *Terminating branches* of the occipital artery ascend tortuously in the course of the lambdoidal suture to supply the occipito-frontalis muscle and integuments, and to anastomose with the temporal and posterior auricular arteries, and with the occipital of the opposite side. We sometimes find one of those small branches passing through the parietal foramen to be lost in the dura mater.

Should it ever be necessary to tie the occipital artery in case of profuse hemorrhage from any of its branches, the incision already recommended for exposing the external carotid will also expose this vessel in the commencement of its first stage; or an incision may be made along the lower margin of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, on raising which the artery is brought into view. Care should be taken not to injure or include the hypo-glossal nerve.

The depth of this artery behind the mastoid process is very variable, and unless there be a wound to guide us to the vessel, it is not an operation that should be attempted.

The Posterior Auricular Artery is one of the smallest branches of the external carotid: it arises in the substance of the parotid gland, nearly opposite the apex of the styloid process, and ascends along the superior margin of the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, till it arrives at the interval between the external auditory canal and mastoid process, where it divides into its two terminating branches, an anterior and posterior aural.

The posterior auricular artery gives off the following branches:—

Stylo-mastoid. Anterior, and Posterior Aural.

The *Stylo-mastoid branch* enters the stylo-mastoid foramen, and after supplying the aqueduct of Fallopius, the tympanum and semi-circular canals, it terminates by anastomosing with a branch of the middle meningeal artery which enters by the hiatus Fallopii.

The *Anterior aural branch* is distributed to the internal or deep surface of the pinna.

The *Posterior aural branch* ascends between the retrahens auris muscle and bone, and supplies the integuments covering the mastoid process, and the temporal and retrahens auris muscles.

Before its bifurcation the posterior auricular sends branches to the parietes of the external auditory canal, to the parotid gland, and to the digastric and stylo-hyoid muscles.

In the operation of cutting down on the facial nerve, in order to remove a portion of it after its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen, the trunk of this artery must have been usually divided, together with its stylo-mastoid branch.

Mr. Harrison saw a case in which it was tied in front of the mastoid process, for aneurism by anastomosis on the external surface of the pinna,—but without success.

The PHARYNGEA ASCENDENS ARTERY may be exposed by the dissection recommended for exposing the internal carotid, and therefore the student would find it more expedient to defer its examination for the present; he may, however, study its relations in the neck.

The pharyngea ascendens is the first and smallest branch of the external carotid. After its origin it ascends in the neck, being related,—*posteriorly* to the spinal column, the rectus anticus muscle, and the superior laryngeal nerve;—*anteriorly* to the stylo-pharyngeus muscle,—*internally* to the pharynx, and *externally* to the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic nerve. In this course it gives off a few irregular branches to the muscles of the pharynx, and terminates by dividing into two branches, the *pharyngeal* and *meningeal.*

The *Pharyngeal branch* passes obliquely upwards and inwards, and sends off a number of twigs, some of which ascend through the superior constrictor of the pharynx, while others descend in the substance of the middle and inferior constrictors: they anastomose with branches of the superior thyroid and lingual arteries.

The *Meningeal branch* ascends between the carotid artery and jugular vein, and supplies these vessels, the pneumogastric nerve, the Eustachian tube, the rectus capitis anticus and longus colli muscles. It then passes through the foramen lacerum posterius to ramify on the dura mater, having previously sent a small branch into the cranium through the cartilaginous substance that fills the foramen lacerum anterius.

This artery is not very liable to accident, on account of its deep situation. Scarpa, however, relates a case in which it was ruptured.

The TRANSVERSALIS FACIEI ARTERY usually arises from the outer part of the external carotid a little before its termination. At its origin it is imbedded in the parotid gland, through which it proceeds outwards towards the integuments, then turns round the ramus of the lower jaw, and ascends slightly on the cutaneous surface of the masseter muscle. In this situation it lies above the duct of the parotid gland, concealed by the socia parotidis and surrounded by the filaments of the facial nerve. This artery sends a twig to the masseter muscle, which anastomoses with a branch of the internal maxillary;

farther on, it sends several twigs to the parotid gland and its duct, and after supplying the zygomatic muscles, the orbicularis palpebrarum and the integuments, it terminates by anastomosing with the infra-orbital, buccal, and facial arteries.

The SUPERFICIAL TEMPORAL ARTERY arises immediately behind the neck of the inferior maxillary bone, and ascends through the parotid gland in front of the external auditory canal. It next passes between the attrahens auris muscle and the horizontal ramus of the zygoma, and ascends into the temporal region, accompanied by the superficial temporal twig of the inferior maxillary division of the fifth nerve: here it lies on the temporal aponeurosis, and is covered by a fascia of considerable strength, which is continuous with the cervical aponeurosis covering the parotid gland. In the middle of the temporal region the artery terminates by dividing into two branches.

The temporal artery gives off the following branches:

Glandular.
Masseteric.
Articular.
Anterior Auricular.
Middle Deep Temporal.
Anterior Temporal.
Posterior Temporal.

The *Glandular branches* are small twigs which come off from the artery, and are distributed to the structure of the parotid gland.

The *Masseteric branch* is a small twig which passes forwards from the artery to supply the masseter muscle: there may be two or even more of these twigs.

The *Articular branch* also passes forwards and supplies the structures entering into the formation of the temporo-maxillary articulation: this branch is also called the capsular artery.

The *Anterior auricular branch* passes backwards to supply the pavilion and auditory canal: it anastomoses with branches of the posterior auris.

The *Middle deep temporal artery* arises immediately above the zygoma, pierces the temporal aponeurosis, and divides into several branches which ramify in the temporal muscle, and communicate with the other temporal arteries.

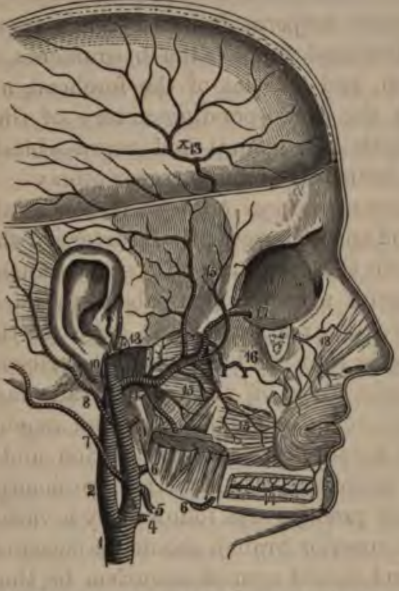
The *Anterior temporal branch* ascends tortuously towards the forehead, supplies the integuments, orbicularis palpebrarum, and muscles of the forehead, and anastomoses with the corresponding artery of the opposite side, and with the frontal and supra-orbital arteries. This is the branch selected for arteriotomy.

The *Posterior temporal branch* ramifies on the side of the head, and anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side, and with the occipital and posterior auris arteries.

The temporal artery is not subject to much variety: it may, however, arise nearer the angle of the inferior maxillary bone than we have above described, in which case it usually gives off the transversalis faciei. This vessel should never be opened near the zygoma, as unmanageable hemorrhage or inflammation and abscesses may be the consequence. Mr. Harrison mentions a case in which this practice was followed by a varicose aneurism. The anterior branch should be selected for arteriotomy; and should a small aneurism be the result, as occasionally happens, it may be cured by compression, or by making an incision through the tumor, turning out the coagulum, and dressing it from the bottom. Mr. Liston advises to divide the artery at each side of the tumor, and tie the bleeding extremities.

The INTERNAL MAXILLARY ARTERY may be exposed in the following manner: having removed the brain and uncovered the masseter muscle, we may carry a very small and pointed saw upwards behind the posterior extremity of the zygoma, and divide it from within outwards as near its roots as possible. We next remove the roof and contents of the orbit in the usual manner, and sink the point of the saw into the anterior extremity of the spheno-maxillary fissure, and from this point make two incisions; one upwards and outwards through the outer wall of the orbit to terminate at the external angular process of the frontal bone: the other downwards and inwards through the floor of the orbit to terminate

Fig. 14.—Internal Maxillary Artery.



1, Right Common Carotid. 2, Internal Carotid. 3, External Carotid. 4, Superior Thyroid. 5, Lingual. 6, Facial. 7, Occipital. 8, Posterior Auricular. 9, Parotid Branch. 10, Temporal Artery. 11, Internal Maxillary. 12, Tympanic. 13, The Great and Small Meningeal Arteries from a Common Branch. 14, Inferior Dental Artery. 15, Muscular Branches. 16, Superior Maxillary Artery giving off the Posterior Dental Arteries. 17, 18, Infra-orbital Artery.

on the outside of the supra-orbital foramen. These two incisions will include the greater part of the malar bone, and the zygoma will fall down, carrying with it the masseter muscle. Our next object is to detach the temporal muscle and vessels from the temporal fossa, and allow them to hang down from the coronoid process of the inferior maxillary bone. We then introduce a knife into the temporo-maxillary articulation above the fibro-cartilage, and divide the portion of the capsular ligament which connects the latter to the circumference of the glenoid cavity. Lastly, we make two incisions, meeting internally at an angle, so as to include the greater part of the squamous plate of the temporal bone, and the great wing of the sphenoid bone; one of these incisions may commence immediately in front of the ear, and be continued vertically down through the side and base of the skull till it terminates immediately behind and external to the spinous process of the sphenoid bone; the second may be made with a small saw, and as the malar bone is already removed, the incision may be readily made to connect the inferior angle of the sphenoidal fissure with the internal extremity of the preceding incision: on the inside of the latter, the foramen ovale and foramen rotundum should lie unopened. A slight stroke of the hammer against the bone between these two incisions will detach it, and give a full view into the zygomatic fossa: the branches of the artery may then be dissected. The vidian and posterior palatine canals can be readily broken into, if a vertical section of the skull be previously made through the adjacent nostril. The artery may be very readily exposed by another method: after the transversalis faciei artery, together with the masseter muscle and its superficial relations, have been examined and removed, a horizontal section may be made through the ramus of the inferior maxilla immediately above its angle with a fine metacarpal saw; care being taken that none of the soft parts under cover of the bone shall be injured: another horizontal section may now be made through the neck of the jaw, immediately below the condyle, and the coronoid process removed from its connection with the temporal muscle. The piece of bone included between the two incisions may also be removed, and afterwards can be replaced at pleasure. The zygomatic arch should be next taken away, and this may be done by two incisions,—one made posteriorly through this process of bone, close to its origin,—the other anteriorly, close to the external part of the orbit through the zygomatic process of the malar bone.

The internal maxillary artery is larger than the temporal, and together with it is contained for a very short distance within the parotid gland. It may be divided into four stages: the *first stage* extends from its origin to the inter-pterygoid space; its *second* corresponds to this space; its *third* extends from this space to the upper part of the pterygo-maxillary fossa, and the *fourth* is the termination of the artery in this fossa. In its *first stage* it runs horizontally forwards and lies on the inside of the lower portion of the neck of the inferior maxillary bone, which it separates from the internal lateral ligament of the temporo-maxillary articulation: the bone is frequently grooved in this situation for the reception of the artery. In its *second stage* we find it passing forwards and inwards, forming a curvature the concavity of which looks upwards and embraces the external pterygoid muscle: in this part of its course it lies in a triangular space, bounded by the external pterygoid muscle above, the internal pterygoid beneath, and the ramus of the lower jaw externally. In the same triangular space we observe the gustatory and inferior dental nerves, descending to their destination, but, as the artery lies close to the neck of the inferior maxilla, it is situated external to these nerves. In the *third stage* we find the artery running upwards and inwards towards the root of the pterygoid process, after passing between the outer surface of the external pterygoid muscle, and the fibres of the temporal muscle. In this situation the artery is related to the buccal nerve; at first the artery is posterior to the trunk of the nerve, and afterwards lies upon a plane external to it. Finally it sinks between the two origins of the external pterygoid muscle, and terminates in the pterygo-maxillary fossa lying to the outside of Meckel's ganglion, and the spheno-palatine foramen: this constitutes its *fourth stage.* In some (not very rare) cases the artery passes to its destination, not through the inter-pterygoid space as above described, but between the external pterygoid muscle and the base of the skull. We shall now examine its branches in the order in which they arise.

The internal maxillary artery gives off the following branches:—

Middle Meningeal.
Tympanic.
Inferior Dental.
Meningea Parva.
Posterior Deep Temporal.
Masseteric.
Pterygoid.
Buccal.
Anterior Deep Temporal.
Posterior Superior Dental.
Infra-Orbital.
Vidian.
Superior Palatine.
Spheno-Palatine.

The *Middle meningeal artery* is the largest branch of the internal maxillary. It arises on the inside of the neck of the lower jaw, and ascends obliquely inwards to the base of the skull, behind the external pterygoid muscle, which consequently separates it from the continued trunk of the internal maxillary artery. In this part of its course it usually passes between the roots of the temporo-auricular nerve, lies posterior to the otic ganglion, and then enters the spinous foramen in the base of the skull, after passing between the origin of the circumflexus palati muscle in front, and the internal lateral ligament of the lower jaw posteriorly. In this part of its course, it supplies the pterygoid muscles, the muscles of the pharynx, and the temporal and sphenoid bones.

Having passed within the skull, the middle meningeal artery ascends beneath the dura mater into the middle fossa of the cranium, and terminates by dividing into an anterior and posterior terminating branch.

Before its division it sends a branch through the spheno-frontal fissure to terminate in the lachrymal gland; another through the hiatus Fallopii, which supplies the facial nerve and anastomoses with the stylo-mastoid artery; and a third through the canal for the internal muscle of the malleus, to be distributed on the lining membrane of the tympanum.

The *anterior terminating branch,* much larger than the posterior, ascends through the groove in the great wing of the sphenoid bone, and the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, the groove in the latter being frequently converted into a complete osseous canal. The artery is here situated about one inch behind the external angular process of the frontal bone, and divides into numerous branches that radiate in all directions on the internal surface of the parietal and adjacent bones: these branches are principally lost on the dura mater; a few of them penetrate the sutures and supply the diplöe of the bones. This artery has been frequently torn in injuries of the head, and has given rise to considerable hemorrhage between the dura mater and the bone. It may also be wounded in the operation of trephining: the hemorrhage may, however, be easily controlled by the application of a dossil of lint. The *posterior terminating branch* curves backwards as it ascends on the internal surface of the squamous plate of the temporal bone. Its branches communicate with each other, and terminate in the dura mater and bone.

The *Tympanic artery* is a very small branch; it sometimes arises from that branch of the temporal which goes to supply the temporô-maxillary articulation; it passes through the Glasserian fissure into the tympanum, and ramifies upon the membrane lining the interior of this cavity, and in the muscles contained within it.

The *Inferior dental artery* arises from the inferior surface of the internal maxillary, nearly opposite the origin of the middle meningeal, and runs obliquely downwards and forwards, between the internal lateral ligament, and the ramus of the lower jaw. In this course it sends numerous branches to the pterygoid muscles, and to the gustatory and inferior maxillary nerves. Lower down it gives off a *mylo-hyoidean branch* which descends in the groove leading from the dental foramen, accompanied by the mylo-hyoidean branch of the inferior dental nerve, and supplies the mylo-hyoid muscle and mucous membrane of the mouth. Immediately after giving off this last branch, the inferior dental artery enters the dental foramen, in company with the dental nerve, which is situated in front of it. It descends beneath the alveoli, till it arrives at the first molar tooth, where it divides into two branches; one of which is continued to the symphisis menti, supplying the alveoli of the canine and incisor teeth; the other escapes by the mental foramen, together with the mental branch of the inferior dental nerve, to supply the integuments, and triangularis and depressor labii inferioris muscles; it anastomoses with the adjacent branches of the facial artery. In its course through the inferior maxillary bone it sends branches into the alveoli, each of which penetrates the bottom of the tooth to be distributed on the membrane lining its cavity.

The *Meningea parva artery* is not a constant branch; when it exists it arises from the internal maxillary, close to the origin of the inferior dental. Some of its branches are distributed to the soft palate and the nasal fossæ: a principal branch of the artery passes upwards through the foramen ovale and supplies the inferior maxillary nerve, Casserian ganglion, and dura mater.

The *Posterior deep temporal artery* arises from the internal maxillary, while the latter is passing between the two pterygoid muscles; it ascends between the temporal and external pterygoid muscles, and then between the temporal muscle and the side of the cranium: to all these parts it sends numerous minute branches which ultimately terminate in anastomosing with the deep temporal branch from the superficial temporal artery.

The *Masseteric artery* also arises in the triangular space between the two pterygoid muscles and ramus of the lower jaw. It passes outwards through the sigmoid notch that separates the coronoid process from the condyle of the inferior maxilla, and then descends on the outer side of its ramus, supplies the masseter muscle, and anastomoses with the transversalis faciei artery.

The *Pterygoid branches* are numerous: some of them are distributed to the internal pterygoid muscle, and a still greater number to the external pterygoid.

The *Buccal artery* runs tortuously, downwards, forwards, and outwards, between the two pterygoid muscles, and in company with the buccal nerve. Having arrived at the anterior margin of the ramus of the inferior maxillary bone, it penetrates the cheek and divides into a number of branches, which are distributed to the platysma myoides, buccinator and zygomatic muscles, and also to the integuments of the cheek, and to its mucous membrane and follicles. It anastomoses with the facial, infra-orbital, and transversalis faciei arteries: in some cases it is deficient, and in others it arises from some other branch of the internal maxillary.

The *Anterior deep temporal artery* usually comes off from the internal maxillary, as this artery lies between the external pterygoid and temporal muscles; it ascends in the anterior part of the temporal fossa to supply the temporal muscle, and to anastomose with the other temporal arteries. Some of its branches penetrate the malar bone to reach the lachrymal gland and communicate with the lachrymal artery.

The *Posterior superior dental artery* descends tortuously on the back of the antrum. Some of its branches pierce the superior maxillary bone, and supply the molar teeth and mucous membrane of the antrum, while others are distributed to the teeth, gums, and buccinator muscle: they anastomose with the labial, buccal, and infra-orbital arteries.

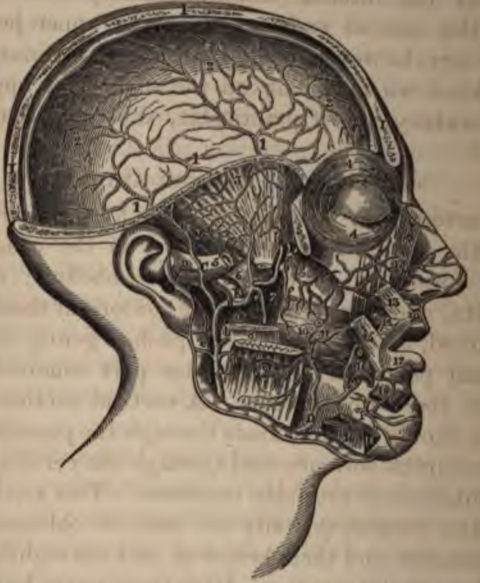
The *Infra-orbital artery* passes through a canal of the same name in the floor beneath the orbit, in company with the infra-orbital nerve beneath which it lies. In this course it sends some small branches to the inferior rectus and inferior oblique muscles of the eye. Having arrived at the anterior part of this canal, it gives off the *anterior superior dental branch*, which descends through the anterior wall of the antrum, to supply its mucous membrane, and the canine and incisor teeth. After giving off this branch, it leaves the infra-orbital canal, and is found on the face beneath the outer head of the levator labii superioris alæque nasi, and lying on the levator anguli oris. In this situation it supplies the adjacent muscles, and anastomoses with the facial, dental, buccal, and nasal arteries.

The *Vidian artery*, extremely small, passes backwards through the Vidian canal above the root of the internal pterygoid plate, and enters the aqueduct of Fallopius through the hiatus Fallopii. It supplies the facial nerve, Eustachian tube, and pharynx, and anastomoses with the pharyngea ascendens, and with the stylo-mastoid branch of the occipital artery. This vessel is sometimes given off by the trunk of the middle meningeal.

The *Superior palatine artery* descends obliquely forwards through the posterior palatine canal. In this situation it sends two or three small branches through the accessory palatine canals to the velum palati. The continued trunk after leaving the posterior palatine canal advances on the roof of the mouth, and is distributed to its lining membrane, and to the gums and superior maxillary bone. At the foramen incisivum it communicates with the spheno-palatine arteries, which descend from the nose through the anterior palatine canals.

The *Spheno-palatine artery* may be considered as the terminating branch of the internal maxillary. It passes through the spheno-palatine foramen into the cavity of the nose, where it gives off a pterygo-palatine branch, and then divides into its terminating branches. The *pterygo-palatine branch* sometimes comes off directly from the internal maxillary; it passes backwards from its origin through the pterygo-palatine canal and supplies the pharynx and Eustachian tube. The *terminating branches* of the spheno-palatine are two or more in number: one of them descends on the septum nasi, with the spheno-palatine nerve, and communicates with the superior palatine artery: the others are distributed in the superior and middle meatus, in the antrum, and in the posterior ethmoidal cells: they communicate with the ethmoidal arteries, and form between

Fig. 15.—Dissection of the Internal Maxillary, Middle Meningeal, and part of the course of the Facial, Arteries.



A, External Carotid Artery. B, B, Internal Maxillary Artery. C, C, Superficial Temporal Artery. D, Facial Artery. I, I, I, Vertical section through Frontal, Parietal, and Occipital Bones. K, Middle Meningeal Artery. P, Mental branch of Inferior Dental Artery. a, Branch to the Masseter Muscle. b, Branch to Parotid Gland. c, Posterior Auris Artery. d, A twig from the Internal Maxillary to Internal Pterygoid Muscle. e, Inferior Dental Artery proceeding to the Dental Canal of the lower jaw. f, Buccal Artery. g. Posterior Superior Dental Artery. h, Anterior deep Temporal Artery. i, Posterior deep Temporal Artery. l, l, l, Distribution of the Middle Meningeal Artery after having entered the Cranium through the Spinous Foramen of the Sphenoid Bone. m, Artery of the Filtrum. n, Branch of Temporal Artery. o, Facial Artery ascending to upper lip and nose. 2, 2, 2, Continuation of Middle Meningeal ramifying beneath the Dura Mater. 3, Temporal Fossa. 4, 4, Orbicularis Palpebrarum Muscle. 5, 5, Zygomatic Arch cut through. 6, External Pterygoid Muscle cut across. 7, Internal Pterygoid Muscle. 8, Ramus of the lower jaw cut. 9, Masseter Muscle cut. 10, Buccinator. 11, Parotid Duct cut across. 12, Levator Labii Superioris Alæque Nasi. 13, Portion of Levator of the upper Lip. 14, Part of Zygomaticus Minor. 15, Part of Zygomaticus Major. 16, 16, Depressor Labii Inferioris cut across. 17, Orbicularis Oris Muscle. 18, 18, Quadratus Menti Muscle divided.

the mucous membrane and periosteum, a vascular network, deeply tinging the former membrane.

Sir B. Brodie tied the common carotid in consequence of hemorrhage from the posterior superior dental branch of the internal maxillary artery after extraction of the second molar tooth of the upper jaw; the hemorrhage, however, proved fatal.* In ordinary cases of this kind we may plug up the socket, or apply the actual cautery, or, if practicable, the tooth should be replaced.

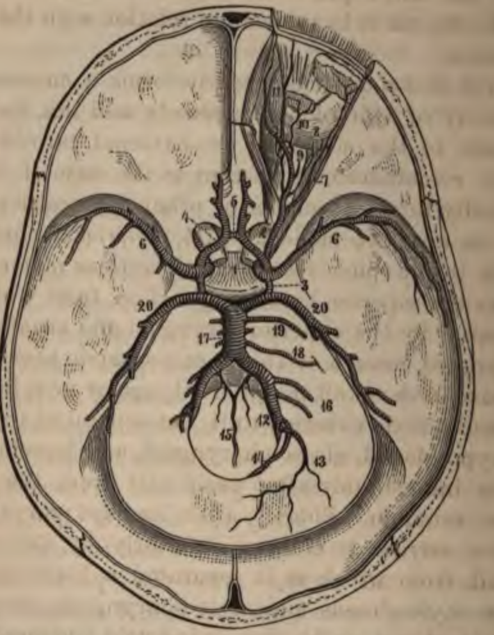
THE INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY.

This artery may be exposed in the following manner: The brain should first be removed in the usual way, leaving uninjured, however, the cerebellum, medulla oblongata, and pons Varolii: the tentorium should now be removed, and the cerebellum pushed gently forward, or a small portion of its posterior part removed, so as to make room for the saw. A vertical section of the cranium should be next made through the posterior part of the occipital foramen and through the cervical vertebræ, behind their articular processes. This section will enable the student to study the medulla oblongata, vertebral arteries and their branches, and the eighth, ninth, and sub-occipital nerves. After these parts have been examined, the cerebellum and spinal marrow may be removed, and the ligaments divided which connect the occipital bone to the first and second vertebræ. The vertebræ may now be separated from the occipital bone, the recti capitis antici muscles having been previously detached from the front of the spine, but allowed to remain in connection with the occipital bone. Lastly, the lower part of the neck may be cut across, and the digastric and styloid muscles, &c. neatly dissected. The portion of the internal carotid contained in the osseous canal must be carefully followed with a chisel, and its exact relation to the cochlea, tympanum, and Eustachian tube may be seen if a metallic cast of the ear be previously taken, and the bone softened in dilute acid.

---

* Med. Chirurg. Trans., vol. viii.

Fig. 16.—Arteries of the Interior of the Cranium.



1, Internal Carotid Arteries. 2, Ophthalmic Artery. 3, Posterior communicating Arteries. 4, Anterior Cerebral Arteries. 5, Anterior communicating Artery. 6, Middle Cerebral Arteries. 7, Lachrymal. 8, Short Ciliary Arteries piercing the back part of the Eyeball. 9, Central Retinal piercing the Optic Nerve to reach the interior of the Eyeball. 10, Muscular Artery. 11, Frontal and Nasal Artery. 12, Vertebral Arteries. 13, Posterior Meningeal Artery. 14, Posterior Spinal Artery. 15, Anterior Spinal Arteries conjoining in a single one. 16, Inferior Cerebellar Arteries. 17, Basilar Artery formed by the union of the Vertebrals. 18, Internal Auditory. 19, Superior Cerebellar. 20, Posterior Cerebral Arteries.

The Internal Carotid is much larger than the external in the young subject, but nearly of equal size in the adult: it arises opposite the superior margin of the thyroid cartilage, and its long and tortuous course may be divided into four stages: the first extends from its origin to the petrous portion of the temporal bone; the second through the carotid canal in this portion of the bone; the third passes through the cavernous sinus; and the fourth is in immediate relation with the base of the brain.

In its *first stage* it constantly forms a curvature, the convexity of which looks outwards, and lies, for a short distance, to the outside of the external carotid artery. In the remainder of its ascent to the base of the skull it usually forms a number of other tortuosities seldom alike in any two subjects. Its *posterior surface* corresponds to the spine, rectus capitis anticus major muscle, and to the superior cervical ganglion, from which it is separated by the superior laryngeal and usually by the pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric nerve. Near the base of the skull the internal jugular vein lies posterior and a little external to it, but separated from it by the hypo-glossal, glosso-pharyngeal, and pneumogastric nerves immediately after their exit from the interior of the cranium. Shortly after its first curvature, its *anterior surface* is covered inferiorly by the external carotid, from which it is separated a little higher up by the stylo-glossus and stylo-pharyngeus muscles, the styloid process, or by the stylo-hyoid ligament, a portion of the parotid gland, the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and occasionally the pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric nerve. Immediately before it pierces the base of the cranium, its anterior surface is related to the Eustachian tube and origin of the levator palati muscle. Its *external surface* corresponds to the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, to a portion of the styloid process, to the origin of the stylo-pharyngeus muscle, to an aponeurosis separating it from the parotid gland, and to the internal jugular vein. Its *internal surface* corresponds to the pharynx and the pharyngea ascendens artery, and higher up to the tonsil. In this locality the vessel is lodged in an angular space formed by the pterygoid muscles on the outside, and the superior constrictor of the pharynx on the inside. Near the termination of its first stage the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic nerve, which lies behind it, gives off a considerable branch which appears to be a prolongation of the upper extremity of the ganglion; this branch soon divides into two others, one at the inner and the other at the outer side of the vessel; they communicate in this situation with minute filaments from the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and together with the artery they enter the carotid canal and there form the *carotid plexus* of nerves. The tonsil lies anterior and internal to the artery. The artery gives off no regular branches in the first stage.

In its *second stage*, we trace it forwards and inwards through the carotid canal, running in a curved direction, surrounded by the carotid plexus and also by a few small veins which terminate in the cavernous sinus. In this canal it is situated anterior and internal to the cavity of the tympanum, from which it is separated only by a thin partition of bone: it lies inferior to the cochlea, and, at the commencement of this stage, inferior also to the Eustachian tube; superior to which, however, it gradually passes as it enters upon its third stage. Having emerged from the carotid canal, it passes obliquely over the cartilaginous substance which fills the foramen lacerum anterius or spheno-temporal fissure; it then enters the cranium, and here its second stage terminates.

In its *third stage* the artery advances through the cavernous sinus, making two curvatures in the form of a

Roman ω, being first convex superiorly, and more in front convex inferiorly: as it passes through the sinus, it is crossed from behind forwards by the sixth nerve, which is closely applied to its external surface: the carotid plexus of nerves surrounds the artery within the sinus, and a branch or two of the sympathetic nerve may be observed ascending on its outside and joining the sixth nerve, as the latter is passing the carotid artery. More externally, and in the outer wall of the cavernous sinus, are situated the third, fourth, and ophthalmic branch of the fifth nerve: these nerves are placed in their numerical order, from above downwards, and from within outwards. The lining membrane of the sinus is reflected on the artery and on the nerves in immediate connection with it, thus forming a sheath which separates them from the blood of the sinus.

On emerging from the cavernous sinus, the artery pierces the dura mater and enters its *fourth stage:* on reaching the under portion of the anterior clinoid process, it is here lodged in a deep notch, and makes a turn backwards and inwards, and terminates on the outside of the commissure of the optic nerves, and at the internal extremity of the fissure of Sylvius, by dividing into the posterior communicating and the anterior and middle arteries of the cerebrum. The arachnoid membrane gives a covering to the artery after it has entered into its fourth stage. Immediately after escaping from the cavernous sinus the internal carotid gives off the ophthalmic artery, and still later the choroid and posterior communicating arteries: it then terminates by dividing into the arteries already mentioned.

The internal carotid artery gives off the following branches:—

Tympanic.
Vidian.

Ophthalmic.
Choroid.

Receptacular.
Meningeal.
Posterior communicating.
Anterior Cerebral.
Middle Cerebral.

The *Tympanic branch* is exceedingly slender: it arises from the artery in its second stage, and, passing through a portion of the bone, is distributed to the tympanum.

The *Vidian branch* is a very minute twig, given off also in the second stage: it anastomoses with the vidian artery, a branch of the internal maxillary.

The *Receptacular branches* are small twigs given off by the artery in its third stage: they are distributed to the dura mater, to the walls of the inferior petrosal sinus, and to the pituitary body.

The *Meningeal branch* is also distributed to the dura mater in the immediate vicinity, and anastomoses with the middle meningeal, a branch of the internal maxillary.

The *Ophthalmic artery* is given off from the internal carotid in its fourth stage, beneath the anterior clinoid process: it may be exposed by the following dissection: —The brain should be removed from the cranium in the usual way; two vertical incisions should be next made, commencing, one at the external and the other at the internal angular process of the frontal bone: if these be directed so as to meet posteriorly in the sphenoidal fissure, they will be found to include between them almost the whole of the roof of the orbit, which may be then readily detached with the hammer. The other parts contained within the cavity of the orbit may be exposed by the same dissection. Immediately after its origin the artery advances between the second or optic, and the third nerves, and enters the optic foramen, being lodged in a fibrous sheath formed for it by the dura mater. At first it lies on the outside of the optic nerve, then ascends to get on its superior surface, where it is covered by the levator palpebræ and superior rectus muscles, and accompanied by the nasal nerve: lastly, it runs horizontally forwards between the internal rectus and superior oblique muscles, towards the internal angular process of the frontal bone; here it terminates by dividing into the nasal and frontal arteries, both of which escape from the orbit in company with the infratrochleator nerve, passing above the tendo oculi and beneath the pulley of the superior oblique muscle.

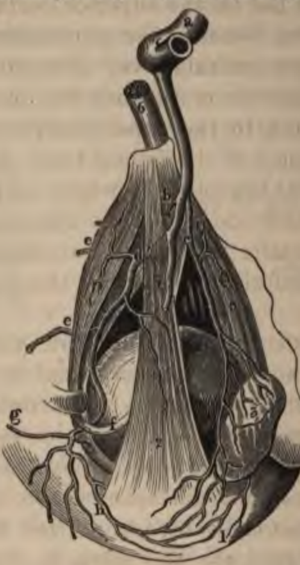
The ophthalmic artery gives off the following branches:

Lachrymal.
Central artery of the Retina
Supra-Orbital.
Ciliary.
Muscular.
Ethmoidal.
Palpebral.
Frontal.
Nasal.

The *Lachrymal artery* is the first and one of the largest branches of the ophthalmic: it arises at the outer side of the optic nerve and passes forwards and outwards between the origin of the superior rectus muscle and the superior head of the external rectus: it supplies both these muscles, and is conducted by the superior margin of the latter towards the lachrymal gland: in this part of its course it sends a branch through the malar bone into the temporal fossa, which anastomoses with the anterior deep temporal artery. More anteriorly it gives off a number of branches which pass above, and sometimes round, the lachrymal gland to penetrate between its lobules, and to supply its interior. Lastly, the terminating branches are lost in the upper eyelid, in anastomosing with the superior palpebral and anterior temporal arteries.

The *Central artery of the Retina* is extremely minute; it arises at the outer side of the optic nerve, pierces its coats, and runs forwards through its centre to arrive at the retina, on the internal surface of which it forms a vascular expansion which may be traced as far forwards as the ciliary processes. Immediately on escaping from the optic nerve, it gives off a branch, *the Artery of Zinn*,

Fig. 17.—Dissection of some of the branches of the Ophthalmic Artery.



1, Anastomosis between the Lachrymal and Superior Palpebral Arteries. 2, Levator Palpebræ Superioris Muscle. 3, The Lachrymal Gland. 4, Superior Oblique Muscle. 5, External Rectus Muscle. 6, Optic Nerve. a, Last turn of Internal Carotid Artery from which is given off the Ophthalmic Artery. c, Lachrymal Artery. d, Trunk of Ophthalmic Artery after having passed beneath the Levator Palpebræ and Superior Rectus Muscles. e, e, Anterior and Posterior Ethmoidal Arteries. f, Tendon of Superior Oblique Muscle after having passed through its pulley. g, Nasal Artery. h, Small portion of Superior Rectus Muscle. i, Supra-Orbital Artery cut across.

which runs from behind forwards through the centre of the vitreous humor, and contained within a sheath formed by the hyaloid membrane, called the *hyaloid canal*: it sends numerous small branches to the hyaloid membrane: in front it ramifies on the posterior part of the capsule of the lens, and in the fœtus its branches have been traced to the membrana pupillaris. This artery occasionally arises from one of the ciliary arteries.

The *Supra-orbital artery* arises at the upper surface of the optic nerve, and accompanies the nerve of the same name to the notch in the superior margin of the orbit. In this course it lies on the superior rectus and levator palpebræ muscles, beneath the periosteum, and on the inside of the supra-orbital nerve. It supplies the levator palpebræ and superior rectus muscles; and as it passes through the notch in the superciliary arch, it gives a branch to the diplöe of the frontal bone. It then divides into two principal branches, of which the internal is the larger: these subdivide into many others, which supply the occipito-frontalis muscle, and anastomose with the angular artery inferiorly, and with the temporal artery superiorly.

The *Ciliary arteries* are divided into three sets,—the *short*, the *long*, and the *anterior*,—and at their origins correspond to the upper surface of the optic nerve. The *short* ciliary arteries (twenty, thirty, or sometimes even forty in number) advance tortuously through the fatty matter that envelopes the optic nerve, around which they form a vascular net-work. After frequent anastomoses they penetrate the sclerotic coat, near the entrance of the optic nerve; some few of them terminate in this membrane, the rest proceed between the sclerotic and choroid coats. After forming by their frequent subdivisions and anastomoses a kind of vascular net-work on the exterior of the choroid, they pierce this membrane, and form an expansion of more minute vessels on its interior. Having arrived at the ciliary body, some of them merely pass through it to arrive at the great arterial circle of the iris, but by far the greatest number terminate in the ciliary body, each ciliary process receiving so many as twenty or thirty branches: these take a tortuous course in the substance of the processes, and then, reuniting into larger and fewer branches, terminate behind the iris by anastomotic arches. In most cases several of these ciliary arteries come from some of the principal branches of the ophthalmic, and not directly from its trunk. The *long* ciliary arteries, usually two in number, pierce the sclerotic coat a little in front of the short ciliary, and then run from behind forwards between the sclerotic and choroid coats; one on the inner side, and the other on the outer side of the eye. In this course they send a few delicate branches to the sclerotic coat, and still fewer to the choroid; and having arrived at the ciliary body they subdivide into many branches, which communicate with the short ciliary arteries and form an arterial circle at the ciliary margin of the iris. From this circle arise many small branches, which proceed towards the pupil in a radiated manner, and then bifurcate and anastomose with adjacent branches, so as to form a second arterial circle within the first. From this second circle arise smaller and more numerous branches than from the first; these proceed in a radiated manner to the pupillary margin of the iris, where most of them enter into the formation of a third arterial circle within the two preceding. In every instance the muscular arteries give off several ciliary branches, which have been termed the *anterior ciliary:* these pierce the anterior part of the sclerotic coat, and communicate with the preceding. In speaking of the vascularity of the iris, Dr. Jacob observes:—"Much importance has been attached by anatomists to the manner in which these radiating vessels are disposed, in consequence of the representation of Ruysch, who exhibited them as forming a series of inosculations at a short distance rom the pupil, since called the lesser circle of the iris.

I do not deny that the vessels of the iris inosculate as in other parts of the body, but I do not believe that they present this very remarkable appearance, and I suspect that Ruysch exaggerated what he had seen, or described from an iris in which the injection had been extravasated and entangled in the tendinous cords, which I have described as extending from the fleshy bodies to the margin of the pupil. The question is fortunately of no importance. It is sufficient to know that the organ is amply supplied with arterial blood."* In the fœtus, branches of the long ciliary arteries may be traced to the membrana pupillaris. In the operation of couching, the needle should be made to penetrate the eye below its centre, in order to avoid these vessels.

The *Muscular arteries* arise at the upper surface of the optic nerve; they are usually two in number: the *inferior* is a large and constant branch: after its origin it passes forwards between the optic nerve and the inferior rectus muscle: its branches are distributed to this muscle, to the inferior oblique and external rectus muscles, and to the lachrymal sac. The *superior* muscular artery is smaller and less constant: its branches are principally distributed to the levator palpebræ, and to the superior and internal recti muscles; also to the superior oblique muscle, to the globe of the eye and the periosteum of the orbit. As we have already mentioned, the muscular arteries give off the anterior ciliary arteries.

The *Ethmoidal arteries* are two in number; they arise at the inner surface of the optic nerve, and pass between the internal rectus and superior oblique muscles of the eye to arrive at the internal wall of the orbit. The *posterior* or larger enters the foramen orbitale internum posterius, and sends several delicate branches to the membrane of the posterior ethmoidal cells: others enter the cranium and descend into the nasal fossæ with the filaments of the olfactory nerve, to be lost on the mucous membrane of the nose. The *anterior* ethmoidal artery, smaller than the preceding, accompanies the ethmoidal branch of the nasal nerve, and having entered the anterior internal orbital foramen, is distributed to the mucous membrane of the frontal sinus, and anterior ethmoidal cells and nasal fossæ. The posterior branch frequently arises from the lachrymal or supra-orbital.

---

* Todd's Cyclopædia.

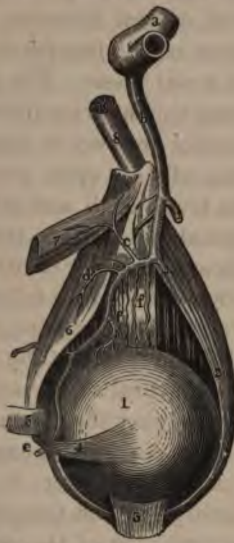
The *Palpebral arteries* are two in number; they arise at the inner surface of the optic nerve: the *inferior* descends behind the tendo oculi, and after sending some twigs to the lachrymal sac, divides into two branches, one of which supplies the inferior division of the orbicularis palpebrarum, while the other follows the adherent margin of the lower tarsal cartilage, and supplies this cartilage, the Meibomian glands, the conjunctiva and skin. The *superior* palpebral artery arises a little more in front, and after supplying the caruncula lachrymalis, is distributed in the upper eyelid, exactly as those of the inferior artery are in the lower: it anastomoses externally with the lachrymal and temporal arteries.

The terminating branches of the ophthalmic artery are the frontal and the nasal.

The *Frontal artery*, usually smaller than the nasal, advances to the superior and internal part of the base of the orbit, from which it escapes in passing between the tendo oculi and pulley of the superior oblique muscle. It then ascends on the forehead, between the frontal bone and orbicularis palpebrarum, and subdivides, to supply this muscle, and the occipito-frontalis and corrugator supercilii.

The *Nasal artery* is larger than the preceding, and with it escapes from the orbit between the tendo oculi and pulley of the superior oblique muscle: it then descends on the side of the root of the nose, and supplies the lachrymal sac, and adjacent muscles, and anastomoses with the termination of the labial or facial artery. In many cases the nasal artery seems to be perfectly continuous with the angular branch of the facial.

Fig. 18.—Branches of Ophthalmic Artery given off under the Superior Rectus Muscle.



1. Ball of the Eye. 2, External Rectus Muscle. 3, Insertion of Superior Rectus Muscle, cut and turned forwards. 4, Tendon of Superior Oblique Muscle which passes underneath the Superior Rectus. 5, Trochlea or Pulley for Superior Oblique Muscle. 6, Belly of Superior Oblique Muscle. 7, Superior Rectus Muscle divided. 8, Optic Nerve. a, Turn of Internal Carotid Artery giving off the Ophthalmic Artery. b, Ophthalmic Artery. c, A twig to Superior Rectus Muscle. d, Muscular Branches. e, Continuation of Ophthalmic Artery cut across. f, f, Some of the short Ciliary Arteries.

In the operation for extracting the eye, the trunk of the ophthalmic is divided, and its sheath prevents it from retracting so as to bleed into the cavity of the cranium; the hemorrhage into the cavity of the orbit is however, frequently very considerable.

After the ophthalmic, the next branch given off by the internal carotid is the choroid artery.

The *Choroid artery* is a small but constant branch. It arises from the posterior part of the internal carotid, and passes backwards and outwards towards the crus cerebri: in its course it lies internal to and under cover of the internal convolution of the base of the middle lobe of the brain, and external to the posterior communicating artery: it then enters the inferior cornu of the lateral ventricle, supplies the tractus opticus and crus cerebri, the hippocampus major, pes hippocampi, and corpus fimbriatum, and its terminating branches are distributed to the choroid plexus.

The *Posterior communicating artery* arises from the internal carotid internal to the choroid; it is a small but constant branch: from its origin it takes a direction backwards and inwards to anastomose with the posterior artery of the cerebrum, which is a branch of the basilar trunk.

After having given off the posterior communicating artery, the internal carotid divides into two considerable branches, viz., the anterior and middle arteries of the cerebrum.

The *Anterior cerebral artery* passes forwards between the first and second cerebral nerves, to reach the great longitudinal fissure; it then ascends with the corresponding artery of the opposite side between the anterior lobes of the brain, and in front of the anterior part of the corpus callosum, along the upper surface of which it runs, and then descends behind it so as nearly to circumscribe this commissure. The branches from its concavity are small, and distributed to the corpus callosum; those from its convexity are more considerable, and supply the internal surface of the hemispheres. The anterior arteries of the cerebrum are united by one or two transverse branches which complete the circle of Willis in front; these are called the *anterior communicating branches:* when there is but one, it is a large vessel; if more than one, they are proportionably small: on the anterior communicating branch or branches the ganglion of Ribes is situated.

The *Middle cerebral artery* is larger than the preceding, and from its size might be considered the continued trunk of the internal carotid; it sinks into the fissure of Sylvius, taking a direction outwards and backwards. It first gives a great number of branches to the inferior part of the brain, to the pia mater covering the crura cerebri, and one or more choroid branches which accompany the choroid plexus into the inferior cornu of the lateral ventricle. It then divides in the fissure of Sylvius into two considerable branches for the anterior and middle lobes of the brain; these follow the fissure outwards and backwards, and terminate near the posterior part of the brain by numerous subdivisions: some tortuous twigs are given off which sink into the anfractuosities and supply the pia mater; others appear to perforate and surround the roots of the olfactory nerve.

The student should now impress on his memory the various important parts with which the internal carotid artery is connected, and the manner in which it may be affected either by disease or accident, in consequence of its vicinity to them. Thus, its relation to the tonsil points out the danger of directing the knife too deeply backwards or outwards in opening abscesses of that gland. Beclard relates a case in which an itinerant quack destroyed a patient's life in this way. The vicinity of this vessel to the organ of hearing explains the various derangements of the functions of the latter arising in consequence of an undue determination of blood to the head, and, in certain cases, the hemorrhage from the ear which occurs in consequence of fractures extending to the base of the skull.

I am not aware that there is any case on record of aneurism of the trunk of the internal carotid, though its branches are frequently the seat of this disease. In one case, however, in which Sir A. Cooper operated successfully, he was of opinion that the disease was in this vessel, and not in the external carotid.*

Near the base of the skull the internal carotid artery in graminivorous animals divides into several minute branches, which form a plexus of vessels called the *rete mirabile of Galen;* these subsequently unite into a single trunk, which afterwards divides into its cerebral branches. The use of this peculiar plexiform arrangement is to prevent the brain from being injured by the gravitation of the blood whilst the animal is grazing. A similar arrangement of the ophthalmic artery, "*rete ophthalmicum,*" has been observed at the back of the orbit in birds.

SUBCLAVIAN ARTERIES.

These arteries are two in number, a right and left. The right subclavian arises from the arteria innominata, and the left from the arch of the aorta: each is usually described as having three stages. In the *first* stage it ascends from its origin to the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle; in the *second* stage it passes behind that muscle; and in the *third* it proceeds obliquely downwards and outwards, till it arrives at the lower margin of the first rib, where it changes its name and becomes the axillary artery. In this course the artery forms an arch, the convexity of which looks upwards, and the summit of which is usually opposite to the sixth cervical vertebra. As the subclavian arteries differ in their origins, their relations must necessarily differ in the first stage, and therefore a separate description will be necessary for each; but in the second and third stages their relations are alike.

---

* Med. and Chirur. Trans., vol. i. p. 229.

First stage of the Right Subclavian. The right subclavian artery arises from the arteria innominata at the superior outlet of the thorax, immediately behind and on a level with the upper portion of the right sterno-clavicular articulation, corresponding to the interval between the two origins of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle; it then passes obliquely upwards and outwards, till it reaches the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle. In this part of its course it is covered *anteriorly* by the integuments, by the platysma myoides, except in the immediate neighborhood of its origin, by the clavicular origin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, and by the cervical fascia, forming the sheath of this muscle; by the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles, the former of which is in more intimate relation to the artery. Between the sterno-mastoid muscle anteriorly, and the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles and scalenus anticus posteriorly, an interval exists in which we find a quantity of loose areolar tissue, together with several veins, one of which, sometimes of considerable size, passes across the posterior surface of the inferior portion of the sterno-mastoid muscle, and establishes a communication between the anterior and external jugular veins: it is sometimes endangered in the operation for wry neck. When these parts have been removed, the artery will be found covered more immediately by the internal jugular vein close to its junction with the subclavian vein to form the right vena innominata: the union between these two veins usually takes place in front of the internal

margin and close to the insertion of the scalenus anticus muscle, in which situation the commencement of the vena innominata lies upon a plane anterior and a little inferior to the artery: lower down, on account of their difference of obliquity, they become more distant, the vein lying on the outer side. The vertebral vein as it is about to terminate in the internal jugular, usually passes anterior to the artery. In front of the artery we observe also the superior and middle cardiac nerves descending; and near the origin of the vessel, the pneumogastric nerve, and sometimes its recurrent branch (which in this situation occasionally begins to detach itself from its parent trunk), are situated in front of it. Vieussens describes a plexiform appearance upon the pneumogastric nerve in this situation, corresponding to the origin of the recurrent, and which he calls the *plexus gangliformis;* these nerves therefore pass between the artery and the vena innominata. The phrenic nerve also forms an anterior relation of the subclavian artery: immediately after this nerve has passed from off the scalenus anticus muscle, it gets under cover of the internal jugular vein close to its junction with the subclavian, and insinuates itself into a small interval which exists between the origin of the thyroid axis and the inner margin of the muscle; and it is in this situation that the nerve lies in front of the right subclavian artery in its first stage: generally speaking, it does not lie in direct contact with the artery, but is borne from off this vessel by the origin of the internal mammary artery, anterior to and across which the nerve usually passes. Sometimes the phrenic nerve lies upon a plane posterior to the internal mammary artery. *Posteriorly* the first stage of the right subclavian artery is related to the recurrent nerve, inferior cardiac nerve, and still farther back to the trunk

of the sympathetic nerve where it forms its inferior cervical ganglion: this ganglion is situated behind the artery close to the origin of the vertebral. The longus colli muscle, with the interposition of some loose areolar tissue, lies behind the artery: the apex of the cone of the pleura lies a little inferior, to the outside, and on a plane posterior to the vessel.

First stage of the Left Subclavian artery. The left subclavian artery arises within the cavity of the thorax, from the arch of the aorta, opposite to and to the left side of the second dorsal vertebra, and ascends slightly outwards into the neck, till it reaches the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, where the second stage commences. Like the common carotid artery, the first stage may be divided into two portions,—a *thoracic* and *cervical:* the *thoracic* portion extends from the origin of the vessel from the arch of the aorta to the upper outlet of the thorax; and the cervical extends from this point to the internal margin of the scalenus anticus. In its thoracic portion it is related, *internally,* to the left carotid artery, which is also situated on a plane anterior to it; to the œsophagus, thoracic duct, and recurrent nerve, which are on a plane posterior to it, and to the internal jugular vein and its junction with the subclavian to form the left vena innominata: these large veins are also situated on a plane anterior to the artery: *externally* it is related to the top of the left lung and pleura: *anteriorly* it is covered by the sternum, sterno-clavicular articulation, and sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles: it is overlapped by the left lung and pleura, and it is crossed obliquely near its origin by the left pneumogastric nerve: the phrenic nerve is anterior to and parallel with the artery. The left vertebral vein lies anterior to it, and on the same plane we find the origin of the left vena innominata as already described: *posteriorly*

the artery corresponds to the second dorsal vertebra at its origin, afterwards to a short portion of the spinal column above this vertebra, to the longus colli muscle, and to the sympathetic nerve and its inferior cervical ganglion. The cervical portion is very short: it has anterior to it the parts already mentioned as lying in front of the artery of the right side; in front of it also we find the internal jugular vein, with the vagus and phrenic nerves. The latter nerve, at the inner margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, passes inwards towards the middle line and crosses in front of the artery at the termination of the cervical portion of its first stage; and the terminating portion of the thoracic duct, as it is about to enter the posterior part of the left subclavian vein at its junction with the internal jugular, lies anterior to the artery in this situation.

From the preceding account it follows that the left subclavian artery differs in the following respects from the right: the left subclavian is longer and proportionably more slender; it arises within the cavity of the thorax, and from the arch of the aorta; it is situated at the left side of the spine, which here forms a concavity, and it is in close relation with the left side of the second dorsal vertebra: for these reasons it lies much deeper and farther removed from the surface than the right: its direction is also more vertical, and consequently nearly parallel to the pneumogastric and phrenic nerves; it is intimately connected with the œsophagus and thoracic duct and left longus colli muscle, and it is covered in front and externally by the left lung and pleura: the internal jugular vein is nearly parallel with it internally, whilst at the right side the internal jugular crosses in front of the subclavian artery:—lastly, the left subclavian vein lies superior to a considerable portion of the

artery in its first stage, and also internal to it; whilst on the right side the vein is inferior to the artery.

Second stage of the Subclavian arteries.—Each of the subclavian arteries in its second stage is covered *anteriorly* by the integuments, platysma, cervical aponeurosis, clavicular origin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle; and frequently immediately behind this muscle, by the transverse branch of communication between the anterior and external jugular veins; and by the scalenus anticus muscle which separates the artery from the subclavian vein; the latter vessel lying lower down, and covering the insertion of the muscle. The phrenic nerve is usually enumerated amongst the anterior relations of the subclavian artery in the second stage; and from the obliquity of its course across the anterior surface of the scalenus anticus muscle, until it becomes related to the internal mammary artery, it may be considered, properly speaking, as an anterior relation both to the first and second stages of the artery. *Posteriorly* the artery is related to the apex of the cone of the pleura and to the scalenus posticus muscle; the brachial plexus of nerves lies on a plane posterior to the artery in this stage, and partly accompanies the artery into its third stage.

Third stage of the Subclavian arteries. Each of the subclavian arteries in its third stage takes a direction obliquely downwards and outwards, and having arrived at the lower margin of the first rib changes its name, and becomes the axillary artery. In this course it is covered *anteriorly* by the clavicle and subclavian muscle, immediately above which it has other important relations, which we may now proceed to study. On raising the integuments, platysma, and fascia, together with some of the supra-clavicular branches of the cervical plexus of nerves, from off the front of the artery, we usually

observe a space between the trapezius muscle on the outside, and the sterno-mastoid on the inside: in some cases, however, the fibres of these muscles meet at their clavicular attachments, so that in order to expose the artery it becomes necessary to divide transversely some of the fibres of the trapezius. In the deeper layer or stratum, we observe the posterior belly of the omo-hyoid muscle passing at first horizontally inwards, and then slightly upwards and inwards towards the larynx. A triangular space is thus formed, bounded inferiorly by the clavicle, internally by the posterior margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, and externally by the posterior belly of the omo-hyoid; in this space, which is called the *posterior inferior lateral triangle* of the neck, the artery may be felt emerging from behind the scalenus anticus muscle accompanied by the brachial plexus of nerves. If we were to judge of the size of this space by the appearance it presents in the dissected subject, we would be led into great error. It is, in fact, hardly appreciable while the muscles which bound it preserve their natural relative position, though dissection may make it appear of considerable extent. The brachial plexus lies behind the artery, but a large portion of it projects at its outer or acromial side. The vein is situated on a plane anterior to the artery, but inferior and nearer to the middle line. The anterior thoracic nerve begins to descend in front of it in the lower part of this stage; and lastly, it is crossed anteriorly by the transversalis humeri artery, which runs in this situation nearly parallel to the clavicle. *Posteriorly* it rests on part of the scalenus posticus, on the inferior fasciculus of the brachial plexus, on the origin of the middle thoracic nerve, which supplies the lesser pectoral muscle, and on the first rib. In operations on the axillary artery and about the shoulder, the artery may be easily compressed against the rib for the purpose of preventing hemorrhage.

OPERATION OF TYING THE FIRST STAGE OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

This operation has been performed in about ten cases; in nine upon the first stage of the right subclavian, and in one upon the first stage of the left: all these cases were attended with fatal results.

LIGATURE OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY IN THE FIRST STAGE.

No.	Operator.	Date of Operation.	Results and Observations.
1	Colles.....	1811	Death, from hemorrhage, on 4th day.
2	Mott........	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 18th day.
3	Hayden ..	1835	Death, from hemorrhage, on 12th day.
4	O'Reilly..	1836	Death, from hemorrhage, on 23d day.
5	Partridge	...	Death, from pericarditis and pleuritis, on 4th day.
6	Liston....	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 13th day.
7	Liston....	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 36th day.
8	Auvert...	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 22d day.
9	Auvert....	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 11th day.
10	Rodgers..	1845	Death, from hemorrhage, on 15th day.

Professor Colles's case. The ligature was passed round the artery, but not tightened till the fourth day, great dyspnœa and oppression about the heart having occurred. On the ninth day the patient complained of sensation of strangling and pain about the heart. He then became delirious, and died in a few hours.*

Mr. Hayden's case. "Eliza Moulang, aged 57, unmarried, and of intemperate habits, states that in November, 1834, she perceived a small pulsating tumor, of the size of a pea, about an inch and a half below the right clavicle, and at an equal distance from the sternum. In April, 1835, it had increased to the size of a marble, and was for the first time attended with pain, which was of a lancinating character. This recurred at intervals till August, after which it remained permanently, being, however, attended with increased severity at intervals.

---

* Edin. Med. and Surg. Jour., 1815.

"August 22, 1835. She was seen by Dr. Ireland, Messrs. Wilmot, O'Beirne, and Hayden, for the first time.

"Sept. 7. The patient was admitted into the Anglesey Hospital. On examination, a large pulsating tumor was observed, situated internally to the axilla, parallel to the upper edge of the pectoralis minor, and extending above the clavicle: it is circumscribed, and has pulsation referrible to its inferior part. There is considerable tension on the upper portion of the tumor, the size of which can be diminished by pressure. Comparing the clavicle of this side with the opposite one, the former appears somewhat displaced, being pushed upwards. The arm, forearm, and hand were much swollen and œdematous some days since, and 'bruit de soufflet' was audible over the tumor.

"The results of stethoscopic examination were not unfavorable in reference to the operation for this disease, which is declared to be aneurism of the subclavian artery extending to the *scalenus*. She now describes the pain as darting through the tumor to the back of the shoulder, and down to the elbow. She also complains of an almost insupportable sense of weight and numbness in the whole extremity, although the swelling of it is inconsiderable."

Operation.—On September 15, 1835, Mr. Hayden proceeded to perform the operation in the following manner:

"The patient was placed on the back upon a large table, furnished with mattress and bolsters; head slightly depressed, and turned to the left side. First incision, commenced nearly at the left sterno-clavicular articulation, traversed the upper margin of the sternum and clavicle, and terminated beyond the posterior or acromial margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, having divided the integuments and platysma, including subjacent adipose tissue of about a quarter of an inch in depth. Second incision, commenced about four inches above the sternum, a little to the left of the mesial line of the neck, so as to terminate by falling at right angles on the commencement of the first incision, dividing the parts to the same depth: two sides of a triangle were thus formed, the apex at the sternum. The flap, consisting of integument, platysma, and adipose layer, was raised from the apex upwards and outwards: the outline of the sterno-cleido-mastoid was now very distinct, but still covered by the superficial fascia; the latter was carefully divided immediately above the sternum, corresponding to the anterior edge and lower extremity of the sternal portion of the sterno-cleido-mastoid. A director was next introduced beneath this muscle, the fibres of which were divided at about a quarter of an inch from the sternum and clavicle, and precisely parallel to its origin. The muscle was now raised upwards and outwards with the handle of a scalpel: a small vein was here tied. In the next stage of the operation, the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid were divided upon a director. Hemorrhage from a small artery and vein so inundated the part, that it was found necessary to secure them before the operation was proceeded with. After the displacement of some cellular structure with a director, the innominata, carotid, and subclavian were felt; compression of the last-mentioned vessel suspended pulsation at the wrist and tumor. The first part of the subclavian was found not involved in the disease, and, consequently, it was decided that this vessel should be tied in preference to the innominata, which had been clearly exposed, and which, from its direction, and being uninterfered with by the clavicle, seemed to offer much less obstacle to the passage of the ligature; this was, at first, attempted with an aneurism-needle, made of silver, in order that it might be bent so as to present a degree of concavity to the clavicle, to be determined by the displacement of this bone, and the depth of the artery. The eyed part of the needle, for about an inch, was made to slide off and on, like the canula of a trocar, so that when the extremity of the needle was brought around the artery, the eyed portion, with the ligature, might be withdrawn. But when the handle of the instrument was depressed, the upper part slipped from the lower before the latter had passed under the artery. The vessel was subsequently secured with Mr. L'Estrange's needle.

"On the 25th, though positively forbidden, she got out of bed, and walked about the room.

"Subsequently, at two o'clock P.M., she would not suffer the nurse to pass the bed-pan under her, but got out of bed; while in the act of doing so, and rising upon her right hand placed upon the bed, considerable hemorrhage suddenly set in.

"The patient died on the 27th, twelve days after the operation. The artery at the side of the ligature was gaping irregularly for three-fourths of its calibre; the remaining fourth was sound, and retained the ligature."*

Mr. O'Reilly's case.—"Thomas Duffy, aged 39 years, a man of robust frame, and twenty years employed as helper in a stable, was admitted into Jervis Street Hospital, April 15, 1836, under the care of Mr. O'Reilly, for aneurism of the right subclavian artery. He has lived a life of continued intemperance, always drinking, but never incapable of attending to his duty. The aneurismal tumor was distinctly circumscribed, of a somewhat oval shape, and measuring in transverse diameter two inches and a half, and in the vertical direction two inches. The pulsation could be distinctly felt in all parts of the tumor, and pressure on the subclavian artery not only commanded the pulsation of the sac, but even diminished its contents to the degree of rendering it flaccid; finally, the bruit de soufflet was distinctly audible over all its surface. The first time he observed this tumor was in February last, and since that time he thinks it has made little progress. The symptoms he complained of on admission were, numbness of his fingers and uneasy sensations in his arm and forearm, with occasional cramps, since last Christmas. For the last eight or nine weeks he has been obliged to remain almost constantly in bed, with his arm extended from his body, as he suffered considerable pain whenever he walked about for any time, or approached his arm to his side; in bed, however, with his arm extended, he is quite free from pain. His general health did not seem impaired, and his heart and lungs were sound, judging from careful physical examination. On the whole he appeared to be a favorable subject for the operation which was decided on at a consultation held with the hospital surgeons: the patient, being informed of the nature and urgency of his symptoms, expressed his willingness to submit to any operation which would give him relief. Accordingly, at two o'clock the following day (September 16), Mr. O'Reilly proceeded, with the assistance of his colleagues, to perform the operation.

---

* Lancet, 1837.

Operation.—The patient being placed in Heurteloup's

margin and close to the insertion of the scalenus anticus muscle, in which situation the commencement of the vena innominata lies upon a plane anterior and a little inferior to the artery: lower down, on account of their difference of obliquity, they become more distant, the vein lying on the outer side. The vertebral vein as it is about to terminate in the internal jugular, usually passes anterior to the artery. In front of the artery we observe also the superior and middle cardiac nerves descending; and near the origin of the vessel, the pneumogastric nerve, and sometimes its recurrent branch (which in this situation occasionally begins to detach itself from its parent trunk), are situated in front of it. Vieussens describes a plexiform appearance upon the pneumogastric nerve in this situation, corresponding to the origin of the recurrent, and which he calls the *plexus gangliformis;* these nerves therefore pass between the artery and the vena innominata. The phrenic nerve also forms an anterior relation of the subclavian artery: immediately after this nerve has passed from off the scalenus anticus muscle, it gets under cover of the internal jugular vein close to its junction with the subclavian, and insinuates itself into a small interval which exists between the origin of the thyroid axis and the inner margin of the muscle; and it is in this situation that the nerve lies in front of the right subclavian artery in its first stage: generally speaking, it does not lie in direct contact with the artery, but is borne from off this vessel by the origin of the internal mammary artery, anterior to and across which the nerve usually passes. Sometimes the phrenic nerve lies upon a plane posterior to the internal mammary artery. *Posteriorly* the first stage of the right subclavian artery is related to the recurrent nerve, inferior cardiac nerve, and still farther back to the trunk

of the sympathetic nerve where it forms its inferior cervical ganglion: this ganglion is situated behind the artery close to the origin of the vertebral. The longus colli muscle, with the interposition of some loose areolar tissue, lies behind the artery: the apex of the cone of the pleura lies a little inferior, to the outside, and on a plane posterior to the vessel.

First stage of the Left Subclavian artery. The left subclavian artery arises within the cavity of the thorax, from the arch of the aorta, opposite to and to the left side of the second dorsal vertebra, and ascends slightly outwards into the neck, till it reaches the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, where the second stage commences. Like the common carotid artery, the first stage may be divided into two portions,—a *thoracic* and *cervical:* the *thoracic* portion extends from the origin of the vessel from the arch of the aorta to the upper outlet of the thorax; and the cervical extends from this point to the internal margin of the scalenus anticus. In its thoracic portion it is related, *internally,* to the left carotid artery, which is also situated on a plane anterior to it; to the œsophagus, thoracic duct, and recurrent nerve, which are on a plane posterior to it, and to the internal jugular vein and its junction with the subclavian to form the left vena innominata: these large veins are also situated on a plane anterior to the artery: *externally* it is related to the top of the left lung and pleura: *anteriorly* it is covered by the sternum, sterno-clavicular articulation, and sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles: it is overlapped by the left lung and pleura, and it is crossed obliquely near its origin by the left pneumogastric nerve: the phrenic nerve is anterior to and parallel with the artery. The left vertebral vein lies anterior to it, and on the same plane we find the origin of the left vena innominata as already described: *posteriorly*

the artery corresponds to the second dorsal vertebra at its origin, afterwards to a short portion of the spinal column above this vertebra, to the longus colli muscle, and to the sympathetic nerve and its inferior cervical ganglion. The cervical portion is very short: it has anterior to it the parts already mentioned as lying in front of the artery of the right side; in front of it also we find the internal jugular vein, with the vagus and phrenic nerves. The latter nerve, at the inner margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, passes inwards towards the middle line and crosses in front of the artery at the termination of the cervical portion of its first stage; and the terminating portion of the thoracic duct, as it is about to enter the posterior part of the left subclavian vein at its junction with the internal jugular, lies anterior to the artery in this situation.

From the preceding account it follows that the left subclavian artery differs in the following respects from the right: the left subclavian is longer and proportionably more slender; it arises within the cavity of the thorax, and from the arch of the aorta; it is situated at the left side of the spine, which here forms a concavity, and it is in close relation with the left side of the second dorsal vertebra: for these reasons it lies much deeper and farther removed from the surface than the right: its direction is also more vertical, and consequently nearly parallel to the pneumogastric and phrenic nerves; it is intimately connected with the œsophagus and thoracic duct and left longus colli muscle, and it is covered in front and externally by the left lung and pleura: the internal jugular vein is nearly parallel with it internally, whilst at the right side the internal jugular crosses in front of the subclavian artery:—lastly, the left subclavian vein lies superior to a considerable portion of the

artery in its first stage, and also internal to it; whilst on the right side the vein is inferior to the artery.

Second stage of the Subclavian arteries.—Each of the subclavian arteries in its second stage is covered *anteriorly* by the integuments, platysma, cervical aponeurosis, clavicular origin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle; and frequently immediately behind this muscle, by the transverse branch of communication between the anterior and external jugular veins; and by the scalenus anticus muscle which separates the artery from the subclavian vein; the latter vessel lying lower down, and covering the insertion of the muscle. The phrenic nerve is usually enumerated amongst the anterior relations of the subclavian artery in the second stage; and from the obliquity of its course across the anterior surface of the scalenus anticus muscle, until it becomes related to the internal mammary artery, it may be considered, properly speaking, as an anterior relation both to the first and second stages of the artery. *Posteriorly* the artery is related to the apex of the cone of the pleura and to the scalenus posticus muscle; the brachial plexus of nerves lies on a plane posterior to the artery in this stage, and partly accompanies the artery into its third stage.

Third stage of the Subclavian arteries. Each of the subclavian arteries in its third stage takes a direction obliquely downwards and outwards, and having arrived at the lower margin of the first rib changes its name, and becomes the axillary artery. In this course it is covered *anteriorly* by the clavicle and subclavian muscle, immediately above which it has other important relations, which we may now proceed to study. On raising the integuments, platysma, and fascia, together with some of the supra-clavicular branches of the cervical plexus of nerves, from off the front of the artery, we usually

observe a space between the trapezius muscle on the outside, and the sterno-mastoid on the inside: in some cases, however, the fibres of these muscles meet at their clavicular attachments, so that in order to expose the artery it becomes necessary to divide transversely some of the fibres of the trapezius. In the deeper layer or stratum, we observe the posterior belly of the omo-hyoid muscle passing at first horizontally inwards, and then slightly upwards and inwards towards the larynx. A triangular space is thus formed, bounded inferiorly by the clavicle, internally by the posterior margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, and externally by the posterior belly of the omo-hyoid; in this space, which is called the *posterior inferior lateral triangle* of the neck, the artery may be felt emerging from behind the scalenus anticus muscle accompanied by the brachial plexus of nerves. If we were to judge of the size of this space by the appearance it presents in the dissected subject, we would be led into great error. It is, in fact, hardly appreciable while the muscles which bound it preserve their natural relative position, though dissection may make it appear of considerable extent. The brachial plexus lies behind the artery, but a large portion of it projects at its outer or acromial side. The vein is situated on a plane anterior to the artery, but inferior and nearer to the middle line. The anterior thoracic nerve begins to descend in front of it in the lower part of this stage; and lastly, it is crossed anteriorly by the transversalis humeri artery, which runs in this situation nearly parallel to the clavicle. *Posteriorly* it rests on part of the scalenus posticus, on the inferior fasciculus of the brachial plexus, on the origin of the middle thoracic nerve, which supplies the lesser pectoral muscle, and on the first rib. In operations on the axillary artery and about the shoulder, the artery may be easily compressed against the rib for the purpose of preventing hemorrhage.

OPERATION OF TYING THE FIRST STAGE OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

This operation has been performed in about ten cases; in nine upon the first stage of the right subclavian, and in one upon the first stage of the left: all these cases were attended with fatal results.

LIGATURE OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY IN THE FIRST STAGE.

No.	Operator.	Date of Operation.	Results and Observations.
1	Colles.....	1811	Death, from hemorrhage, on 4th day.
2	Mott........	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 18th day.
3	Hayden..	1835	Death, from hemorrhage, on 12th day.
4	O'Reilly..	1836	Death, from hemorrhage, on 23d day.
5	Partridge	...	Death, from pericarditis and pleuritis, on 4th day.
6	Liston....	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 13th day.
7	Liston....	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 36th day.
8	Auvert...	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 22d day.
9	Auvert....	...	Death, from hemorrhage, on 11th day.
10	Rodgers..	1845	Death, from hemorrhage, on 15th day.

Professor Colles's case. The ligature was passed round the artery, but not tightened till the fourth day, great dyspnœa and oppression about the heart having occurred. On the ninth day the patient complained of sensation of strangling and pain about the heart. He then became delirious, and died in a few hours.*

Mr. Hayden's case. "Eliza Moulang, aged 57, unmarried, and of intemperate habits, states that in November, 1834, she perceived a small pulsating tumor, of the size of a pea, about an inch and a half below the right clavicle, and at an equal distance from the sternum. In April, 1835, it had increased to the size of a marble, and was for the first time attended with pain, which was of a lancinating character. This recurred at intervals till August, after which it remained permanently, being, however, attended with increased severity at intervals.

---

* Edin. Med. and Surg. Jour., 1815.

"August 22, 1835. She was seen by Dr. Ireland, Messrs. Wilmot, O'Beirne, and Hayden, for the first time.

"Sept. 7. The patient was admitted into the Anglesey Hospital. On examination, a large pulsating tumor was observed, situated internally to the axilla, parallel to the upper edge of the pectoralis minor, and extending above the clavicle: it is circumscribed, and has pulsation referrible to its inferior part. There is considerable tension on the upper portion of the tumor, the size of which can be diminished by pressure. Comparing the clavicle of this side with the opposite one, the former appears somewhat displaced, being pushed upwards. The arm, forearm, and hand were much swollen and œdematous some days since, and 'bruit de soufflet' was audible over the tumor.

"The results of stethoscopic examination were not unfavorable in reference to the operation for this disease, which is declared to be aneurism of the subclavian artery extending to the *scalenus*. She now describes the pain as darting through the tumor to the back of the shoulder, and down to the elbow. She also complains of an almost insupportable sense of weight and numbness in the whole extremity, although the swelling of it is inconsiderable."

Operation.—On September 15, 1835, Mr. Hayden proceeded to perform the operation in the following manner:

"The patient was placed on the back upon a large table, furnished with mattress and bolsters; head slightly depressed, and turned to the left side. First incision, commenced nearly at the left sterno-clavicular articulation, traversed the upper margin of the sternum and clavicle, and terminated beyond the posterior or acromial margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, having divided the integuments and platysma, including subjacent adipose tissue of about a quarter of an inch in depth. Second incision, commenced about four inches above the sternum, a little to the left of the mesial line of the neck, so as to terminate by falling at right angles on the commencement of the first incision, dividing the parts to the same depth: two sides of a triangle were thus formed, the apex at the sternum. The flap, consisting of integument, platysma, and adipose layer, was raised from the apex upwards and outwards: the outline of the sterno-cleido-mastoid was now very distinct, but still covered by the superficial fascia; the latter was carefully divided immediately above the sternum, corresponding to the anterior edge and lower extremity of the sternal portion of the sterno-cleido-mastoid. A director was next introduced beneath this muscle, the fibres of which were divided at about a quarter of an inch from the sternum and clavicle, and precisely parallel to its origin. The muscle was now raised upwards and outwards with the handle of a scalpel: a small vein was here tied. In the next stage of the operation, the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid were divided upon a director. Hemorrhage from a small artery and vein so inundated the part, that it was found necessary to secure them before the operation was proceeded with. After the displacement of some cellular structure with a director, the innominata, carotid, and subclavian were felt; compression of the last-mentioned vessel suspended pulsation at the wrist and tumor. The first part of the subclavian was found not involved in the disease, and, consequently, it was decided that this vessel should be tied in preference to the innominata, which had been clearly exposed, and which, from its direction, and being uninterfered with by the clavicle, seemed to offer much less obstacle to the passage of the ligature; this was, at first, attempted with an aneurism-needle, made of silver, in order that it might be bent so as to present a degree of concavity to the clavicle, to be determined by the displacement of this bone, and the depth of the artery. The eyed part of the needle, for about an inch, was made to slide off and on, like the canula of a trocar, so that when the extremity of the needle was brought around the artery, the eyed portion, with the ligature, might be withdrawn. But when the handle of the instrument was depressed, the upper part slipped from the lower before the latter had passed under the artery. The vessel was subsequently secured with Mr. L'Estrange's needle.

"On the 25th, though positively forbidden, she got out of bed, and walked about the room.

"Subsequently, at two o'clock P.M., she would not suffer the nurse to pass the bed-pan under her, but got out of bed; while in the act of doing so, and rising upon her right hand placed upon the bed, considerable hemorrhage suddenly set in.

"The patient died on the 27th, twelve days after the operation. The artery at the side of the ligature was gaping irregularly for three-fourths of its calibre; the remaining fourth was sound, and retained the ligature."*

Mr. O'Reilly's case.—"Thomas Duffy, aged 39 years, a man of robust frame, and twenty years employed as helper in a stable, was admitted into Jervis Street Hospital, April 15, 1836, under the care of Mr. O'Reilly, for aneurism of the right subclavian artery. He has lived a life of continued intemperance, always drinking, but never incapable of attending to his duty. The aneurismal tumor was distinctly circumscribed, of a somewhat oval shape, and measuring in transverse diameter two inches and a half, and in the vertical direction two inches. The pulsation could be distinctly felt in all parts of the tumor, and pressure on the subclavian artery not only commanded the pulsation of the sac, but even diminished its contents to the degree of rendering it flaccid; finally, the bruit de soufflet was distinctly audible over all its surface. The first time he observed this tumor was in February last, and since that time he thinks it has made little progress. The symptoms he complained of on admission were, numbness of his fingers and uneasy sensations in his arm and forearm, with occasional cramps, since last Christmas. For the last eight or nine weeks he has been obliged to remain almost constantly in bed, with his arm extended from his body, as he suffered considerable pain whenever he walked about for any time, or approached his arm to his side; in bed, however, with his arm extended, he is quite free from pain. His general health did not seem impaired, and his heart and lungs were sound, judging from careful physical examination. On the whole he appeared to be a favorable subject for the operation which was decided on at a consultation held with the hospital surgeons: the patient, being informed of the nature and urgency of his symptoms, expressed his willingness to submit to any operation which would give him relief. Accordingly, at two o'clock the following day (September 16), Mr. O'Reilly proceeded, with the assistance of his colleagues, to perform the operation.

---

* Lancet, 1837.

Operation.—The patient being placed in Heurteloup's

margin and close to the insertion of the scalenus anticus muscle, in which situation the commencement of the vena innominata lies upon a plane anterior and a little inferior to the artery: lower down, on account of their difference of obliquity, they become more distant, the vein lying on the outer side. The vertebral vein as it is about to terminate in the internal jugular, usually passes anterior to the artery. In front of the artery we observe also the superior and middle cardiac nerves descending; and near the origin of the vessel, the pneumogastric nerve, and sometimes its recurrent branch (which in this situation occasionally begins to detach itself from its parent trunk), are situated in front of it. Vieussens describes a plexiform appearance upon the pneumogastric nerve in this situation, corresponding to the origin of the recurrent, and which he calls the *plexus gangliformis;* these nerves therefore pass between the artery and the vena innominata. The phrenic nerve also forms an anterior relation of the subclavian artery: immediately after this nerve has passed from off the scalenus anticus muscle, it gets under cover of the internal jugular vein close to its junction with the subclavian, and insinuates itself into a small interval which exists between the origin of the thyroid axis and the inner margin of the muscle; and it is in this situation that the nerve lies in front of the right subclavian artery in its first stage: generally speaking, it does not lie in direct contact with the artery, but is borne from off this vessel by the origin of the internal mammary artery, anterior to and across which the nerve usually passes. Sometimes the phrenic nerve lies upon a plane posterior to the internal mammary artery. *Posteriorly* the first stage of the right subclavian artery is related to the recurrent nerve, inferior cardiac nerve, and still farther back to the trunk

of the sympathetic nerve where it forms its inferior cervical ganglion: this ganglion is situated behind the artery close to the origin of the vertebral. The longus colli muscle, with the interposition of some loose areolar tissue, lies behind the artery: the apex of the cone of the pleura lies a little inferior, to the outside, and on a plane posterior to the vessel.

First stage of the Left Subclavian artery. The left subclavian artery arises within the cavity of the thorax, from the arch of the aorta, opposite to and to the left side of the second dorsal vertebra, and ascends slightly outwards into the neck, till it reaches the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, where the second stage commences. Like the common carotid artery, the first stage may be divided into two portions,—a *thoracic* and *cervical:* the *thoracic* portion extends from the origin of the vessel from the arch of the aorta to the upper outlet of the thorax; and the cervical extends from this point to the internal margin of the scalenus anticus. In its thoracic portion it is related, *internally,* to the left carotid artery, which is also situated on a plane anterior to it; to the œsophagus, thoracic duct, and recurrent nerve, which are on a plane posterior to it, and to the internal jugular vein and its junction with the subclavian to form the left vena innominata: these large veins are also situated on a plane anterior to the artery: *externally* it is related to the top of the left lung and pleura: *anteriorly* it is covered by the sternum, sterno-clavicular articulation, and sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles: it is overlapped by the left lung and pleura, and it is crossed obliquely near its origin by the left pneumogastric nerve: the phrenic nerve is anterior to and parallel with the artery. The left vertebral vein lies anterior to it, and on the same plane we find the origin of the left vena innominata as already described: *posteriorly*

the artery corresponds to the second dorsal vertebra at its origin, afterwards to a short portion of the spinal column above this vertebra, to the longus colli muscle, and to the sympathetic nerve and its inferior cervical ganglion. The cervical portion is very short: it has anterior to it the parts already mentioned as lying in front of the artery of the right side; in front of it also we find the internal jugular vein, with the vagus and phrenic nerves. The latter nerve, at the inner margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, passes inwards towards the middle line and crosses in front of the artery at the termination of the cervical portion of its first stage; and the terminating portion of the thoracic duct, as it is about to enter the posterior part of the left subclavian vein at its junction with the internal jugular, lies anterior to the artery in this situation.

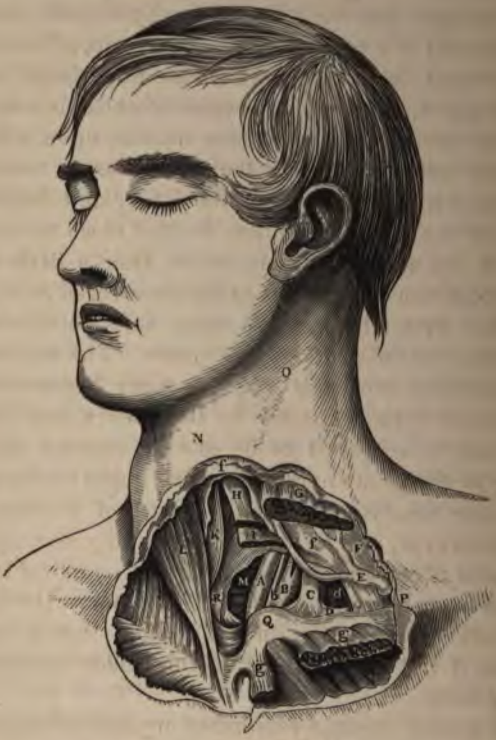
From the preceding account it follows that the left subclavian artery differs in the following respects from the right: the left subclavian is longer and proportionably more slender; it arises within the cavity of the thorax, and from the arch of the aorta; it is situated at the left side of the spine, which here forms a concavity, and it is in close relation with the left side of the second dorsal vertebra: for these reasons it lies much deeper and farther removed from the surface than the right: its direction is also more vertical, and consequently nearly parallel to the pneumogastric and phrenic nerves; it is intimately connected with the œsophagus and thoracic duct and left longus colli muscle, and it is covered in front and externally by the left lung and pleura: the internal jugular vein is nearly parallel with it internally, whilst at the right side the internal jugular crosses in front of the subclavian artery:—lastly, the left subclavian vein lies superior to a considerable portion of the

artery in its first stage, and also internal to it; whilst on the right side the vein is inferior to the artery.

Second stage of the Subclavian arteries.—Each of the subclavian arteries in its second stage is covered *anteriorly* by the integuments, platysma, cervical aponeurosis, clavicular origin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle; and frequently immediately behind this muscle, by the transverse branch of communication between the anterior and external jugular veins; and by the scalenus anticus muscle which separates the artery from the subclavian vein; the latter vessel lying lower down, and covering the insertion of the muscle. The phrenic nerve is usually enumerated amongst the anterior relations of the subclavian artery in the second stage; and from the obliquity of its course across the anterior surface of the scalenus anticus muscle, until it becomes related to the internal mammary artery, it may be considered, properly speaking, as an anterior relation both to the first and second stages of the artery. *Posteriorly* the artery is related to the apex of the cone of the pleura and to the scalenus posticus muscle; the brachial plexus of nerves lies on a plane posterior to the artery in this stage, and partly accompanies the artery into its third stage.

Third stage of the Subclavian arteries. Each of the subclavian arteries in its third stage takes a direction obliquely downwards and outwards, and having arrived at the lower margin of the first rib changes its name, and becomes the axillary artery. In this course it is covered *anteriorly* by the clavicle and subclavian muscle, immediately above which it has other important relations, which we may now proceed to study. On raising the integuments, platysma, and fascia, together with some of the supra-clavicular branches of the cervical plexus of nerves, from off the front of the artery, we usually

Fig. 19.—Some of the relations of the Left Carotid and Left Subclavian Arteries in the cervical portion of their first stage.



A, Left Common Carotid Artery. B, Left Subclavian Artery. C, Internal Jugular about to join D, the Left Subclavian Vein;—the Jugular and Subclavian Veins displaced outwards. E, Anterior Jugular Vein in its course behind the Sterno-mastoid Muscle. F, Deep Cervical Fascia. G, Left Sterno-mastoid Muscle divided and separated from g, g, its Sternal and Clavicular origins. H, Left Sterno-hyoid Muscle cut. I, Left Sterno-thyroid Muscle cut. K, Right Sterno-hyoid Muscle. L, Right Sterno-mastoid Muscle. M, Trachea. N, Projection of the Thyroid Cartilage. O, Hollow, internal to Sterno-mastoid Muscle. P, Situation where the Subclavian Artery passes behind the Clavicle. Q, Sternal end of Left Clavicle. R, Right Sterno-thyroid Muscle. b, Left Pneumogastric Nerve. d, Left Anterior Scalenus Muscle. f, f, Layers of the Cervical Fascia.

the trachea. Several small veins having been ligated, and the flap thus formed dissected up, the sternal portion with half of the clavicular of the mastoid muscle was divided upon a grooved director, a procedure which fully brought into view the sterno-hyoid and omo-hyoid muscles and the deep-seated jugular vein, all covered by the cervical fascia. A part of the aneurismal sac was also in sight, overlapping a considerable portion of the anterior surface of the scalene muscle, upon which the operator could distinctly feel the phrenic nerve. By digging with the handle of the knife, and fingers, the deep cervical fascia was now divided close to the inner edge of the scalene muscle, when, after a little search, the subclavian artery was easily discovered as it passed over the first rib, pressure upon this portion readily arresting the pulsation of the tumor. The next step of the operation consisted in passing the ligature around the vessel without injury to the pleura and thoracic duct, but this proved to be one of extreme difficulty, owing to the great narrowness and depth of the wound, the latter nearly equalling the length of the forefinger. This, however, was at length successfully accomplished, by means of an aneurismal needle with a movable point, carried from below upwards. The moment the ligature was tied, all pulsation in the tumor ceased, and the patient, if not entirely comfortable, made no complaint of any kind.

The wound became somewhat erysipelatous after the operation, but, on the whole, the patient got on well until the 26th of October, when, on changing his position in bed, hemorrhage supervened, and, continuing to recur at various intervals, destroyed him on the fifteenth day. On dissection, the wound was found to be filled with clotted blood, beneath which the artery had been completely divided by the ligature, which lay loose close by. The stump of the subclavian, between the aorta and the point of ligation, was about an inch and a quarter in length, and thoroughly impervious to air and liquids, its calibre being occupied by a solid and firmly adherent coagulum. The distal extremity of the subclavian contained a soft imperfect clot, while the vertebral artery which was given off immediately at the site of the ligature, was almost patulous, and had evidently been the seat of the hemorrhage which caused the patient's death. The aneurismal sac, the size of a small orange, was completely blocked up with coagula: the thoracic duct was uninjured, *but the pleura at the bottom of the wound was found to be extensively lacerated, and through the opening thus formed a large quantity of blood had passed into the left cavity of the chest.**

Operation of tying the Subclavian artery in its second stage. This operation is not generally practised in this country, both on account of its supposed difficulty and the dangerous consequences apprehended. The difficulty has, however, been exaggerated. With moderate care the scalenus anticus muscle may be divided without injuring the jugular vein, phrenic nerve, or scapular branches of the thyroid axis; and, though it be not desirable to tie an artery so close to one of its branches, yet there is every reason to believe that the absence of coagulum on the cardiac side of the ligature does not necessarily preclude the possibility of success. Still it must be borne in mind, that the top of the pleura lies close to and immediately behind the artery in this situation, and may be injured by the aneurism-needle; and again, the ligature in this stage would include the artery close to the origin of the superior intercostal and cervicalis profunda.

---

* Gross's System of Surgery, vol. i. p. 909.

The operation was originally suggested by Dupuytren,* and Dr. Auchinloss performed it on the left subclavian artery.†

Operation of tying the Subclavian artery in its third stage. This operation has been frequently performed for aneurism and wounds of the axillary artery. Mr. Ramsden first tied the artery in the year 1809; since then it has been frequently the subject of successful operation. Dr. Post of New York first performed this operation with success in 1817, and Mr. Liston afterwards, in the year 1820: finding the artery diseased at the commencement of its third stage, Mr. Liston cut across the external half of the scalenus anticus muscle, and in this situation included the artery in a ligature.‡ In this city the operation in the third stage has been performed by Professor Colles, Professor Porter, Dr. Hutton, Mr. Ellis, and others.

The following method is recommended in order to expose this vessel: the patient should be placed lying on a table of convenient height, with the shoulders elevated, so that the light may fall directly on the parts exposed. The first incision should commence at the external margin of the sterno-mastoid muscle, immediately above the clavicle, and be continued transversely outwards for the extent of about three inches. The platysma myoides and fascia may now be divided on a director to the same extent. Some operators prefer dividing these three layers at once by cutting down on the clavicle after having previously pushed the shoulder upwards; such an incision will of course be above the clavicle when the shoulder is again depressed in order to continue the operation. In many cases, however, of large aneurism, these motions of the shoulder would be impossible. The lips of the wound should now be separated by retractors, and any fibres of the trapezius muscle which advance beyond its outer angle should be carefully divided on a director. The external jugular vein which now presents itself should be drawn to the sternal extremity of the wound: if, however, it should happen to lie more towards the acromial side, it should be drawn outwards; lastly, if it cross the centre of the incision, or if there be a second external jugular in this situation, it may be necessary to include it in two fine ligatures and divide the vessel between them. A plexus of veins, which usually next presents itself, should be separated with the handle of the scalpel, but injured as little as possible, as the further steps of the operation will be considerably obscured by the blood which these vessels throw out. The omo-hyoid muscle may be observed a little above the clavicle, from which point it ascends obliquely upwards and inwards. In a case operated on by the late Professor Todd, this muscle lay below the clavicle, and it became necessary to draw it up and divide it before the artery could be exposed. Connecting the margin of this muscle to the adjacent margin of the scalenus anticus, a strong fascia will be found, through which the operator should cautiously tear with his nail. The finger may now be passed behind the outer margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, in order to search for the subclavian artery. It should be borne in mind that the transversalis humeri artery lies nearly in front of the subclavian, passing horizontally either behind or immediately above the clavicle; the circumstances of its smaller size, and its crossing in front of the scalenus anticus muscle, may assist in distinguishing it. The difficulty of at once finding the subclavian has, however, occasionally been found greater than would have been expected *a priori:* the artery when exposed frequently contracts and its pulsation ceases; the margin of the scalenus anticus is rendered indistinct by its connection with fascia, and the welling of blood, the depth of the artery and alteration of the relative position of the part caused by the aneurismal tumor pushing up the clavicle, together with an enlargement of one or two lymphatic glands, present difficulties that require the greatest presence of mind, judgment, and knowledge of anatomy on the part of the surgeon. It has been suggested by Professor Hargrave, under these circumstances, as well as for the purpose of allowing the artery to be gently relaxed after having been secured, to saw through the clavicle.* Cruveilheir has also advocated a similar practice. Dupuytren recommends that some of the outer fibres of the scalenus anticus muscle should be divided if necessary, and this may be easily effected without injuring the phrenic nerve. We have seen that Mr. Liston was obliged to divide the fibres of this muscle.

---

* Leçons Orales, vol. iv. p. 530.

† See Edin. Med. and Surg. Jour., vol. xlv.

‡ Edin. Med. and Surg. Jour., No. 64.

The subclavian artery has been tied for aneurism of the arteria innominata in conformity with the recommendation of Mr. Wardrop. We have seen that the carotid artery has also been tied upon the same principle. A few words of explanation as to the rationale of this operation, called the application of the "*distal ligature,*" may be useful at the present stage of the subject. It will be remembered that the Hunterian operation for the cure of aneurism consisted in the application of a ligature upon the artery between the heart and the aneurismal sac; the object held in view in this operation was the prevention of the direct flow of blood through the main channel into the tumor; this was followed by the coagulation of its contents, and ultimately by its entire absorption. The mode of operating for aneurism, known by the name of the *distal ligature*, was originally suggested by Brasdor, and was recommended by him in cases where no branch would intervene between the ligature and the sac, and where the surgeon could not well tie the artery between the tumor and the heart. It was supposed that, if no branch originated from the aneurism, or from the artery either above or below the aneurism, the blood would coagulate in the tumor, and that a cure would be accomplished by the absorption of the coagulum and the subsequent contraction and absorption of the sac. The principle upon which a cure is expected to follow this mode of operating is the same as that upon which varicose veins of the leg are treated, by making pressure upon the superior part of the saphena vein: the blood becomes obstructed in the vessel, a coagulum is formed, and an obliteration of the venous channel is accomplished. Mr. Wardrop reports the successful termination of the case in which he performed the operation already mentioned. He was, moreover, induced, from various considerations, to apply the principle suggested by Brasdor to the cure of aneurismal tumors of certain arteries, by applying a ligature, *not upon the artery itself, but upon one of the branches of the diseased trunk:* he imagined that this would be sufficient to diminish the momentum of the circulation through the aneurism, and so produce a consolidation of the tumor and subsequent cure of the disease. In 1827 he was consulted by a patient, a female, who had an aneurism of the arteria innominata: the tumor had advanced into the neck, and made such pressure upon the carotid artery as to prevent the circulation of the blood through it. He was of opinion that a ligature placed now upon the subclavian artery alone would effect a consolidation of the aneurismal tumor; accordingly, in the month of July of that year, he tied this artery in its *third* stage. There was no secondary hemorrhage: the operation was unattended by any unfavorable results. On the twenty-second day the ligature came away and the wound healed. The pulsation in the common carotid artery, however, returned upon the ninth day. Some months after the operation, two newly formed swellings, which were engrafted upon the old one, had made their appearance, and the aneurism continued to enlarge. Symptoms of bronchial inflammation made their appearance, diarrhœa set in, general anasarca took place, and she died twenty-three months after the performance of the operation.

---

* Hargrave's Operative Surgery, p. 44, and Dublin Quarterly Journal for February, 1849, p. 53.

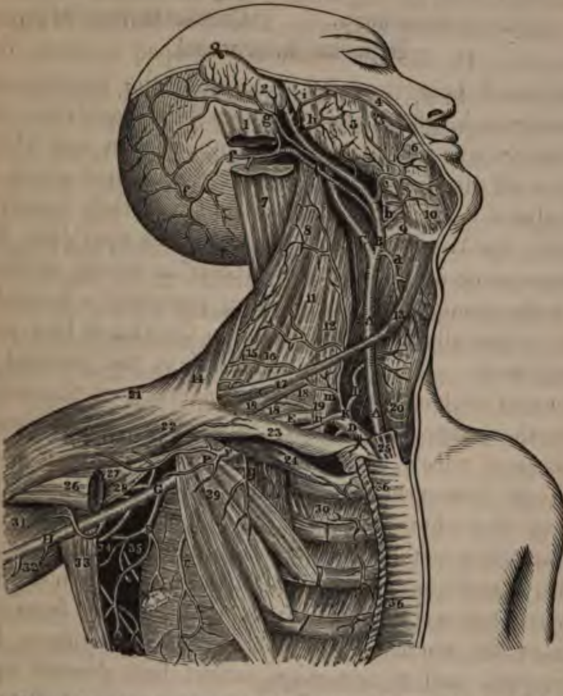
Mr. Wickham, Surgeon to the Winchester Hospital, was consulted by a patient, a man aged fifty-five years, laboring under an aneurism of the arteria innominata. On September 25, 1839, a ligature was placed on the carotid artery immediately above the omo-hyoideus muscle; the ligature came away on the fourteenth day after the operation. It was determined that the subclavian artery should be tied shortly afterwards, but the patient left the hospital contrary to advice and remained out for a considerable length of time. On his readmission, however, the *subclavian artery was tied in its third stage;* the tumor increased in size, hemorrhage took place, and the patient ultimately sank.*

The subclavian and carotid were both tied in their first stage upon the same patient by Dr. Hobart, of Cork, in the year 1839. The case was supposed to be one of aneurism of the arteria innominata, and the patient a female of about twenty-five years of age. On a consultation being held of the principal surgeons in Cork, it was unanimously agreed that, in order to give the patient a chance, the distal operation should be performed. Accordingly, in the presence of a large body of medical men, among whom were Sir James Pitcairne and other military surgeons, also Drs. Bullen, Murphy, Howe, &c., Dr. Hobart made a V-shaped incision, one leg of the V being parallel to each of the vessels, and without much difficulty came down on the arteries: the subclavian was tied between the innominata and where it gives off its first branches, and the carotid about an inch above its origin. The patient was then removed to bed. On the fourteenth day after the operation, the ligature came away from the subclavian artery without any hemorrhage, and every thing promised a favorable result, especially as the pulsation in the tumor had quite disappeared. On the sixteenth day, the patient, a woman of violent temper, had a quarrel with the nurse, when she jumped out of bed, seized a pillow and some books and threw them at her; while making these exertions, hemorrhage set in from the carotid, and the patient died shortly after. On a post-mortem examination being made, the arteria innominata was found healthy, and the circulation through it had not been stopped, but a pyriform tumor which grew from the arch of the aorta to the left of the innominata, had overlapped and to a certain extent had pressed upon that vessel. It was found that *perfect union had taken place where the ligature had been applied on the subclavian*, but a small opening was found in the carotid, through which the hemorrhage had occurred. The tumor was filled with a firm coagulum. The parts were carefully removed by Dr. Wherland, and are preserved in the museum of the College Buildings, Warren's Place, Cork.

---

* Med. Chirur. Trans., vol. xxiii.

Fig. 20.—*Dissection of Right Common Carotid, External and Internal Carotid, Subclavian and Axillary Arteries.*



A, A, Common Carotid Artery. B, External Carotid Artery. C, Internal Carotid Artery. D, Subclavian Artery in its first stage. E, Subclavian Artery in its third stage. F, Axillary Artery in its first stage. G, Axillary Artery in its third stage. H. Brachial Artery. I, Inferior Thyroid Artery. K, Thyroid Axis. P, Thoracico-acromial Artery. S, Sub-scapular Artery. a, Superior Thyroid Artery. b, Lingual Artery. c, Facial Artery. f, f, f, Occipital Artery. g. Posterior Auris Artery. h, Transversalis Faciei Artery. i, Small branch to Zygomatic muscles. m, Ascendens Colli, which in this case came directly from the Thyroid Axis. n, Supra-scapular Artery. q, Muscular branch. r. Long Thoracic Artery. 1, Insertion of Sterno-mastoid Muscle. 2, Posterior surface of External Ear. 3, Masseter Muscle. 4, Zygomaticus Major Muscle. 5, Steno's Duct cut. 6, Depressor Anguli Oris. 7, Splenius Capitis cut. 8, Levator Anguli Scapulæ. 9, Os hyoides. 10, Mylo-hyoid Muscle. 11, Scalenus Medius and Posticus. 12, Scalenus Anticus. 13, Anterior belly of Omo-hyoid Muscle. 14, Trapezius. 15, 16, Muscular Artery. 17, Posterior belly of Omo-hyoid Muscle. 18, 18, 18, Brachial Plexus. 19, Posterior Scapular Artery which in this case was given off by the Subclavian. 20, Trachea. 21, 22. Deltoid Muscle. 23, Clavicular portion of Right Pectoralis Major cut away. 24, Subclavius Muscle. 25, Sternal portion of Right Sterno-mastoid Muscle cut. 26, Termination of Pectoralis Major. 27, 31, Biceps. 28, Coraco-brachialis. 29, Pectoralis Minor. 30, Intercostals. 32, Triceps. 33, Latissimus Dorsi drawn outward. 34, 35, Axillary branches. 36, 36, Sternal portion of Pectoralis Major Muscle.

The *branches* of the subclavian artery are similar on the right and left sides: they are the following:

Vertebral.	Thyroid Axis.
Internal Mammary.	Cervicalis Profunda.
Superior Intercostal.	

The vertebral, internal mammary, and thyroid axis come off from the artery in its *first stage;* the cervicalis profunda and superior intercostal come off in the *second stage.* The subclavian seldom gives off any branch in its third stage; occasionally, however, the posterior scapular arises in this situation and pierces the brachial plexus of nerves in order to arrive at its destination. Prof. Hargrave has seen the internal mammary artery arise on the outside of the scalenus anticus muscle.

The VERTEBRAL ARTERY is usually the first branch of the subclavian, and comes off from the superior and posterior portion of that vessel: it may be divided into four stages. In the first it ascends almost vertically in the neck as high as the foramen in the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra: in the second it passes through the foramina of the transverse processes; in the third it passes horizontally inwards, behind the occipito-atlantoid articulation; and in the fourth it passes obliquely upwards, forwards, and inwards, on the side of the medulla oblongata.

In its *first stage,* at its origin from the subclavian artery, it lies a little to the outside of the carotid, and passes upwards and backwards, situated in an angular space formed between the scalenus anticus muscle externally, and the longus colli internally. In this course it lies on the inferior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic nerve, and is covered in front by the vertebral vein, and by the inferior thyroid artery, which crosses its course and separates it from the common carotid.

In its *second stage* it enters the foramen in the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra, and passes through the corresponding foramina of the vertebræ above it. In this course it is accompanied by the vertebral vein and by a plexus of branches given off from the inferior cervical ganglion: it ascends between the anterior and posterior intertransverse muscles, and in front of the anterior branches of the cervical nerves, along each of which it sends a small artery to the spinal marrow; these small branches are called the *lateral spinal arteries.* It also gives off some *muscular branches* in its course which anastomose with the cervicalis superficialis and ascendens colli arteries. After the vertebral artery has passed through the foramen in the transverse process of the second vertebra, it inclines upwards and outwards to reach that of the atlas, which extends farther outwards than the transverse process of the dentata; in its course from the one process to the other it describes a curve, the convexity of which looks downwards, backwards, and outwards.

In its *third stage* it is horizontal. After the artery has passed through the transverse process of the atlas, it is placed at the inner side of the rectus capitis lateralis muscle, which here separates it from the occipital artery which lies at the outer side of the muscle: from this point the vessel is directed at first backwards and inwards, and then winds forwards and inwards to pierce the posterior occipito-atlantoid ligament. In this course, its concavity, turned forwards, embraces the articulation between the atlas and the condyle of the occipital bone: its *convexity,* turned backwards, may be seen in a triangular space, bounded internally or towards the middle line by the rectus capitis posticus major muscle, above by the obliquus superior muscle, and below by the obliquus inferior. *Inferiorly* it lies in a groove on the upper surface of the posterior arch of the atlas, but is here separated from the bone by the interposition of the ganglionic dilatation of the tenth or sub-occipital nerve: whilst resting on this portion of the atlas, the horizontal curve of the artery is situated on a plane superior and posterior to the first cervical nerve as it escapes from the spinal canal behind the inferior oblique process of the atlas. *Superiorly* the vertebral artery is covered by a production of the posterior occipito-atlantoid ligament, which converts the groove upon the atlas for the artery, into a canal. In this stage the artery gives off minute branches which anastomose with others from the occipital and cervicalis profunda arteries.

In its *fourth stage* the vertebral artery pierces the dura mater beneath the insertion of the first tooth of the ligamentum dentatum, passes upwards and inwards upon the front of that structure, which consequently separates the artery from the spinal accessory nerve as it is passing upwards and outwards behind the ligament. The artery then runs either before or through the midst of the fibrils composing the ninth nerve, applies itself to the side of the medulla oblongata, and afterwards, getting in front of this body, it joins the vertebral of the opposite side at the posterior inferior margin of the pons, and forms the *basilar trunk*.

The branches given off by the vertebral arteries before their junction to form the basilar artery, are the following:

Lateral Spinal.
Muscular.
Anastomotic.
Posterior Meningeal.
Anterior Spinal.
Posterior Spinal.
Inferior Cerebellar.

The *Lateral Spinal arteries* are given off from the artery as it is passing through the foramina in the transverse processes; they pass in along the spinal nerves to the interior of the spinal canal, and are distributed to these nerves, to the medulla spinalis and its membranes, and to the back part of the bodies of the cervical vertebræ: they anastomose with the other spinal arteries in the interior of the canal.

The *Muscular arteries* are given off from the vertebral in its second and third stages: these supply the deep muscles of the neck and anastomose with the cervicalis superficialis and ascendens colli arteries.

The *Anastomotic branches* are comparatively large: they come off from the vertebral in its third stage, pass backwards and outwards and anastomose with branches from the occipital in its second stage.

The *Posterior meningeal artery*, described by Haller and Sœmmering, arises from the vertebral artery, generally speaking, in the third stage, passes through the occipital foramen, and is distributed to the dura mater lining the inferior occipital fossæ, and to the falx cerebelli: there may be two of these arteries present. The branch described by Sœmmering enters the cranium along with the sub-occipital nerve.

The *Anterior spinal artery* arises from the vertebral near its termination; sometimes from the inferior artery of the cerebellum, or even from the basilar trunk. It descends in a tortuous manner, and unites with its fellow from the opposite side at the anterior margin of the foramen magnum, at the lower extremity of the medulla oblongata, so as to form a single trunk larger than either of the posterior spinal arteries: this common trunk descends tortuously in front of the spinal marrow, below which it is prolonged, without subdividing, through the centre of the cauda equina, till it reaches the sacro-coccygeal articulation, and here it terminates in anastomosing with the sacral arteries. In this course it gives off branches which anastomose with the lateral spinal branches of the vertebral, ascendens colli, and cervicalis profunda arteries which pass through the spinal foramina; and with minute branches given off from the artery of the opposite side: this artery sends many branches to the pia mater, and some very delicate branches to the spinal marrow. It may be observed that as the vertebral arteries converge superiorly to form the basilar trunk, and the anterior spinal arteries converge inferiorly to form a common trunk, the four arteries necessarily include a lozenge-shaped space in front of the medulla oblongata.

The *Posterior spinal artery* inclines downwards and inwards to get behind the spinal marrow, and descends parallel to its fellow of the opposite side, as far as the second lumbar vertebra. In this course it gives off branches analogous to those of the anterior spinal, anastomoses with the lateral spinal branches of the vertebral and ascendens colli, which pass through the spinal foramina, and with the minute branches given off from the artery of the opposite side: this artery sends many branches to the pia mater, and some delicate capillary branches to the spinal marrow: it is sometimes a branch of the inferior artery of the cerebellum.

The *Inferior artery of the cerebellum* generally comes, on one side from the vertebral artery, and on the other from the basilar trunk: both, however, though rarely, may come from the vertebral, or, still more rarely, both may arise from the basilar. This artery after its origin takes a direction outwards, crossing in front of the pyramidal body when it arises from the vertebral, or either above or below the sixth nerve, when it arises from the basilar: it then passes backwards between the pneumogastric and spinal accessory nerves, and arrives at the inferior surface of the cerebellum. Its first branches, which are very small, are distributed to the superior extremity of the spinal marrow, the origins of the eighth and ninth nerves, the fourth ventricle, and to the inferior surface of the cerebellum; the terminating branches, which are more considerable, creep along the inferior surface of each hemisphere to its circumference, where they communicate with the superior artery of the cerebellum.

THE BASILAR ARTERY, formed by the union of the two vertebral arteries, proceeds from behind forwards on the middle line, between the nerves of the sixth pair, one of which lies on each side, having the cuneiform process of the occipital bone beneath it, and the pons Varolii or great commissure of the cerebellum above it. In this course it gives off the following branches:—

Transverse.
Anterior Cerebellar.
Superior Cerebellar.
Posterior Cerebral.

The *Transverse branches* are few in number and small: they are distributed to the pons, and to the auditory nerve.

The *Anterior cerebellar* branch is small: it runs across the under surface of the anterior lobes of the cerebellum, and across the crus cerebelli, and is distributed chiefly to these parts.

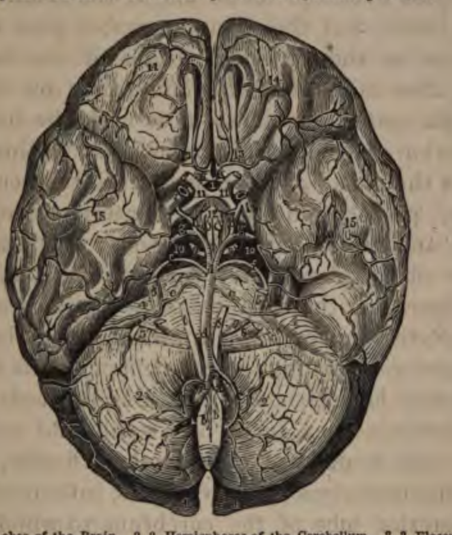
At the anterior margin of the pons the basilar appears to terminate by dividing into four branches, two for each side, viz., the superior artery of the cerebellum and the posterior artery of the cerebrum.

The *Superior artery of the cerebellum* arises at the anterior margin of the pons, winds round the crus cerebri, accompanying the posterior artery of the cerebrum, from which it is separated, first by the third nerve, next by the fourth; and lastly, by the tentorium. Having reached the superior surface of the cerebellum, it divides into a great number of branches, some of which pass over the tentorium to the inferior surface of the brain; but the greater number pass under the tentorium to the superior surface of the cerebellum, where, after minutely subdividing, they are distributed to the pia mater, and anastomose with the branches of the inferior artery of the cerebellum. In this course it supplies the pons Varolii, crus cerebri, tubercula quadrigemina, pineal gland, velum interpositum, choroid plexus, and the valve of Vieussens: one branch of it may be observed to enter the internal auditory foramen, separating the facial from the auditory nerve.

The *Posterior artery of the cerebrum* is much larger than the superior artery of the cerebellum: at its origin the third nerve hooks round it. It first proceeds forwards and outwards, then turns backwards and upwards, so as to wind round the crus cerebri: finally, it passes above the tentorium to arrive at the inferior surface of the posterior lobe of the cerebrum, to which it sends numerous branches which first ramify in the pia mater and afterwards penetrate the substance of the brain: immediately after its origin it gives off several small twigs, some of which pass through the locus perforatus into the third ventricle, while others are distributed on the crura cerebri, corpora albicantia, and tuber cinereum. Where it begins to curve backwards it receives the posterior communicating branch of the internal carotid; immediately afterwards it gives off *a choroid branch*, which curves round the crus cerebelli, and supplies the choroid plexus, velum interpositum, and tubercula quadrigemina. Lastly, it gives off a small but constant branch that supplies the fascia dentata.

We may now review the arteries which form what is called the *Circle of Willis*:—in front we have the anterior communicating artery; posterior and external to this, the anterior arteries of the cerebrum, then the trunks of the internal carotids; behind these the posterior communicating arteries; next the posterior arteries of the cerebrum; and most posteriorly the anterior termination of the basilar artery itself: it is, in fact, more a

Fig. 21.—Arteries at the base of the Brain, Circle of Willis.



1, 1, Posterior Lobes of the Brain. 2, 2, Hemispheres of the Cerebellum. 3, 3, Flocculi or Pneumogastric Lobes. 4, 4, Lower surface of the Anterior Lobe of the Cerebellum. 5, 5, Trifacial or fifth pair of Nerves. 6, 6, Sixth pair of Nerves. 7, Portio Dura of the seventh pair. 8, Auditory Nerve or Portio Mollis of the seventh pair. 9, 9, Third pair of nerves. 10, 10, Crura Cerebri. 11, 11, Optic Nerves and Commissure. 12, Tuber Cinereum, Infundibulum, and Corpora Mammillaria. 13, 13, The Olfactory Lobes. 14, 14, Anterior Cerebral Lobes. 15, 15, The Middle Lobes of the Brain. a, a, Vertebral Arteries. b, b, Anterior Spinal Arteries before their union. c, c, Inferior Arteries of the Cerebellum, at one side arising from the Basilar trunk, at the opposite side from the Vertebral. d, d, Basilar Artery. e, e, Anterior Arteries of the Cerebellum. f, f, Superior Arteries of the Cerebellum. g, g, Posterior Arteries of the Cerebrum. h, h, Posterior Communicating Arteries from the Internal Carotid. i, i, Internal Carotid Arteries. k, k, Anterior Cerebral Arteries connected by the Anterior communicating branch, on which is situated the Ganglion of Ribes. l, Anterior communicating Artery.

heptagon than a circle. Within the circle of Willis the following parts are embraced, viz., anteriorly the commissure of the optic nerves, and lamina cinerea; behind this the tuber cinereum and base of the infundibulum, then the corpora mammillaria, middle locus perforatus, and generally, though situated above the area of the circle, some of the filaments of the origin of the third pair of nerves.

It may be remarked that where the *vertebral artery* ascends through vertebræ which have but little motion between each other, it is not tortuous; but in the superior part of the neck it makes a double curve,—first between the axis and atlas, and then between the atlas and occipital bone, in order as it were to escape injury; for in this manner, in passing from one of these bones to the other, it traverses twice the length of their vertical distance from each other; so that, as Mr. Mayo observes, the artery is only unbent, not stretched, in the more extensive motions of these bones. The vertebral artery has been known to be torn in fractures through the base of the skull.

The next branches of the subclavian artery are the internal mammary and thyroid axis, both of which arise opposite the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, the former from the lower, and the latter from the upper and anterior surface of the artery.

The Internal Mammary Artery.—In order to expose the trunk of this artery, it is only necessary to cut through and remove the costal cartilages and intercostal muscles which cover it, and to saw through the clavicle or disarticulate it from the sternum: it is then easy to follow its external and terminating branches, and the internal may be examined after opening the thorax.

This vessel arises from the subclavian opposite to the origin of the thyroid axis, and therefore close to the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle. It descends obliquely forwards and inwards, lying near the inner margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, covered by the vena innominata and sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, and nearly parallel to the phrenic nerve which, in the first instance, lies close to its outer side. It then descends into the thorax between the pleura and costal cartilages, being separated from the latter by the phrenic nerve crossing in front of it from without inwards. Lower down the internal mammary artery descends between the triangularis sterni muscle, which separates it from the pleura, and the costal cartilages and internal intercostal muscles, which lie in front of it. Having arrived at the cartilage of the seventh rib, it terminates by dividing into an internal and external branch. In this course it is about a finger's breadth distant from the sternum. From its origin to the cartilage of the third rib it is inclined inwards, but in the rest of its course its direction is outwards. Its branches are classed into the following:—

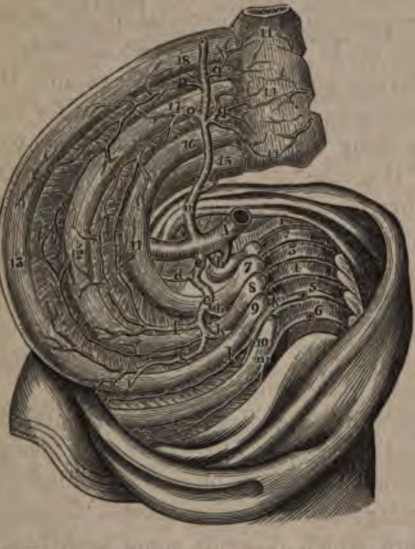
Internal.	*External.*
Thymic.	Anterior Intercostal.
Glandular.	
Muscular.	*Terminating.*
Mediastinal.	Musculo-phrenic.
Comes Nervi Phrenici.	Abdominal.

The *Internal branches* are distributed, as their names imply, to the thymus gland, to the adjacent lymphatic glands, to the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyroid muscles, and to the areolar tissue of the anterior mediastinum and pericardium. The *anterior mediastinal artery* is occasionally a direct branch from the arch of the aorta. A remarkable and constant internal branch, termed the *comes nervi phrenici,* accompanies the phrenic nerve in a tortuous manner, giving branches as it descends to the thymus gland and mediastinum, to the pericardium, pulmonary veins, and internal surface of the lung; after which its terminating branches are lost in supplying the diaphragm and in anastomosing with the subphrenic branches of the abdominal aorta.

The *External branches,* called also the *anterior intercostal,* correspond to the intercostal spaces, each of which receives one, or, in some cases, two arteries: they will be found larger and longer as we examine them from above downwards. When there is one for each space, it proceeds along the inferior margin of the corresponding rib: if there be two, one passes through the upper and the other through the lower part of the intercostal space. In all cases they supply the intercostal muscles, and communicate with the terminating branches of the superior intercostal artery and with the proper intercostal arteries from the thoracic aorta: some of them pierce these muscles, and supply the pectoral muscles, the mammary gland, and the integuments.

The *Terminating branches* are two in number; viz., an external and internal. The *external* or *musculo-phrenic* branch descends obliquely outwards, behind the inferior costal cartilages, and, having passed through the diaphragm, into which it sends some branches, it terminates in supplying the transverse and oblique muscles of the abdomen, and in communicating with the circumflexæ ilii, lumbar, and inferior intercostal arteries. The *internal* terminating branch, called also the *abdominal* branch, communicates with that of the opposite side at the ensiform cartilage of the sternum, and then descends between the posterior surface of the rectus muscle and its sheath. After sending some branches to this muscle, and others that pierce its sheath to arrive at the broad muscles of the abdomen, it divides near the umbilicus into several branches which anastomose with the epigastric artery. This anastomosis was at one time supposed to be the cause of the sympathy between the mammary gland and the uterus.

Fig. 22.—Part of the course of the Internal Mammary and the Superior Intercostal Arteries.



1, Seventh Cervical Vertebra. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, The Upper Dorsal Vertebræ. 7, First Rib. 8, Second Rib. 9, Third Rib. 10, Fourth Rib. 11, Twig from Superior Branch of Intercostal Artery. 12, Anastomoses between the Anterior Intercostal from the Internal Mammary and the Superior Intercostal Artery: Internal Intercostal Muscles removed. 13, Third Rib. 14, 14, 14, Sternum, with the Anastomoses between the Mediastinal Branches of the Internal Mammary Artery. 15, Clavicle. 16, 17, 18, Costal Cartilages. A, Subclavian Artery. K, First Inferior or Aortic Intercostal Artery. P, Second Anterior Intercostal Artery from Internal Mammary. b, Vertebral Artery. c, A common trunk which in this case gave origin to the Cervicalis Profunda and Superior Intercostal Arteries. d, Cervicalis Profunda Artery. e, Superior Intercostal Artery. f, g, Intercostal Arteries from the Superior Intercostal. h, h, Dorsal Branches of Superior Intercostal Artery. i, Anastomosis between first Aortic Intercostal and second Intercostal Branch of Superior Intercostal. l, Superior Branch of Aortic Intercostal. m, Second Aortic Intercostal Artery. n, Internal Mammary Artery. o, First Intercostal Branch of Internal Mammary Artery. q, q, Internal Branches of Internal Mammary Artery.

The Thyroid Axis.—This short trunk arises from the subclavian artery, close to the internal margin of the scalenus anticus muscle, and opposite to the origin of the internal mammary artery. Immediately after its origin it divides into the following branches:—

Inferior Thyroid.	Posterior Scapular, or Transversalis Colli.
Supra-Scapular, or Transversalis Humeri.	

The *Inferior thyroid artery* first ascends a little, and then turns inwards behind the internal jugular vein, pneumogastric nerve, and carotid artery; towards all of which parts it presents a slight concavity; its convexity being turned backwards towards the vertebral artery, which it consequently separates from the carotid. The trunk of the sympathetic nerve usually descends on the front of this vessel, forming on the right side a small ganglion, *the middle cervical*, which lies on the anterior surface of the artery: in other, but rare cases, the sympathetic nerve descends behind it. As the inferior thyroid artery approaches the thyroid gland, it forms another slight curve, the concavity of which looks backwards and corresponds to the recurrent nerve, which a little farther on passes between its terminating branches, particularly on the right side: on the left side we find that, in addition to the preceding relations, the inferior thyroid artery lies on the œsophagus, and is intimately connected with the thoracic duct, which usually lies behind it in the first instance, and then makes an arch to terminate in the left subclavian vein in front of the artery. The branches of the inferior thyroid artery are classed into the inferior, superior, and terminating. The *Inferior branches* are variable in number; they descend into the chest, supply the œsophagus, longus colli muscle, bronchial tubes and glands, and anastomose with the superior intercostal and bronchial arteries. The *Superior branches* are distributed to the longus colli and anterior scalenus muscles: one of these is constant, and, though usually small, is sometimes of considerable size; it is termed the *ascendens colli;* it ascends on the front of the scalenus anticus muscle, parallel and internal to the phrenic nerve. Its branches are distributed to the muscles on the front of the vertebral column; some of them inosculate with descending branches of the occipital artery, and others penetrate the lateral foramina of the spine to communicate with branches of the vertebral. The ascendens colli often comes off directly from the thyroid axis, and is frequently so described. The *Terminating branches* of the inferior thyroid artery enter into the inferior and posterior portion of the thyroid gland, anastomose with the terminating branches of the superior thyroid, and are lost in the substance of the gland.

The operation of tying one or more of the thyroid arteries has been performed with a view to diminish the size of a bronchocele, or previously to extirpation of the thyroid gland. The inferior thyroid artery may be exposed by laying bare the sheath of the carotid artery in the manner already recommended, and drawing it to the external side: when this has been done, the inferior thyroid artery may be discovered crossing inwards, opposite, in most cases, to the fifth cervical vertebra; and care will be necessary to avoid the recurrent and sympathetic nerves on both sides, and the thoracic duct on the left side.

The inferior thyroid artery of the left side is particularly engaged in performing the operation of œsophagotomy.

The *Supra-scapular*, or *transversalis humeri artery*, runs horizontally outwards, in front of the anterior scalenus muscle, the phrenic nerve, the brachial plexus, and the posterior scalenus muscle, being covered anteriorly by the clavicle and the sterno-mastoid and trapezius muscles. In this course it gives off a *thoracic* and *acromial branch;* and then passes over the ligament of the notch in the superior margin of the scapula, placed between the origin of the omo-hyoid muscle and the apex of the conoid ligament: from this it dips into the supra-spinata fossa, where it terminates by dividing into the supra-spinata and infra-spinata arteries. The nerve corresponding to the supra-scapular artery usually passes under the ligament of the notch. Sometimes, however, though rarely, we find their position reversed, the artery passing beneath and the nerve above the ligament, or both may go together beneath it. The *thoracic branch* is small; it descends through the substance of the subclavian muscle, to communicate with the thoracic branches of the axillary artery. The *acromial branch* is considerable; it usually arises from the supra-scapular, as it is passing into the supra-spinata fossa, but may arise from it in any part of its course; it supplies the trapezius and supra-spinatus muscles, and the periosteum and integuments covering the acromion process. The *supra-spinata artery* is entirely lost in the muscle of the same name. The *infra-spinata artery* descends in front of the spine of the scapula and beneath the spino-glenoid ligament of Sir A. Cooper: having arrived in the infra-spinata fossa, it gives off several branches to the muscles of this region, and then forms a curve to anastomose with the posterior branch of the sub-scapular artery: it also sends a delicate branch along the axillary margin of the scapula, towards its inferior angle, where it anastomoses with the posterior scapular artery.

The *Posterior scapular*, or *transversalis colli artery*, larger than the supra-scapular, passes horizontally outwards in front of the anterior scalenus muscle and phrenic nerve; afterwards, in front of the upper part of the brachial plexus and posterior scalenus muscle, in order to arrive at the superior angle of the scapula. In this course it is covered by the sterno-mastoid and trapezius muscles: under cover of this last muscle it gives off the *cervicalis superficialis*, which ascends on the side and back of the neck, supplies the splenius and trapezius muscles, the integuments and lymphatic glands, and anastomoses with the descending cervical branches of the occipital artery. Having arrived at the superior angle of the scapula, the posterior sçapular artery gets under cover of the levator anguli scapulæ muscle, to which it sends a few small vessels, and divides into two branches of nearly equal size; *one* of which, the *posterior scapular branch*, properly so called, descends along the vertebral margin of the scapula, covered by the rhomboid muscles and levator anguli scapulæ, to each of which, and to the serrati and latissimus dorsi, it sends a supply of blood. The *other branch* descends more internally, being covered by the scapula, and supplies the sub-scapular and serratus major anticus muscles. We will occasionally find the posterior scapular branch of this artery arising from the subclavian artery at the commencement of its third stage, passing through the brachial plexus of nerves, and thus arriving at its destination: in this case the cervicalis superficialis will form a distinct branch of the thyroid axis.

In the second part of its course, while under cover of the scalenus anticus muscle, the subclavian artery gives off the cervicalis profunda and superior intercostal arteries, which frequently arise from it by a common trunk.

The CERVICALIS PROFUNDA ARTERY is a small but constant branch which passes backwards through the brachial plexus, and between the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra and the first rib:* it is situated underneath the last cervical nerve, and separates this nerve from the neck of the first rib. It then ascends on the back of the neck, in the groove between the spinous and transverse process of the cervical vertebræ, lying on the spino-transverse muscle and covered by the great complexus. It supplies the deep-seated muscles on the back of the neck, and anastomoses with the vertebral and descending cervical of the occipital arteries.

---

* When there is a cervical rib, it passes between this rib and the first dorsal.

The SUPERIOR INTERCOSTAL ARTERY inclines a little backwards, arches over the top of the lung and pleura, and descends into the thorax, having behind it the neck of the first rib, and the first dorsal nerve, as the latter ascends from the thorax. In front it is covered by the pleura, and on the inside it is separated from the margin of the longus colli muscle by the first thoracic ganglion of the sympathetic nerve. These parts will therefore lie in the following order, commencing at the bodies of the vertebræ and passing outwards:—first, the longus colli muscle; secondly, the first thoracic ganglion of the sympathetic; thirdly, the superior intercostal artery; and fourthly, the first dorsal nerve as it passes obliquely across the neck of the first rib to unite with the last cervical. The artery then, in many, if not in most cases, goes out of the thorax, passing between the first and second ribs, and re-enters between the second and third. This artery gives off the intercostals of the first and second, and sometimes of the third, or more intercostal spaces; these anastomose with branches of the anterior intercostals from the internal mammary artery; a small descending branch communicates with the first aortic intercostal.

The superior intercostal artery is always small, and sometimes deficient.

AXILLA.

This region has the form of a three-sided pyramid. The *apex* is truncated and directed upwards and inwards, and is bounded posteriorly by the superior margin of the scapula, anteriorly by the clavicle, and internally by the first rib: through this truncated apex the region of the axilla communicates freely with the supra-clavicular region of the neck. The *base*, directed downwards and outwards, presents the excavation termed the arm-pit; by abducting the arm, the concavity of the surface may be diminished, but certainly cannot be rendered convex, as some writers represent. The *anterior wall* is formed by the greater and lesser pectoral muscles; the *postero-external wall* by the sub-scapular, the teres major, and latissimus dorsi muscles; and the *internal wall*, which is convex externally, is formed by the ribs, intercostal muscles, and serratus major anticus. The anterior and posterior walls are united by a strong fascia, which contributes to form the base of this cavity, and may be exposed by raising the integuments: externally, this fascia is continuous with the aponeurosis covering the inside of the arm; and internally, it is lost on the muscles of the thorax. We usually find the fascia at the base of this region strengthened by firm narrow tendinous bands passing from the anterior to the posterior fold of the axilla; and occasionally there may be observed muscular bands taking the same direction; several authors have described them, particularly Mr. Lucas, in his paper on the "Anomalies of the muscular system."* The student may now abduct the arm, and remove these structures, in order to examine the contents of the axilla. The muscles and the great axillary vessels and nerves descend externally along the humerus, the vein being most superficial: a large artery, the *thoracica longa*, may be felt descending behind the lower margin of the pectoralis major; and another, the *inferior* or *sub-scapular*, along the lower margin of the sub-scapularis muscle. When the arm is very much abducted, this last-mentioned artery has its direction altered so as to make it nearly parallel with the axillary artery, for which it may possibly be mistaken. From this account it is evident that, if we proceed to extirpate diseased glands from the axilla, we should cut towards the thorax; as in every other direction we encounter important vessels.

---

* Lancet, September 22, 1838.

The *Lymphatic glands* found in the axilla are classed into two sets; a *superficial* set, which are found along the inferior margins of the axillary folds; and a *deeper* set, which accompany the great vessels. In the advanced stages of cancer, we find these glands enlarged and hardened, as also those along the outer edge of the sternum, and above the clavicle.

After having raised the integuments from off the anterior wall of this region, we will observe some scattered fibres of the origin of the platysma myoides together with the supra-clavicular branches of the cervical plexus of nerves situated underneath. Having cleanly removed these parts, the great pectoral muscle becomes exposed: it has three sets of origins,—one from the clavicle, the second from the sternum, and the third from the ribs; these are separated by areolar intervals. It is into that interval which separates the clavicular from the sternal origin that some of the continental surgeons propose to make their incision, in order to come down on the axillary artery in its first stage. The outer edge of this muscle is separated from the deltoid by another areolar interval, triangular in form, called the *deltoidal groove*, the base of which is situated superiorly at the clavicle, the apex inferiorly at the insertion of the pectoralis major and deltoid muscles: this space contains the cephalic vein and the thoracico-humeraria artery. More externally, but not forming a part of the anterior wall of the axilla, we observe a rounded prominence corresponding to the head of the humerus, and covered by the anterior or clavicular division of the deltoid muscle. A little internal to this, and also covered by the deltoid muscle, may be felt the coracoid process, between which and the head of the humerus, Lisfranc proposed to sink the knife, for the purpose of amputating at the shoulder-joint.

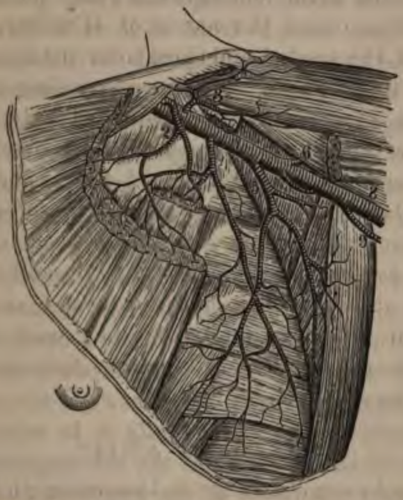
On raising the pectoralis major, we bring into view the *anterior thoracic nerve,* and the thoracica longa artery which was concealed by the lower border of the muscle; also the pectoralis minor, which becomes narrow as it passes upwards and outwards, to be inserted under cover of the deltoid muscle into the coracoid process of the scapula. We may observe that the cephalic vein ascends in front of this muscle, and the axillary vein behind it, and that the former empties itself into the latter opposite to its superior margin. Corresponding to the upper edge of this muscle we also find the acromial axis or artery, which separates it from the subclavian muscle and *costo-coracoid ligament* or *ligamentum bicorne.* This ligament arises by rather a narrow origin or *cornu* from the cartilage of the first rib, and passing outwards becomes attached by a second *cornu* to the coracoid process: its upper margin is attached to the clavicle, and the inferior, which is lunated, looks downwards and inwards: in front it is covered by the great pectoral muscle, and posteriorly it lies on the subclavius muscle, behind which it sends a delicate production: from its inferior or concave margin an expansion more or less strong descends over the vessels, and covers the anterior surface of the pectoralis minor muscle. We may now detach the origin of this latter muscle from the thorax, and we will observe, on reflecting it outwards, a small slender nerve, the *middle thoracic*, entering its posterior surface. The contents of the axilla are now brought fully into view. Externally we observe descending along the humerus, the biceps and coraco-brachialis muscles; more internally the axillary artery, with its accompanying vein and the brachial plexus of nerves. Two nerves cross the axilla, from within outwards, to reach the arm; these are sometimes called the *nerves of Wrisberg;* they are branches of the second and third intercostal nerves, and pass from them through the corresponding intercostal spaces: the superior is the larger. Lastly, far back, and on the inner wall of the axilla, we observe a long thoracic nerve, descending behind the axillary vessels, on the axillary or external surface of the serratus major anticus muscle: this is the *posterior thoracic* or *external respiratory nerve* of Bell. These parts, in addition to the lymphatic glands already noticed, and a considerable quantity of areolar tissue, together with numerous branches of arteries, veins, and nerves, form the contents of the axilla.

THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

This vessel commences at the lower margin of the first rib, and proceeds obliquely, downwards, backwards, and outwards, to terminate opposite the lower margin of the tendons of the teres major and latissimus dorsi muscles. In this course it is situated deeper above than below, and forms, when the elbow is brought to the side, a slight curvature, the convexity of which is turned outwards. It is usually described as having three stages: in the first, it is above the pectoralis minor; in the second, behind it; and in the third, below it.

First stage of the Axillary artery.—Anteriorly, it is covered by the integuments, the platysma, supra-clavicular branches of the cervical plexus, the upper portion of the pectoralis major, and immediately under cover of this muscle, by some areolar tissue, together with the expansion of fascia given off from the ligamentum bicorne; and close to the clavicle by the ligament itself, and a small portion of the inferior margin of the subclavius muscle: we find also anterior to the artery and vein the anterior thoracic nerve, small branches of which curve underneath the vessel and unite with the middle thoracic nerve which descends behind it, thus forming a nervous loop around the artery. *Posteriorly*, it rests against the external layer of the first intercostal muscles, and corresponds, with the interposition of some areolar tissue,

Fig. 23.—View of the Axillary Artery, portions of the Pectoral and Deltoid Muscles removed.



1, Axillary Artery. 2, Superior Thoracic. 3, Acromial Thoracic. 4, Long Thoracic. 5, Subscapular. 6, Anterior Circumflex. 7, Posterior Circumflex. 8, Brachial Artery. 9, Superior Profound Artery.

to the origin which the serratus magnus takes from the second rib. *Externally*, it is related to the brachial plexus of nerves; these nerves lie also upon a plane somewhat above the level of the artery; the trunk formed by the union of the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves lies nearer to the artery, and upon a plane superior, external, and posterior to this vessel. *Internally*, it is in close relation to the axillary vein, which, when distended with blood, overlaps the inner portion of the artery, and gets more in front of it as it descends. In this situation the vein corresponds to the two first ribs and to the upper part of the serratus magnus. Thus in the first stage the artery lies between the brachial plexus on the outside, and the axillary vein upon the inside.

Second stage of the Axillary artery.—Anteriorly, in addition to the integuments and pectoralis major, it is covered more immediately by the pectoralis minor muscle, and about the middle of this stage by a portion of the superior trunks of the brachial plexus of nerves, in which situation the plexus forms a complete sheath around the artery. *Posteriorly* it corresponds to a quantity of areolar tissue lying between the artery and sub-scapularis muscle. *Externally* it is related to the upper part of the insertion of the sub-scapularis tendon into the lesser tuberosity of the humerus, and partly to the brachial plexus. *Internally* we find the axillary vein and some areolar tissue separating it from the serratus magnus.

Third stage of the Axillary artery.—Anteriorly, besides by the integuments and pectoralis major muscle, it is covered by the union of the two roots of the median nerve, and for a very short distance by the nerve itself, which, however, inclines towards the outer side of the artery; at the lower part of this stage the artery is overlapped by the belly of the coraco-brachialis muscle.

Posteriorly, it rests against part of the tendon of the sub-scapularis muscle, and below this on the teres major and latissimus dorsi muscles, where it loses the name of axillary artery. *Externally* it is related to the lower part of the insertion of the sub-scapular tendon, to the external head of the median nerve, and to the external cutaneous nerve. *Internally* it corresponds to the internal head of the median, to the internal cutaneous and ulnar nerves, and to its own vein with the interposition of these nerves.

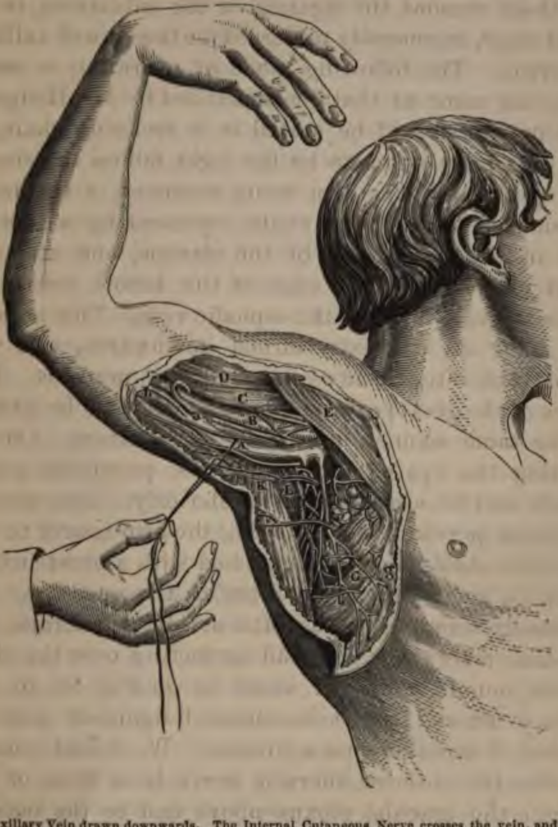
With regard to the relations between the axillary artery in its three stages, and the brachial plexus of nerves, we may repeat that in the first stage the brachial plexus is above and external to the artery; in about the middle of the second stage the termination or apex of the plexus forms a complete sheath around it; and in the third stage it has the branches of the plexus arranged around it in the following order: viz., in front, and crossing slightly to its outside, is the median nerve, and one or two slips uniting its roots; on the outside are the external cutaneous nerve and external head of the median; on the inside, the internal head of the median, and the internal cutaneous nerve lying on the ulnar; and posteriorly, the musculo-spiral and circumflex nerves.

LIGATURE OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

This artery may be tied in its first and third stages; in the second stage, however, the operation must necessarily be attended with considerable difficulty, in consequence of its great depth from the surface and its close relation to the brachial plexus of nerves.

Operation of tying the Axillary artery in its first stage. The operation is extremely difficult, from the depth of the artery, and the difficulty of distinguishing it from the adjacent nerves of the brachial plexus, and on account of the situation of the axillary vein and the probable occurrence of troublesome venous hemorrhage; for these reasons the ligature of the subclavian, in its third stage, is generally preferred for the cure of axillary aneurism. The following mode of operating is essentially the same as that recommended by Mr. Hodgson. The patient should be seated in a reclining chair, or laid on a table, so as to let the light fall on the site of the operation. The arm being abducted, a semilunar incision should be next made, commencing within an inch of the sternal end of the clavicle, and stopping short externally at the edge of the deltoid muscle, in order to avoid injuring the cephalic vein. This incision will have its convexity turned downwards, and will divide the integuments and platysma myoides. The fibres of the great pectoral muscle should then be divided in the same manner, and to the same extent. On retracting the lips of the wound, the pectoralis minor muscle will be seen crossing it inferiorly. This muscle may now be relaxed, by bringing the arm nearer to the side, and should then be depressed with a blunt instrument, so as to give more room to the operator. By cautiously scraping through the areolar membrane, the acromial artery will be found projecting over the edge of the muscle, and will assist in guiding us to the axillary artery: the costo-coracoid ligament may be divided, if necessary, on a director. We should remember that the anterior thoracic nerve is in front of the artery; the brachial plexus above and to the outside of it; and the vein, which often swells suddenly out in front of the artery during expiration, is on a plane anterior and internal to it. Having found the artery, the needle must be passed round it, from within outwards, in order to avoid injuring the vein, which should

Fig. 24.—Surgical Anatomy of the Axillary Artery in part of its course.



A, Axillary Vein drawn downwards. The Internal Cutaneous Nerve crosses the vein, and one of the nerves of Wrisberg is in immediate relation with it internally. B, Axillary Artery crossed by one of the roots of Median Nerve. C, Coraco-brachialis Muscle. D, Biceps Muscle. E, Pectoralis Major Muscle. F, Pectoralis Minor Muscle. G, Serratus Magnus Muscle. H, An Axillary gland crossed by a branch of the External Respiratory Nerve. I, Infra or Subscapular Artery. K, Latissimus Dorsi Muscle. L, Teres Major Muscle. a, Trunk formed by Venæ Comites. b, Basilic Vein assisting in forming the Axillary Vein. g, Fascia.

be drawn inwards with a blunt hook or a curved spatula. Before tightening the ligature, we should ascertain that compression of the included part restrains the pulsation of the aneurismal tumor.

Manec recommends the following method:—"The patient should lie with the shoulder rather elevated, so that the artery may be a little separated from the vein; to attain this end the elbow must be four or five inches apart from the body: the surgeon then makes an incision two or three inches long, its external extremity commencing upon the internal part of the deltoid muscle, and prolonged more or less towards the internal extremity of the clavicle; it should be parallel with the anterior edge of that bone, and about eight lines below it. In giving this direction to the incision, an advantage arises in being able to arrive directly upon the vessels and nerves from before backwards, so that the artery can be more easily insulated; on the contrary, when the incision is parallel with the layer of cellular tissue separating the clavicular from the sternal portion of the great pectoral, it is true its fibres are not divided, *but the wound does not correspond with the direction of the artery.*" The remaining steps of the operation consist in the transverse division of the fibres of the greater pectoral and in the tying of the artery. Manec's method is nearly similar to that recommended by Mr. Hodgson.

To these methods it has been objected, by some of the continental surgeons, that the pectoralis major muscle is divided transversely to a considerable extent, and the shoulder thereby considerably weakened; they, therefore, prefer an incision in the course of its fibres, and separating its clavicular from its sternal portion. The objection to the transverse division of the fibres of the great pectoral is more fanciful than real, whilst there is a decided objection to the plan of coming down upon the artery by cutting between the clavicular and sternal origins of the pectoralis major muscle,—viz. that this incision will conduct us more directly upon the vein than upon the artery.

The operation of tying the Axillary artery in its second stage has been recommended by Delpech: he divides the pectoralis minor muscle and thus secures the artery in this stage. He has in this way twice taken up the artery successfully for hemorrhage after amputation.*

Operation of tying the Axillary artery in its third stage. The artery may be reached either by cutting through the anterior wall of the axilla, or through its base. If we prefer the former plan, we make our incision about three inches long, over the areolar interval between the deltoid and great pectoral muscles, taking care not to injure the cephalic vein. After scraping through some areolar tissue, the pectoralis minor muscle is exposed; and beneath it (*i.e.* nearer to the base of the axilla) we can feel the common cord formed by the vessels and nerves. The distended vein is then drawn inwards, and the artery which lies between the roots of the median nerve must be insulated carefully and tied.

The operation through the base of the axilla may be thus performed:—the patient being placed on a table, and the arm abducted and supinated, an incision about two inches and a half in length should be cautiously made through the integuments and fascia of the axilla, in the direction of the head of the humerus. The coraco-brachialis muscle will then form a good guide to the artery: by carefully scraping through the areolar tissue, the axillary vein will be exposed: the median nerve will also present itself, and may be drawn outwards while the vein is pressed inwards, and the aneurism-needle carried cautiously round the artery from within outwards.

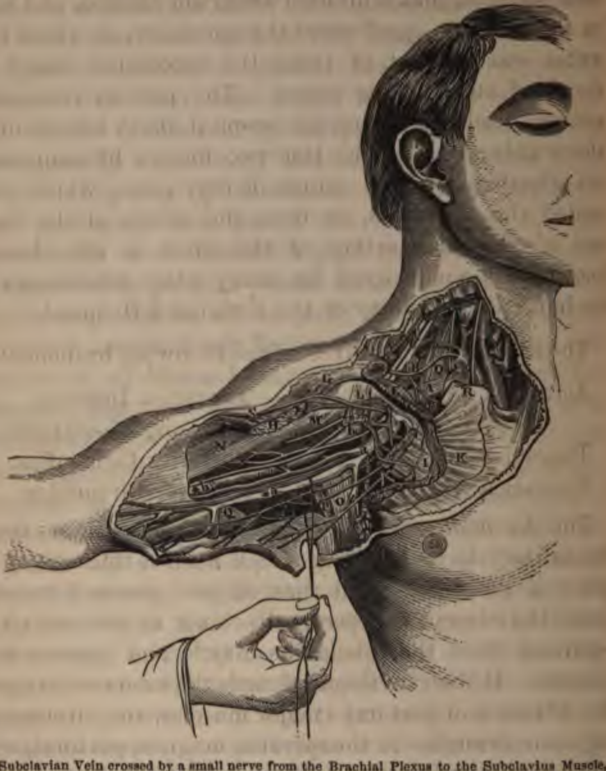
---

* Chirurg. Clinique, vol. i.

The axillary artery has been torn both by the attempts made to reduce a luxation of the humerus, and by the head of the bone itself in the very act of being dislocated into the axilla: these occurrences are exceedingly rare. M. Floubert, of Rouen, relates a case of the former, and the following very interesting example of the latter is related by Mr. Adams, one of the surgeons to the Richmond Hospital, in the 35th number of Todd's Cyclopædia of Anatomy and Physiology. The laceration of the axillary artery was recognized a few minutes after dislocation had occurred, and before any effort whatever had been made to restore the humerus to its place.

Case of Rupture of the axillary artery, caused by luxation of the head of the humerus into the axilla.—John Smith, aged 50, was thrown down by a runaway horse one morning during the summer of 1833; in about ten minutes after this occurred he was brought to Jervis Street Hospital, when the writer, at that time one of the surgeons of the Institution, was prescribing for the extern patients. The man was in a cold perspiration, pallid, and apparently on the verge of syncope. The writer immediately observed that the patient had a dislocation of his left humerus into the axilla, and proceeding to point out, as was his custom, to the clinical class, the diagnostic marks of the luxation, he noticed that the cavity of the axilla was filled up to a remarkable degree. This *sudden* filling up of the axilla he immediately concluded could be attributed to no other source than to the laceration of a large artery. He quickly sought for the pulse in the radial and brachial artery of the dislocated limb, but no pulse could be felt in any artery below the site of the left subclavian, while the pulse, though feeble, could be readily felt at the heart, and in every external artery of the system, except in those of the dislocated arm. The writer then observed to the clinical class, that in this case there were two lesions to be noticed, namely, a dislocation into the axilla, the features of which were very well marked, complicated with *a rupture of the axillary artery;* in a word, besides the dislocation there was a diffused aneurism: the latter was unattended by any pulsation, so that he conjectured the artery was completely torn across. He did not long deliberate as to what course was the best to pursue under existing circumstances, because he felt sure that, so far as the torn artery was concerned, if the head of the humerus was once restored to its place, this vessel would be in at least as favorable a condition as it then was; and secondly, that the state of prostration and debility the patient was in at that moment, offered an opportunity which, if once lost, might not again be afforded, of reducing *easily* the dislocation. Taking the patient, therefore, unawares, the writer placed his knee in the axilla of the dislocated arm, and then, slight extension having been made over this fulcrum, the bone, at the first trial, returned into the glenoid cavity. The patient was placed in bed in the Hospital, under the care of the late Mr. Wallace, whose day it was for admitting accidents. There was much more superficial ecchymosis about the axillary and subclavian regions, and along the inside of the left arm, than is usually observed after a simple dislocation of the head of the humerus. The deep axillary swelling remained stationary for some days, but no pulsation could be discovered either in it or in the arteries of the limb. A feeble and frequent pulse could be felt in the left subclavian, and in all the other arteries, as well as in the heart. After the space of ten days,

Fig 25.—Surgical Anatomy of the Right Subclavian and Axillary Arteries.



A, Subclavian Vein crossed by a small nerve from the Brachial Plexus to the Subclavius Muscle, which nerve gives a branch to the Phrenic. **B**, Subclavian Artery in third stage. **C**, Brachial Plexus of Nerves. **D**, Anterior Scalenus Muscle with the Phrenic Nerve descending upon it, and the Supra and Posterior Scapular Arteries crossing both: the Posterior Scapular in this case came from the Thyroid Axis: this is its usual origin. **E**, Subclavius Muscle. **F**, Insertion of Scalenus Anticus Muscle into eminence on first rib. **G**, Clavicular origin of Deltoid Muscle. **H**, Humeral attachment of Pectoralis Major. **I**, Fascia investing the Pectoralis Minor. **K**, Thoracic portion of Pectoralis Major. **L**, Coracoid attachment of Pectoralis Minor divided and pendulous. **M**, Coraco-brachialis Muscle and Perforans Casserii Nerve. **N**, Biceps. **O**, Latissimus Dorsi crossed by the Nerves of Wrisberg. **P**, Teres Major Muscle. **Q**, Brachial Fascia. **R**, Sternal end of Clavicle. **S** Cephalic Vein passing between the Deltoid and Great Pectoral Muscles, and then in front of the Pectoralis Minor, to enter the Axillary Vein. **a**, Axillary Vein. ***a**, Basilic Vein, with Internal Cutaneous Nerve. **b**, Axillary Artery with the two heads of the Median Nerve. ***b**, Brachial Artery and Venæ Comites.

Mr. Wallace's month of attendance having expired, the case came under the care of Mr. O'Reilly, who, having been satisfied that a diffused aneurism existed, and was on the increase, performed the operation, at which the writer was present, of tying the subclavian artery in the third stage of its course. The patient recovered and was discharged from the hospital about two months afterwards; he lost the last two fingers by gangrene, but whether from an attack of erysipelas, which succeeded the operation, or from the effects of the ligature of the main artery of the limb, is not clearly known. The man lived for many years afterwards in the immediate vicinity of the Richmond Hospital.

The axillary artery gives off the following branches:—

Acromial, or Thoracica Acromialis.
Thoracica Suprema.
Thoracica Alaris.
Thoracica Inferior.
Infra, or Sub-scapular.
Posterior Circumflex.
Anterior Circumflex.

The *Acromial or Thoracica acromialis artery* arises from the axillary in its first stage; it is a short thick axis; it arises a little below the clavicle and passes forwards above the edge of the pectoralis minor muscle, which it separates from the subclavius muscle and ligamentum bicorne. It then advances towards the interval between the deltoid and pectoralis major muscles, and after sending some branches to the serratus magnus, pectoral, and subclavius muscles, it terminates by dividing into a superior and inferior branch. The *superior branch* passes horizontally outwards beneath the deltoid muscle, and is lost in supplying the latter and the supra-spinatus muscle, and the scapulo-humeral and acromio-clavicular articulations. The *inferior branch*, or *thoracica-humeraria*, turns spirally round the cephalic vein, and descends with it in the areolar interval between the deltoid and great pectoral muscles, and is distributed to these muscles and to the integuments. The acromial artery anastomoses with the supra-scapular and posterior circumflex.

The *Thoracica Suprema artery* arises from the first stage of the axillary; sometimes it arises separately a little beneath the preceding, but more frequently it is a branch of the acromial. It generally runs for some distance along the upper margin of the pectoralis minor, and then descends obliquely inwards between it and the pectoralis major, to both of which muscles it sends several branches: it also supplies the mammary gland and integuments, and anastomoses with the intercostal and internal mammary arteries.

The *Thoracica Alaris artery* is seldom found as a single trunk, its place being usually supplied by several smaller vessels: its origin is from the second stage of the axillary. It divides into many branches which supply the areolar tissue and glands of the axilla.

In removing diseased glands from this cavity, the incautious division of the branches of this artery may be followed by smart hemorrhage, which will be difficult to control on account of the divided vessels retracting into the areolar tissue: to provide against this occurrence, Professor Colles advised a ligature to be passed round the vessel supplying the gland before it is divided.

The *Thoracica Inferior*, called also the *thoracica longa* or *external mammary artery*, arises opposite the lower margin of the pectoralis minor, or frequently whilst the artery is under cover of that muscle in its second stage; it then descends obliquely inwards, concealed by the lower edge of the pectoralis major: it supplies these muscles, and likewise the serratus anticus, intercostals, mammary gland and integuments, and anastomoses with the other thoracic arteries, the internal mammary, and the intercostal arteries.

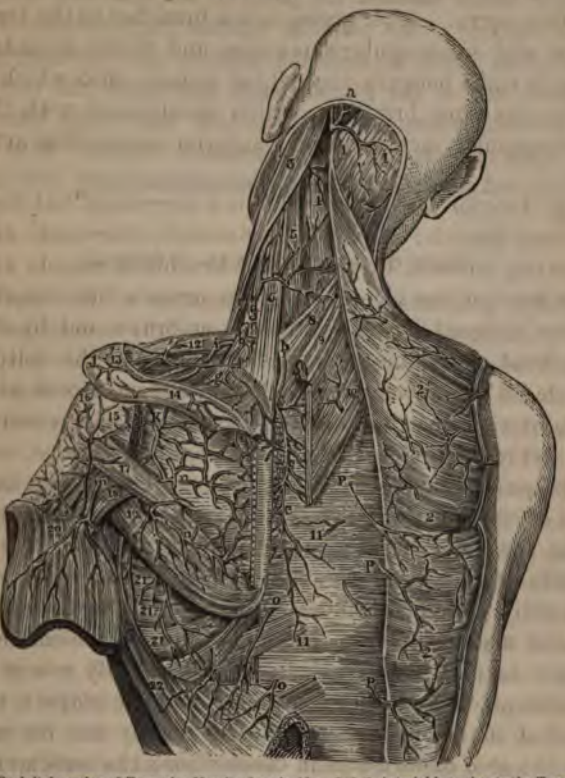
The *Infra* or *Sub-scapular artery* is of considerable size: it arises from the third stage of the axillary, opposite the inferior margin of the sub-scapular muscle, to which it sends one or two branches, and then descends along the inferior margin till it reaches the internal edge of the long head of the triceps. Here it divides into an inferior and posterior branch: the *inferior branch* continues in the direction of the trunk, and descends between the serratus magnus and latissimus dorsi muscles, to both of which, and to the teres major, its branches are distributed: at the inferior angle of the scapula it anastomoses with the posterior scapular artery. The *posterior branch*, larger than the inferior, sinks into a triangular space bounded above by the teres minor and sub-scapular muscles, below by the teres major and latissimus dorsi, and externally by the long head of the triceps, which, in this situation, separates it from the posterior circumflex artery: this branch supplies freely the muscles bounding this triangular space, and then curves round the axillary margin of the scapula to arrive in the fossa infra-spinata, being in this part of its course covered by the teres minor and by the infra-spinatus muscle. Here, lying close to bone, it divides into many branches, which supply the infra-spinatus muscle and shoulder-joint and anastomose with the posterior and superior scapular arteries. The infra or sub-scapular artery sometimes arises in common with the posterior circumflex.

The *Posterior Circumflex artery* is a little smaller than the preceding vessel, and arises close to it from the posterior part of the axillary artery in its third stage: immediately after its origin it sinks into a quadrangular space, bounded above by the sub-scapular and teres minor muscles, inferiorly by the tendons of the teres major and latissimus dorsi, anteriorly by the humerus, and posteriorly by the long head of the triceps: in passing through this space it winds round the surgical neck of the humerus, accompanied by the posterior circumflex nerve. After giving a few branches to the teres minor and sub-scapularis muscles, and to the shoulder-joint, it sinks beneath the deltoid muscle, into which it sends numerous branches, which anastomose with the supra-scapular, acromial, and anterior circumflex arteries.

The *Anterior Circumflex artery* is a very small but very constant branch: it passes horizontally forwards and outwards, covered by the coraco-brachialis muscle and short head of the biceps. It then crosses the bicipital groove, covered by its synovial membrane and by the long head of the biceps, and sinks beneath the deltoid muscle, in the substance of which it anastomoses with the posterior circumflex artery. The anterior circumflex artery supplies the coraco-brachialis, biceps, and sub-scapularis muscles. While crossing behind the long head of the biceps, it sends a delicate branch upwards along the bicipital groove, to supply the head of the humerus and capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint.

It will be useful in the present stage of the dissection to take a glance at the principal arteries which form what is termed the *scapular anastomosis*. By means of this free arterial communication around the scapula, the blood of the subclavian artery will readily find its way into the arm or fore-arm in cases where the subclavian has been tied in its second or third stages, or where the axillary artery has been tied in its first or second stages. Along the axillary margin of the scapula we observe the continued branch of the sub-scapular artery passing towards the inferior angle of that bone: along the posterior or vertebral margin we see the posterior scapular passing towards the same point; and in relation with

Fig. 26.—Represents the Arteries of the Posterior part of the Neck and Shoulder.— The Scapular Anastomosis.



1, 1, Occipital portion of Trapezius Muscle of each side. 2, 2, 2, Arterial branches to the Trapezius and Latissimus Dorsi Muscles. 3, Sterno-cleido-mastoid Muscle. 4, Splenius Capitis. 5, Splenius Colli. 6, 6, Levator Anguli Scapulæ. 7, Lower portion of Sterno-mastoid. 8, Serratus Posticus Superior. 9, Rhomboideus Minor. 10, Rhomboideus Major divided. 11, 11, Aponeurosis covering long Muscles of Back. 12, Clavicle with Arterial twig. 13, 14. Spine of Scapula with Arterial Twigs. 15. Insertion of Infra-spinatus Muscle. 16, Capsule of shoulder-joint. 17, Teres Minor. 18, Long Head of Triceps between the two Teres Muscles. 19, Teres Major. 20, Deltoid divided and turned downwards. 21, 21, 21, Serratus Magnus with Arterial Twigs. 22, Latissimus Dorsi divided and turned over. a. Occipital Artery emerging from underneath the Splenius Muscle to get into its third stage. b, b, Posterior Scapular Artery. c, c, c, Terminating branch of the Posterior Scapular Artery. d, e, Cervicalis Superficialis Artery cut. f, Twig to the Clavicle. g Small branch to Supra-spinatus. i. Supra-scapular Artery. k, Infra-Spinata Artery. l, Acromion Process. m. Posterior Circumflex Artery. n, n, Anastomoses between the Infra-spinata, the Posterior branch of Subscapular and Posterior Scapular Arteries. o, o, Branches of the Intercostal Arteries. P, P, P, Dorsal branches of the Intercostal Arteries.

the superior or coracoid margin we find the supra-scapular artery. At the inferior angle of the scapula a free communication exists between the posterior scapular and sub-scapular arteries; at the posterior superior angle a similar communication exists between the posterior and supra-scapular arteries; and at the glenoid angle, underneath the root of the acromial process, a free anastomosis takes place between the supra-scapular and the sub-scapular arteries. Thus the axillary and subclavian arteries communicate freely with each other.

VEINS OF THE ARM AND FORE-ARM.

Before proceeding with the dissection of the brachial artery the student is recommended carefully to examine the superficial veins of the arm and fore-arm; for this purpose he should remove the integuments from off the front of these parts, when the veins and superficial nerves will be exposed lying between the skin and fascia.

Venæsection is usually performed at the bend of the elbow, because there are in this situation a number of superficial veins, easily made prominent and easily compressed. On the outside of the bend of the elbow we observe *the cephalic vein*, ascending, having derived its principal origin from the cephalic vein of the thumb. On the inside we see *the basilic vein*, which seems to be a continuation of the small vein of the little finger, termed *vena salvatella*. On the middle line of the front of the fore-arm we see the *median vein*, which, as it approaches the elbow-joint, divides into an internal and external branch: the *internal* branch is the *median basilic vein;* it crosses in front of the brachial artery at a very acute angle, being separated from it immediately beneath the bend of the elbow, by the semilunar process of the biceps tendon, called also the semilunar fascia of the biceps: some of the branches of the internal cutaneous nerve pass in front of it, and others behind it. The *external* branch, smaller than the internal, is termed the *median-cephalic vein*; it ascends obliquely upwards and outwards, in front of the trunk of the external cutaneous nerve, to join the cephalic vein. The basilic and cephalic veins, being thus reinforced, ascend in the arm, the former along the internal and the latter along the external margin of the biceps muscle. The basilic vein unites with the venæ comites of the brachial artery, and the large vessel formed by their union becomes the axillary vein.

In the middle of the fore-arm, near the bend of the elbow, the median vein, before it gives off its median basilic and median cephalic veins, receives at its posterior surface, from the deep-seated parts of the fore-arm, a vein called the *mediana profunda*.

When the operation of venæsection is determined on, the student will observe that the median basilic is the vein which presents itself most prominently; and, if this be selected for the operation, great caution will be necessary, in order to avoid wounding the brachial artery, which lies beneath it. On this account the student is advised

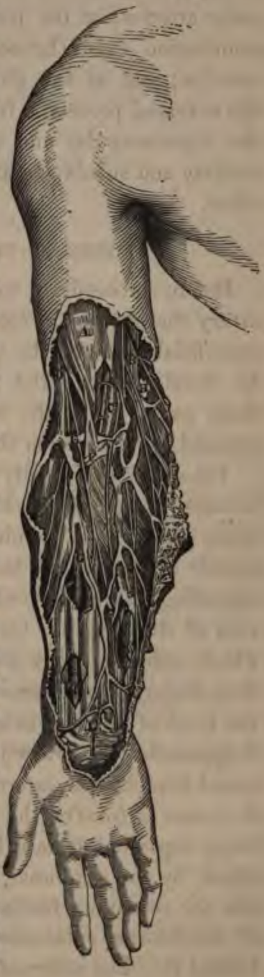


Fig. 27.—Represents portion of the Surgical Anatomy of the Fore-arm.

A. Fascia over the Biceps Muscle. B, Basilic Vein and Internal Cutaneous Nerve. C. Brachial Artery and the Venæ Comites. D, Cephalic Vein and External Cutaneous Nerve coming out from behind it. E, Median Cephalic Vein and a communicating vein to the Venæ Comites. F. Median Basilic Vein. G, Radial Artery. H. Lymphatic Gland. I, Radial Artery seen through an opening made in the fascia. K, Ulnar Artery and Ulnar Nerve. L, Palmaris Brevis Muscle.

to select the median cephalic vein in preference, at all events until he has become somewhat expert in performing the operation. A wound of the artery during venæsection may be denoted by the blood issuing in jerks, and being of a bright arterial color. These appearances may exist, however, without any such wound, and therefore need not always excite alarm: on the contrary, the artery may be punctured without any particular symptom to indicate the accident. When there is reason, *from the great force with which the blood is projected*, to suspect that this accident has occurred, and there is no pain, swelling, nor effusion present, we may apply a graduated compress, keep the limb quiet, and wait the result, which may be various. Sometimes the wounded vessel may heal without any unpleasant consequence: in other cases, the external wound of the vein is healed, but the wound in the posterior wall of the vein may form an adhesion with the wound in the anterior wall of the artery, and thus there remains a direct communication between the artery and vein. When this direct communication exists between the two vessels, the affection is termed *aneurismal varix;* but if the areolar tissue intervening between the two vessels has been distended into the form of a sac, which establishes a medium of communication between the artery and vein, then the disease is termed *varicose aneurism.* The latter is the more serious, as it may terminate in aneurism of the artery; but it is seldom that either of them requires any operation.

The student may now remove the veins and brachial aponeurosis, so as to expose the brachial artery.

THE BRACHIAL ARTERY.

This artery is a continuation of the axillary: it commences opposite the lower margin of the teres major and latissimus dorsi tendons, passes obliquely downwards and outwards, and terminates nearly opposite the coronoid process of the ulna:

on the removal of the integuments, the artery will be found lying under cover of the brachial aponeurosis. After the aponeurosis has been removed, the vessel will be seen overlapped by the fleshy belly of the coraco-brachialis muscle, then by the biceps muscle, and still lower down covered by the semilunar fascia derived from the tendon of the biceps: these are its *anterior* relations: *internally* it is related, in addition to the integuments and fascia, to the basilic vein, to the inferior profunda artery, and to the ulnar and internal cutaneous nerves; *externally* it is related to the coraco-brachialis and biceps muscles, and to an areolar interval placed between the biceps and brachialis anticus: *posteriorly* it corresponds first, to the triceps muscle, from which it is separated by the superior profunda artery and musculo-spiral nerve; next it rests on the insertion of the coraco-brachialis muscle; and, in the remainder of its course, it lies upon the brachialis anticus.

The brachial *nerves* surround the artery, and are related to it in the following order: *behind* it, but accompanying it merely for a short distance, is the musculo-spiral nerve: the external cutaneous nerve at first descends along its *outer* side, separating it from the coraco-brachialis muscle; but lower down, it inclines outwards, perforates the last-named muscle, and loses its relation to the artery. The internal cutaneous nerve lies at first on the *inside* of the artery, being situated on the front of the ulnar nerve, which it consequently separates from the median: lower down, the branches of the internal cutaneous nerve become *superficial*, and one principal filament covers the artery at its termination. The ulnar nerve descends on the *inside* of the vessel, but towards the middle of the humerus separates from it, and inclines still more internally, and accompanies the inferior profunda artery; and lastly, the median nerve lies on the *outside* of the brachial artery above; but lower down, at about the junction of the lower with the two upper thirds of the arm, it *crosses* the artery, usually over its anterior surface, in order to arrive at the *inner* side of the vessel. The *veins* accompanying the artery are two in number, and are termed *venæ comites:* about the middle of the arm they unite with the basilic vein, which usually perforates the brachial aponeurosis in this situation. Such are the relations of the brachial artery in its course down the arm. At its termination it sinks into a triangular space, in front of the elbow-joint, bounded on the outside by the supinator radii longus, and on the inside by the pronator radii teres muscle; the latter muscle overlapping the artery in this situation. In this space it lies on the brachialis anticus muscle, having the tendon of the biceps to its outside, the median nerve to its inside, while in front it is covered by

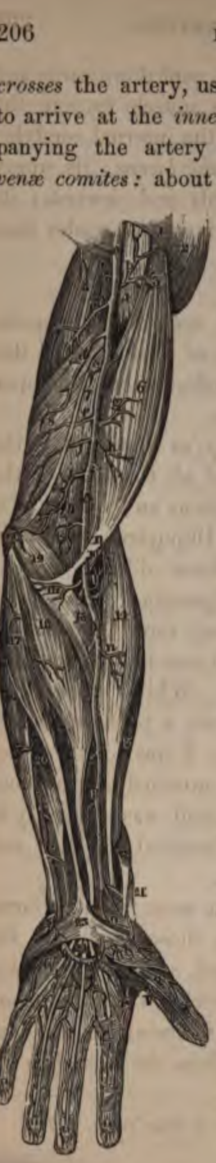


Fig. 28.—Represents the Arteries of the upper extremity, which are seen when the skin and fascia have been removed.

A A, Brachial or Humeral Artery. B B, Radial Artery. C, Ulnar Artery. K, Muscular branch to the Brachialis Anticus. O, Superficialis Volæ Artery. P P, The Superficial Palmar Arterial Arch, formed by the Ulnar and Superficialis Volæ Arteries. Q, Digital Artery of thumb. S, Twig to the Palmaris Brevis Muscle. V, Princeps Pollicis Artery, running along the internal margin of the thumb. a, Twig to the Triceps. b, Small branch to Coraco-brachialis and Biceps. c, Superior Profunda about to enter between the two portions of the Triceps. d, Inferior Profunda, arising opposite the insertion of the Coraco-brachialis Muscle. e, f, Muscular Branches. g, h, Small twigs to the Biceps. i, The Anastomotic Artery. l, Radial Recurrent Artery. m, Twig to the Pronator Teres and Flexor Carpi Radialis Muscles. n, Branch to the Supinator Radii Longus. r, The Radialis Indicis Artery. t, t, t, t, The four Digital Arteries. u, u, u, u, The arches formed by the Digital Arteries. 1, Portion of Pectoralis Major. 2, The Deltoid Muscle. 3, Upper portion of Biceps Muscle. 4, Coraco-brachialis. 5, Triceps. 6, Belly of Biceps. 7, Internal Intermuscular Septum. 8, Short portion of Triceps. 9, Brachialis Anticus. 10, Tendon of Biceps. 11, Semilunar Fascia from Biceps Tendon. 12, Pronator Teres. 13, Internal Condyle. 14, Supinator Radii Longus Muscle. 15, Pronator Teres crossed by Radial Artery. 16, Flexor Carpi Radialis. 17, Palmaris Longus. 18, Flexor Carpi Ulnaris. 19, Extensor Carpi Radialis Longior. 20, Portion of Flexor Digitorum Sublimis, or Perforatus. 21, Extensor Primi Internodii Pollicis. 22, Extensor Ossis Metacarpi Pollicis. 23, Palmar Aponeurosis. 24, Tendons of the Superficial Flexor, crossed by the Superficial Palmar Arch of Arteries.

an aponeurotic slip of a semilunar form, sent downwards and inwards from the tendon of the biceps muscle to join the anti-brachial aponeurosis a little below the internal condyle: this is called the *semilunar fascia of the biceps;* its upper margin is concave and directed upwards and inwards; its insertion into the fascia of the fore-arm is much broader than its origin from the tendon of the biceps.

The *Operation of tying the Brachial artery.* This operation may become necessary for the cure of aneurisms of this vessel, or in consequence of a wound inflicted on it or upon the radial, ulnar, or interosseous arteries.

True Aneurism of the brachial artery, or that form of the disease which consists in a dilatation of all the coats of the vessel, is extremely rare: Pelletan mentions an example of it in his "Clinique Chirurgicale," which Dupuytren stated was the only authentic case of the kind he knew of.*

Aneurism of the Brachial artery depending upon a diseased condition of its coats, is also very rare. Mr. Liston observes, "I have treated but one such case; it occurred in the person of an old ship-carpenter. Whilst at work as usual, he felt something snap in his arm; a pulsating tumor was soon afterwards noticed, and before I was asked to see him by Mr. Cheyne, of Leith, it had attained, during four months, fully the size of a hen's egg, and was evidently in part composed of solid matter. The brachial was tied and every thing went on favorably."†

Diffused False Aneurism. By far the most frequent forms of aneurism of the brachial artery are those which are the result of injuries inflicted upon the vessel, as in the operation of venæsection at the bend of the elbow. When the artery has been unfortunately wounded, the following results may happen: the blood may escape freely from the wound in the artery, and may pass into the areolar tissue of the limb to a greater or less extent: in some cases the extravasation of arterial blood is so considerable as to reach nearly as high up as the folds of the axilla, and for a certain distance also below the elbow-joint; this has been termed a *diffused false aneurism*. This form of aneurism may occur also, from too great an amount of pressure having been applied to the sac for the cure of the next variety we shall speak of, namely, the *circumscribed false aneurism*, the sac gives way and the blood becomes diffused through the limb. An instance of this kind is recorded by Mr. Ellis, one of the surgeons to Jervis Street Hospital; he observes, "the pressure having been too forcibly applied, the sac gave way and a diffused aneurism became established."*

---

* Leçons Orales, vol. i. p. 265.

† Prac. Surg. p. 206.

Circumscribed False Aneurism. After the infliction of a wound upon the artery, the blood may escape at once directly through the external wound; if pressure be now made upon the wound, the general diffusion of the blood may be prevented, and a process of thickening may be set up in the areolar membrane surrounding the small quantity of blood which has insinuated itself between the wound in the artery and the integuments; this thickened areolar membrane becomes matted together by the effusion of coagulable lymph, and is ultimately converted into the cyst of the aneurism, which communicates with the canal of the wounded artery: this has been termed a *circumscribed false aneurism*.

Aneurismal Varix, and *Varicose Aneurism*, form two other varieties of aneurismal tumors resulting from a wound of the artery during venæsection; these two have been already considered: the student will, however, do well to recollect that in the former there is a direct communication between the artery and the vein, whilst in the latter an *intervening sac* is situated between the two vessels.

---

* Clin. Sur., p. 69.

We shall now consider the *treatment* applicable to these four varieties of brachial aneurism, the results of wounds inflicted upon the artery.

With regard to the *circumscribed false aneurism*, Professor Harrison remarks, "I do not recollect a case of this sort of circumscribed aneurism, from the infliction of a simple wound, in which it has been necessary to open the sac or tie the artery below it; I am, therefore, disposed to place full reliance on the practice of simply laying bare the vessel as close to the tumor as circumstances will permit, and tying it with a single ligature." Professor Colles, whose experience and great opportunity for observation render every practical remark of his worthy of attention, thus expresses himself on this subject in his course of lectures on the Theory and Practice of Surgery: "I have operated repeatedly, and with success, for the cure of circumscribed brachial aneurism, in consequence of injury to the artery in performing venæsection; I have also frequently assisted others in operating for the same cause, and with the same result; and I never yet found it necessary to open the aneurismal sac, or to look for the vessel below the tumor, or to apply more than one ligature around the artery, which, I think, ought always to be tied as near as possible to the seat of the disease; for in this species of aneurism the coats of the vessel have not undergone any morbid change, as is generally the case in aneurism of the inferior extremity."*

Mr. Cusack has treated three cases of circumscribed aneurism at the bend of the elbow from wounds in venæsection, by *compression*.† The compresses were applied chiefly *upon the tumor*, the compressing force was moderate; the limb was bandaged with the "gantelet," from the fingers upwards, according to Genga's method: blood was taken from the patient by venæsection, digitalis administered, and absolute rest and low diet enjoined. The two first cases terminated favorably under this treatment; during the treatment of the third case, the circumscribed aneurism became diffused. Scarpa adopted this mode of compression for the cure of circumscribed brachial aneurisms. The method of treating aneurism, by compression of the artery *leading to the aneurismal sac*, has been successfully employed by Dr. Hutton in a case of circumscribed aneurism of the brachial artery at the bend of the elbow: the patient was a servant aged thirty-four; he had been bled by a "country bleeder" for a pain in the chest. On his admission into the Richmond Hospital, the aneurismal tumor was circumscribed and about the size of a pullet's egg; it pulsated strongly and presented the usual characters of aneurism. Dr. Carte's compressing apparatus was employed; "with this the patient maintained the compression during six hours in succession; at the end of this period all pulsation had ceased and never returned."* If, however, these methods should fail in obliterating the sac of a circumscribed brachial aneurism, the surgeon may tie the artery leading to the tumor with a single ligature; and in addition, compression of the entire limb, from the fingers as far as the elbow, should be employed.

---

* Surgical Anatomy of the Arteries, pp. 185–6

† Dublin Journal, vol. i. pp. 117, &c.

Surgeons are now generally agreed as to the proper mode of treatment in cases of *diffused false aneurism* of the brachial artery; the single ligature, which may be sufficient in the circumscribed aneurism, is not to be depended on in this form. When the wound in the vessel is large, when the extravasation of blood becomes considerable, when the tumefaction of the limb extends upwards along the arm, and occupies also the upper portion of the fore-arm, accompanied with pain and discoloration of the integuments, compression will be worse than useless, and the single ligature on the artery leading to the wound will not suffice; the free anastomoses of the vessels about the elbow-joint will allow the blood to flow freely from the wounded artery, and the hemorrhage will continue without control. In a case of this description, therefore, the only operation which can with confidence be relied on, is to cut down with a free incision upon the wounded vessel, to turn out the coagulum of blood, and to tie the artery above and below the wound. In speaking on this subject Professor Harrison observes: "I now believe that very few cases of diffused aneurism, either of this or any other artery, will admit of cure from the simple operation and application of a single ligature to the artery above the injured part, but that it will be almost always necessary to lay open the tumor by a long incision, which should include, if possible, the original wound. When the injured vessel shall have been exposed, it may be raised by a probe, either introduced into it through the wound, or the aneurism-needle can be passed around it, and the artery tied first above and then below the opening."* Professor Porter observes: "But there is still another case; and let us suppose a limb, into which a quantity of blood has been extravasated, not sufficient to cause a gangrene of the part, but still too abundant to admit a hope of its being absorbed. Here, I apprehend, the surgeon has no choice; he must cut down, turn out all the coagula he can reach, in this way getting rid of that which would be a subsequent source of irritation, and then tie the vessel above and below the aperture."†

---

* Medical Press for May 16, 1849.

We are anxious, however, to impress upon the mind of the student, that in cases of simple puncture of the brachial artery, as in venæsection, or where there is no extensive effusion of arterial blood to create alarm, there is no necessity for immediate operation. The constitutional disturbance consequent upon the wound, and the alarm into which is thrown from the agitation and terror betrayed successful operator, at the instant when he is aw mischief he has done, added to the shock sustai alarm and precipitancy of a hasty operation perfor such circumstances,—all contribute to induce such the patient's system as to render it very unfavora healing of the wound, and secondary hemorrhag known to result from such unnecessary interfer cases, therefore, not demanding immediate ope student is recommended to apply judicious com means of graduated compresses laid carefully on other upon the wound, so as to correspond to the or bleeding vessel, and to surround all by means of a bandage, coiled round the elbow a sufficient numbe to secure the compresses in their proper situation. form of bandage has been preferred by some surg called the "gantelet" of Genga; it consists of narro bandage with which each finger was enveloped these met above the wrist, from which point a bro was carried round the fore-arm, and round the elbo compresses which had been previously applied; th was also carried round the arm up towards the axi mode of treatment by compression, in conjunction per position, absolute rest, low diet, &c., has prov cases decidedly successful, and until it fail, the o unnecessary and may be mischievous.

---

* Surgical Anatomy of the Arteries, pp. 180, &c.

† Porter on Aneurism, p. 138.

With regard to the treatment required for *varix*, and for the *varicose aneurism*, we have a served that it is seldom that either of them re operation: the method of compression already a either upon the diseased part or upon the brac leading to it, may be employed with considerable Dr. William Hunter advised that nothing should the way of operation in these cases where there sh considerable alteration in the tumor. Sir A. Cooper entertained the same objection to the operation. If, however, the disease should continue to increase in size, if a thinning of the integuments over the tumor, or over the sac, as in the varicose aneurism, should occur so as to threaten an effusion of blood into the limb, or from an ulcerated opening in the integuments, the surgeon will be obliged to tie the brachial artery, not with a single ligature passed round the vessel leading to the aneurism, but having cut into the sac and having turned out the coagulum, he should tie the artery both above and below the wound in the vessel.

Operation of tying the Brachial Artery in the superior third of the arm. The arm being abducted and rotated outwards for the purpose of diminishing the depth of the wound, an incision, about two inches and a half long, may be made over the ulnar margin of the coraco-brachialis muscle, the belly of which may be felt through the integuments. This should be done with much caution, as the integuments are thin in this situation, and the basilic vein may sometimes, though rarely, lie superficial to the brachial aponeurosis; moreover, the internal cutaneous nerve lies here immediately underneath the skin. The fascia being next divided on a director to the same extent, the areolar tissue may be scraped through with the handle of a knife till the artery and nerves are brought into view. The vein formed by the union of the basilic vein with the venæ comites, together with the internal cutaneous and ulnar nerves, may be drawn to the inside, and the median nerve to the outside, and the needle passed from within outwards. The separation of the artery and nerves will be facilitated by flexing the limb.

The operator will bear in mind the possibility of a high bifurcation, and of the superior profunda artery arising from the posterior circumflex and assuming the position of the brachial artery.

Ligature of the Brachial Artery in the middle of the arm. The elbow-joint being extended and the arm rotated outwards, an incision should be made, about two inches and a half long, on the internal margin of the biceps muscle. Having divided the integuments and drawn the vein or veins out of the way, the fascia should next be divided on a director. In some cases the basilic vein lies beneath the fascia in this situation. By drawing outwards the biceps muscle with a blunt retractor, the artery may be exposed, with a small vein frequently lying on either side, and the median nerve usually in front of it. The nerve is to be drawn to the inside, and the needle passed from within outwards. The operator should remember that internal and posterior to the brachial artery, in this situation, the inferior profunda artery descends in company with the ulnar nerve, the nerve lying to the inner side: to avoid tying the latter artery in mistake, he should first take care to direct the edge of his knife, not backwards, but towards the centre or axis of the humerus, and afterwards satisfy himself that the compression of the vessel stops the pulsation in the aneurismal tumor.

Should there be two vessels, and that the compression of both be found necessary to cause the pulsation of the sac to cease, *both* of them should be tied.

If the operation be performed in the *inferior third of the arm*, the surgeon will meet with the internal cutaneous nerve and basilic vein in his first incisions; and after having cut through the brachial aponeurosis he will look for the biceps tendon, the inner edge of which will be his guide to the artery in this situation: the median nerve will be found still more internally, lying at the inner side of the artery.

Ligature of the Brachial Artery at the bend of the elbow. The elbow-joint being extended, the hand supinated, an incision may be made, commencing at the internal margin of the median basilic vein, about an inch above the internal condyle, and carried downwards and a little outwards for above two inches and a half, along the radial margin of the pronator radii teres muscle. The vein and external lip of the wound being drawn outwards, the fascia and semilunar process of the biceps tendon may be successively divided on a director. At the bottom of the wound will be found the biceps tendon externally, the median nerve internally, and the artery between both and a little behind them. The needle may then be passed behind the artery from within outwards. Several small branches of the internal cutaneous nerve are necessarily divided in this operation. The superficial veins should be carefully kept out of the way; if one of them, however, should unavoidably interfere with the operation, Velpeau advises to "cut it between two ligatures, or even without this precaution, if not very large."

If the operation be performed for a wound in the artery accompanied with an extravasation of arterial blood, we should cut through the sac and turn out the coagulated blood: the surgeon will be obliged, generally speaking, to relax the tourniquet in order to ascertain the situation of the orifice in the bleeding vessel, and by the introduction of a probe in the opening he will be able still more clearly to discover its precise situation and extent. Having raised the artery from its bed and separated it from the median nerve, a double ligature should be passed beneath it: this ligature should be afterwards divided into its two separate portions, and the artery secured above and below the wound. This is the treatment which Scarpa recommends for diffuse aneurism following a wound of the brachial artery.

The surgeon would, however, do well to remember that where there has been a considerable extravasation of blood as the result of the wound of the artery, into the areolar tissue of the limb, the relative position of the parts will be greatly altered from that which we have just described. The entire of the bend of the elbow may be found filled with coagulated blood and enormously distended, so that in order to obtain a view of the tendon or of the nerve or artery, it will be *essentially necessary* to turn out completely the coagula, and then only can he expect to discover the bleeding vessel.

The branches of the brachial artery as it passes along the arm are the following:—

Superior Profunda.	Inferior Profunda.
Arteria Nutritia.	Anastomotic.

Muscular.

The *Superior profunda artery* arises a little beneath the conjoined tendons of the teres major and latissimus dorsi muscles, and then sinks, in company with the musculo-spiral nerve, into a canal formed by the three heads of the triceps muscle and the bone. From the back of the humerus it winds round to its outside in a spiral groove, which may be observed on that bone beneath the insertion of the deltoid muscle: here it divides into two branches, an anterior and posterior. The *anterior* pierces the external intermuscular ligament, and, accompanied by the musculo-spiral nerve, descends in a groove between the brachialis anticus and supinator longus muscles, to anastomose with the anterior radial recurrent artery. In this groove it is covered by the external cutaneous and musculo-spiral nerves, and still more superficially by the cephalic vein. The *posterior* branch descends in the substance of the triceps muscle, to which it sends numerous small branches, and terminates in anastomosing with the anterior branch and with the posterior interosseal and ulnar recurrents. The superior profunda artery is often very large, particularly when it arises from the posterior circumflex.

The *Arteria Nutritia*, or *nutritious artery of the humerus*, arises high up from the brachial, below the superior profunda, and penetrates the oblique canal that may be observed on the inside of the humerus, taking the direction downwards through the compact tissue of the bone, towards the elbow-joint. It supplies the medullary membrane and cancellated structure of the bone, and anastomoses with its other nutritious arteries, which are much smaller, and enter at various points, particularly near the extremities. Professor Harrison relates a case in which an aneurism of this artery ensued on a fracture of the humerus, and amputation was deemed necessary.*

The *Inferior profunda artery* arises nearly opposite the insertion of the coraco-brachialis muscle, and descends on the outside of the ulnar nerve, pierces with it the internal intermuscular ligament, and descends between this ligament and the triceps muscle to the interval between the internal condyle of the humerus and the olecranon process of the ulna, where it is covered by the ulnar nerve, and anastomoses with the posterior ulnar recurrent artery, and with branches from the anastomotic artery. In this course it supplies the integuments of the arm, and the biceps and triceps muscles. This artery may be small, absent, or double, or may arise in common with the superior profunda.

The *Anastomotic artery* arises from the inside of the brachial, a little above the bend of the elbow; it then descends with a slight degree of obliquity inwards, anastomoses with the anterior ulnar recurrent, pierces the internal intermuscular ligament, and terminates between the internal condyle and olecranon process, in anastomosing with the inferior profunda artery and the posterior ulnar recurrent. The anastomotic artery varies considerably in size, being usually small, but sometimes as large as the inferior profunda.

The *Muscular branches* are distributed in all directions: some go forwards to the biceps muscle, others backwards to the brachialis anticus; a third set are distributed externally to the coraco-brachialis muscle; and a fourth internally, extend to the pectoral muscles.

---

* Surgical Anatomy of the Arteries, p. 180.

At the bend of the elbow, the brachial artery d two terminating branches. Professor Harrison division to a point opposite to the coronoid pro ulna; and Professor Quain states that the usual little below the elbow-joint.

The terminating branches are the following :—

Ulnar Artery.

Radial Art

The ULNAR ARTERY, larger than the radial, first obliquely downwards and inwards beneath th radii teres muscle, the deep head of which separ the median nerve; then, beneath the flexor car palmaris longus, and flexor sublimis digitorum m this course it lies on the flexor profundus, and accompanied by a filament of communication b median and the ulnar nerves. In the remainder o to the annular ligament of the carpus, it descend on the flexor profundus muscle, covered by the ulnaris and flexor sublimis, and may be exposed the fascia and separating these two last-mentione as it approaches the wrist-joint it is placed betwee don of the flexor sublimis on its radial side, and carpi ulnaris on its ulnar side. It is joined at an by the ulnar nerve at the junction of the superior thirds of the fore-arm, after which it has this nerve side as far down as the wrist-joint. Finally it ge palm of the hand by descending in front of the an ment, covered, however, by an aponeurotic slip, the front of that ligament to the pisiform bone. In tion the nerve lies a little posterior to the artery.

The ulnar artery gives off the following branches

Anterior Ulnar Recurrent.
Posterior Ulnar Recurrent.
Common Interosseal.
Muscular Branches.
Anterior Carpal.
Posterior Carpal.
Communicating
Communicans
Superficial Palmar.

The *Anterior Ulnar recurrent* is small, and sometimes, together with the posterior ulnar recurrent, comes from a single trunk common to them both; it passes obliquely downwards and inwards in the first instance between the pronator teres and brachialis anticus muscles, and then, curving upwards, gains the front of the internal condyle, and anastomoses with the anastomotic branch of the brachial artery. In this course it supplies the brachialis anticus, pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, and flexor sublimis muscles.

The *Posterior Ulnar recurrent*, much larger than the preceding, descends at first a little inwards, between the flexor profundus digitorum, which lies behind it, and the muscles arising from the internal condyle, which lie in front. It then ascends parallel to the ulnar nerve and between the heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris, to arrive at the interval between the internal condyle and olecranon process; here it terminates in communicating with the anastomotic and inferior profunda branch of the brachial, having previously supplied the above-mentioned muscles, besides the elbow-joint, ulnar nerve and integuments. The superior radio-ulnar articulation is supplied by a small artery, *arteria articularis cubiti media*, which, according to Meyer, arises from the brachial, ulnar, or interosseal artery; this small artery passes into the joint and supplies the synovial membrane; he says it is analogous to the posterior articular artery of the knee-joint.

The *Common Interosseal artery* comes off immediately below the recurrents, and descends backwards and outwards to the superior margin of the interosseous ligament, where it divides into the anterior and posterior interosseal arteries. Before its division it gives off a small but pretty constant artery, the *comes nervi mediani*, which accompanies the median nerve to the wrist, where it terminates: occasionally this artery is of considerable size, and joins the superficial palmar arch: it is sometimes a branch of the ulnar. The *Anterior interosseal artery* descends on the front of the interosseous ligament, between the flexor pollicis longus and flexor digitorum profundus muscles, being covered and accompanied down the fore-arm by a branch of the median nerve; in its course down the fore-arm it sends small branches to the muscles in relation to it, and two or three very small perforating arteries which pass through the interosseous ligament and supply the deep-seated muscles on the back of the fore-arm. Having arrived at the pronator quadratus muscle, the anterior interosseal divides into two branches: one supplies this muscle, and terminates in anastomosing with the carpal arteries and the deep palmar arch; the other passes backwards through an oval opening in the lower portion of the interosseous ligament, to anastomose with the posterior carpal and posterior interosseal arteries. The *Posterior interosseal artery* passes downwards and backwards, between the anterior oblique and interosseous ligaments, and, having thus arrived at the posterior superior part of the fore-arm, gives off the *interosseal recurrent branch*, improperly called the "*posterior radial recurrent artery*," which ascends between the supinator brevis and anconeus muscles, and then through the fossa between the external condyle of the humerus and the olecranon process: after piercing the triceps muscle it terminates in anastomosing with the superior profunda and posterior ulnar recurrent arteries. After giving off this recurrent branch, the posterior interosseal artery descends on the back of the fore-arm, not lying on the interosseous ligament, but placed between the superficial and deep layer of muscles. In this course it is accompanied by a branch of the musculo-spiral nerve, and gives off numerous branches to the surrounding muscles; at the wrist the artery becomes very small, and terminates in anastomosing with the anterior interosseal and the posterior carpal arteries.

The *Muscular branches* pass off from the ulnar artery in its course along the fore-arm, and supply the various muscles with which it is related.

The *Anterior carpal branch*, extremely small, passes horizontally outwards, along the inferior margin of the pronator quadratus muscle, and behind the tendons of the superficial and deep flexors. It anastomoses with the anterior carpal branch of the radial artery.

The *Posterior carpal branch* comes off about an inch and a half above the pisiform bone: it winds round the inferior extremity of the ulna to the back of the carpus, in passing beneath the tendon of the flexor ulnaris muscle: it sends small branches to the little finger, and terminates by anastomosing with the posterior carpal branch of the radial

After the ulnar artery has arrived in the palm of the hand, it terminates by dividing into the communicans profunda and palmaris superficialis branches.

The *Communicans profunda* should not be dissected till the palmaris superficialis and superficial palmar arch of arteries have been examined. It passes obliquely downwards and inwards, between the pisiform bone and unciform process of the unciform bone, lying superficial to the ligament which connects these bones; it next passes between the origin of the abductor minimi digiti internally, and the origin of the flexor minimi digiti externally; it then turns outwards, beneath the two muscles arising from the unciform process, viz., the short flexor and opponens minimi digiti, to join the palmaris profunda, a branch of the radial, and so to form the deep palmar arch. In this course it is accompanied by a large branch of the ulnar nerve which lies superficial to it.

The *Superficial palmar artery* is usually much larger than the preceding. It winds downwards and outwards, beneath the palmar aponeurosis, to inosculate with the superficialis volæ, a branch of the radial artery; and thus forms the superficial palmar arch.

SUPERFICIAL PALMAR ARCH.

The *Superficial palmar arch of arteries* corresponds nearly to the semicircular fold on the palm of which circumscribes the muscles of the thuml general, smaller than the deep arch, and its conve looks downwards and inwards, is nearer to the *anteriorly* it is covered by the integuments aponeurosis: *posteriorly* it lies on the flexor tendc divisions of the median nerve as they pass to the the fore-arm we see the radial and ulnar arteri tween their corresponding nerves; but in the har is reversed, the nerves being situated between th arteries.

The branches of the superficial palmar arch from its concavity and from its convexity.

The *Branches from the Concavity of the Superfi Arch* are small and numerous: they supply the the flexor muscles, the lumbricales, lower por median nerve, the annular ligament, and parts i diate vicinity; and anastomose with branches o and ulnar arteries.

The *Branches from the Convexity of the Superfi Arch* are the four digital arteries.

The *First Digital artery*, or the most internal, ulnar side of the little finger; the *second* adva cleft between the little and ring fingers; the *t* cleft between the middle and ring fingers; and tl the cleft between the middle and index fingers: e then bifurcates to supply the opposed surfaces of ive fingers. These digital arteries follow the a lateral margins of the fingers, supplying the digi tions and synovial sheaths, and forming a vasc beneath the nail of each finger. Those of the frequently communicate both in its anterior an regions, and opposite the ungual phalanx meet of an arch, the concavity of which looks toward and from the convexity of which are sent of minute vessels to supply the extremities of the fingers. The digital nerves are superficial, that is, anterior to the arteries; the latter either pierce or cross the nerves in order to obtain this position.

It is of importance to know the precise spot at which the bifurcation of the second, third, and fourth digital arteries takes place, in order that the surgeon may avoid wounding these arteries when making the necessary incisions into the palm of the hand, for the purpose of giving exit to matter in its locality. If we examine the palm of the hand, we will find a fold or crease running somewhat transversely from one side to the other, and corresponding to the palmar surface of the metacarpo-phalangeal articulations of the four fingers. If we measure from this fold forwards to the lunated margin of each of the three webs between the fingers, we will find the distance of each to be from about an inch and a quarter to an inch and a half: the bifurcation of each of the digital arteries will be found to correspond to about the central point between the fold and the anterior or lunated border of the web.

Operation of tying the Ulnar Artery.—If the ulnar artery be wounded in its superior third, we may either adopt the method recommended by Mr. Guthrie, and cut down through the mass of muscles which covers it, taking care to avoid the median nerve; or we may tie the brachial artery in its inferior third: the latter proceeding, in conjunction with the employment of graduated compresses and bandages to the part of the limb below this, is to be preferred. If the upper part of the ulnar artery be affected with aneurism, tying the brachial is the only proper course. If it be necessary to tie the ulnar artery lower down, as in cases of wounds, it will be readily found by cutting on the interval between the flexor sublimis digitorum and flexor carpi ulnaris. The fascia should be divided on a director, and the needle carried round the vessel from within outwards, taking care to avoid the nerve which lies to its ulnar side, and the venæ comites which lie one on either side.

Wounds of the palmar arch generally bleed profusely. If a spouting vessel present itself, it may be seized with the tenaculum, and secured in a ligature. This practice, however, is seldom available, as the blood generally flows from a number of orifices, which are by no means distinct. In such case the surgeon should close the wound, and employ a bandage with graduated compresses; or, if this should fail, he may introduce into it a bit of sponge, covered with gauze to prevent the lymph effused from lodging in its cells, and then apply the bandage and compresses as before: this, with the temporary application of the tourniquet to the brachial artery, or the application of compresses placed on the ulnar and radial arteries, will usually be sufficient even in severe cases. Sometimes, however, it may be necessary to tie one or both arteries of the fore-arm: even after this the hemorrhage has continued, and in an instance of the kind, Mr. Adams has succeeded in restraining the bleeding by the application of a compress and bandage over the back of the wrist, so as to exercise pressure on the dorsal carpal arteries. If the wound be towards the radial side, we should tie the radial first; and if on the ulnar side, the ulnar artery should be first secured. It should be recollected that sometimes the artery accompanying the median nerve, and the anterior interosseal artery, are particularly large, and terminate in the superficial or deep arch.

THE RADIAL ARTERY, smaller than the ulnar, but more in the direction of the brachial artery, descends towards the wrist, being related *posteriorly*, from above downwards, to the tendon of the biceps, the insertion of the supinator brevis, the pronator teres, the radial origin of the flexor sublimis, the flexor pollicis longus, and the pronator quadratus muscles:

externally, it is related to the supinator longus muscle, which overlaps it a little; and *internally* to the pronator teres above, and flexor carpi radialis lower down. *Anteriorly* it is covered only by fascia, integuments, and the approximation of the muscles at either side. Thus in the upper part of its course the artery will be found between the supinator longus and pronator teres, whilst below this it lies between the supinator radii longus and flexor carpi radialis. The radial artery is accompanied by two veins, the *venæ comites*, and in the two superior thirds of the fore-arm by the radial branch of the musculo-spiral nerve, which lies to its outer or radial side: below this point the nerve forsakes the artery and winds round the outside of the radius,

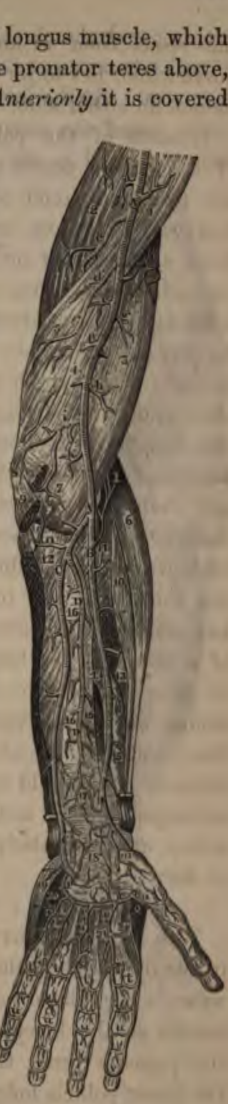


Fig. 20.—Represents the Deep Arteries of the upper Extremity.

A, A, Brachial Artery. B, B, Radial Artery. C, C, Ulnar Artery. D, D, Anterior Interosseal Artery. K, Slender twig to the Brachialis Anticus. P, Deep Palmar arch of Arteries formed by the Communicans Profunda of the Ulnar, and Palmaris Profunda of the Radial Arteries. Q, Portion of First Dorsal Interosseous Muscle. 1, Coraco-brachialis Muscle. 2, Long portion of Triceps Muscle. 3, Brachialis Anticus. 4, Internal Intermuscular Septum. 5, Short portion of Triceps Muscle. 6, Extensor Carpi Radialis Longus. 7, Twig to the Brachialis Anticus. 8, Part of the origin of Pronator Radii Teres. 9, Origins of Flexor Carpi Radialis and Palmaris Longus. 10, Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevis Muscle. 11, Supinator Radii Brevis Muscle. 12, Portion of the Flexor Profundus Muscle. 13, Insertion of Pronator Teres cut. 14, 15, Flexor Pollicis Longus having the Radial Artery passing over it. 16, 16, 16, The Interosseous Ligament with Anterior Interosseal Artery. 17, Pronator Quadratus with branch of Interosseal Artery. 18, Anastomosis between Anterior Interosseal, the Deep Palmar Arch, and the Anterior Carpal Arteries. 19, 20, Abductor Minimi Digiti Muscle. 21, 21, 21, Palmar Interossei Muscles. a, Muscular Branch. c, Superior Profunda Artery. d, Inferior Profunda Artery. e, f, g, h, Muscular branches to Triceps and Brachialis Anticus Muscles. i, Anastomotic Artery. l, Radial Recurrent Artery. m, Superficialis Volæ cut. n, Princeps Pollicis Artery. o, Anterior Ulnar Recurrent Artery ascending to anastomose with the Anastomotic artery. r, r, r, Digital Arteries. s, s, s, Cut ends of the Digital Arteries of the Superficial Palmar Arch. t, t, t, t, u, u, u, u, v, v, v, v, Anastomoses between the Digital Arteries.

passing underneath the tendon of the supinator radii longus, in order to arrive at the outer side of the posterior part of the fore-arm. At the lower extremity of the fore-arm the artery turns round the external lateral ligament of the wrist-joint, being parallel to the radial extensor muscles, and covered by the extensor muscles of the thumb. Here it pierces the abductor indicis manus muscle, and terminates, in crossing the palm of the hand, under the name of the palmaris profunda. As the artery is passing obliquely across the back of the outer portion of the wrist, it will be found lodged in a triangular space, the base of which corresponds to the back part of the lower extremity of the radius; the apex is situated at the metacarpal bone of the thumb; one side is formed by the extensor secundi internodii pollicis and extensor carpi radialis longus; and the other, or radial side, is formed by the tendon of the extensor primi internodii pollicis. Immediately underneath the integuments covering this hollow space, we

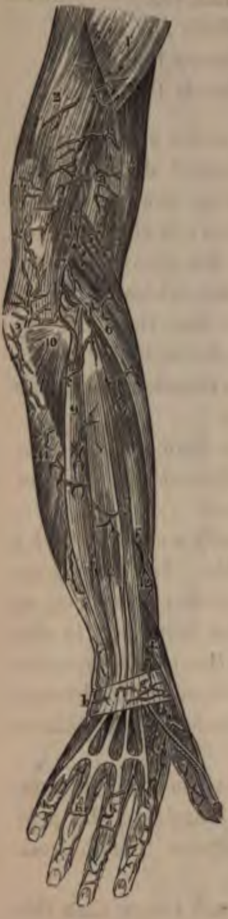


Fig. 30.—Represents the arteries of the posterior part of the upper extremity which are seen after the removal of the skin and aponeurosis.

1, Deltoid Muscle. 2, Triceps Extensor Cubiti. 3, Biceps Flexor Cubiti. 4, Brachialis Anticus. 5, Supinator Longus. 6, Extensor Carpi Radialis Longus. 7, Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevis. 8, Extensor Communis Digitorum. 9, Extensor Carpi Ulnaris. 10, Anconeus Muscle. 11, Flexor Carpi Ulnaris. 12, Extensor Ossis Metacarpi Pollicis. 13, Extensor Primi Internodii Pollicis, a, a, a, Muscular branches of the Superior Profunda. b, Branch of the Superior Profunda. c, c, Anastomoses between the Superior Profunda and Twigs from the Interosseal and Posterior Ulnar Recurrent Arteries. d, Twig from the Radial Recurrent Artery. e, Twigs from the Interosseal Artery. f, Twig from the Interosseal Artery. g, h, Arterial Anastomosis. i, Radial Artery. k, k, k, k, Twigs from the Anterior Digital Arteries to the backs of the fingers.

find the origin of the radial vein and some branches of the radial division of the musculo-spiral nerve.

The branches of the radial artery are the following:—

Radial Recurrent.
Muscular.
Superficialis Volæ.
Anterior Carpal.
Posterior Carpal.
Dorsalis Pollicis.
Metacarpal.
Radialis Indicis.
Princeps Pollicis.
Palmaris Profunda.

The *Radial recurrent*. This branch, which arises high up in the fore-arm, proceeds at first in a curved direction outwards, the convexity of the curve looking downwards and lying below the radio-humeral articulation: it then ascends on the front of the supinator brevis, in the groove between the supinator longus and brachialis anticus, where it anastomoses with the superior profunda artery: from the convexity of its arch it sends many branches downwards to be lost in the supinator brevis and supinator longus muscles, and in the upper extremities of the extensor muscles.

The *Muscular branches*. In its course down the fore-arm, the radial artery sends branches to the adjacent muscles, and through the aponeurosis to the integuments.

The *Superficialis Volæ*. This is usually a small branch; sometimes, however, it is very considerable. It descends on the front of the annular ligament of the wrist; then over, or through the origins of the small muscles belonging to the thumb. It next turns inwards, beneath the palmar aponeurosis, and, by anastomosing with the superficial palmar branch of the ulnar artery, contributes to form the superficial palmar arch already described.

The *Anterior Carpal artery* is small but constant. It runs transversely inwards, along the inferior margin of the pronator quadratus, to anastomose with a similar branch from the ulnar.

The *Posterior Carpal artery* is very much larger than the anterior. Its origin corresponds to the outer edge of the extensor carpi radialis longus muscle, and is nearly opposite the interval between the first and second range of carpal bones. It passes almost horizontally inwards, lying on the second row of carpal bones, covered by the radial extensors and the extensors of the fingers, to anastomose with the posterior carpal branch of the ulnar artery; its *superior* branches are distributed to the wrist-joint, and communicate with the anterior interosseal; its *inferior* branches are *the second, third, and fourth perforating arteries*, each of which sinks between the heads of the corresponding dorsal interosseous muscle, to join the deep palmar arch: the trunk of the radial artery may be considered *the first perforating artery*, as it pierces the first interosseous muscle, or abductor indicis manus, in a similar manner. Before these arteries pierce the muscles, they send off interosseal branches, which descend between the interosseous mus-

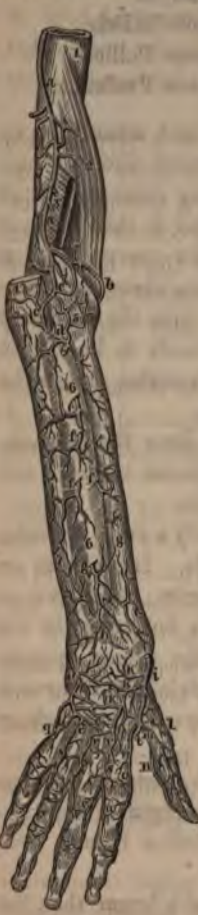


Fig. 31.—Represents the deep arteries of the posterior part of the upper extremity.

1, Humerus. 2, Brachialis Anticus. 3, Origins of Supinator Radii Longus and Extensor Carpi Radialis Longus Muscles. 4, Portion of Insertion of Triceps. 5, External Lateral Ligament of the Elbow-joint. 6, 6, Interosseous Ligament of the Fore-arm. 7, Ulna. 8, Radius, a, a, Superior Profunda Artery. b, Radial Recurrent Artery. c, c, Anastomoses between the Superior Profunda, the Radial Recurrent, and Interosseal Recurrent Arteries. d, Posterior Interosseal Artery, after passing backwards between the Oblique and Interosseous Ligaments, divided. e, f, f, f, f, Perforating branches from the Anterior Interosseal Artery. h, Twig to Carpus. i, Radial Artery. k, k, k, Dorsal Carpal Twigs. l, Dorsal Artery of Thumb. m, Internal Dorsal Artery of Thumb. n, Continuation of the Princeps Pollicis Artery. o, Radialis Indicis Artery. p, Posterior Carpal branch of Ulnar Artery. q, Branch of Posterior Ulnar Carpal Artery to the little finger. r, r, r, Perforating Twigs of the Palmar Interosseal Arteries. s, s, s, Dorsal or Posterior Interosseal Arteries of hand. t, Radial Artery passing into the palm of the hand. u, v, w, x, y, z, Small branches to the sides of the Dorsal aspect of the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th fingers.

cles and integuments, and occasionally pierce the lower part of the interosseous space, to join the digital branches of the palmar arch.

The *Dorsalis Pollicis.* Before the radial artery sinks between the two first metacarpal bones, it gives a branch or branches to the posterior surface of the metacarpal bone of the thumb; it also frequently gives off a slender branch that descends on the cutaneous surface of the abductor indicis manus.

The *Metacarpal artery*, or *dorsalis indicis*, is very variable in size, being sometimes diminutive, and at other times extremely large. Sometimes it seems to be a continuation of the radial. It descends over the metacarpal bone of the index finger, and sinks between the second and third metacarpal bones, to join the digital branch of the superficial palmar arch that supplies the adjacent sides of the index and middle fingers.

The *Radialis Indicis* descends between the abductor indicis and adductor pollicis: it then follows the external margin of the index finger, and, at its extremity, anastomoses with the internal digital branch of the same finger.

The *Princeps Pollicis*, or digital artery of the thumb, descends between the abductor indicis and deep head of the shorter flexor pollicis. It then follows the internal margin of the thumb, and anastomoses with the other small digital vessels which run along the dorsal aspect of the thumb.

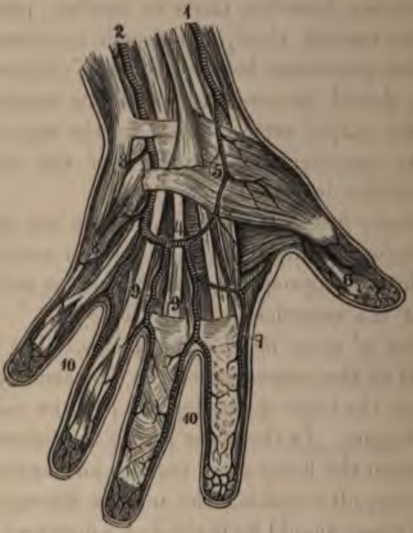
In some cases the radialis indicis and princeps pollicis arise by a common trunk, which descends to the lower part of the first interosseous space before it bifurcates: this is described as the regular disposition by Cloquet and Boyer. Professor Harrison describes the radial artery as terminating by dividing into three branches; the radialis indicis, princeps pollicis, and palmaris profunda.

The *Palmaris Profunda.* This is the proper termination of the radial artery; it passes horizontally inwards, between the metacarpal bones and interosseous muscles which are behind it, and the adductor pollicis and flexor tendons which lie in front. It then unites with the deep terminating branch of the ulnar, thus forming the deep palmar arch.

DEEP PALMAR ARCH.

The *Deep palmar arch of arteries* is covered in front by all the nerves, tendons, and muscles of the palm of the hand, except by the interosseous muscles, which, together with the metacarpal bones, lie behind it. It crosses these bones nearly at right angles, lying close to their carpal extremities, and forming a slight curvature, the convexity of which looks towards the phalanges. This arch is accompanied by a branch

Fig. 32.—Arteries of the Hand; Palmar Surface.



1. Radial Artery. 2, Ulnar. 3, Communicating Branch with the Deep Palmar Arch. 4, Superficial Palmar Arch. 5, Superficial Volar Artery. 6, Digital Arteries of the Thumb. 7, Radial Index Artery. 8, Digital Artery to the Little Finger. 9, Common Digital Arteries, 10, Digitals to the Fingers.

of the ulnar nerve, which passes in company with the communicans profunda branch of the ulnar artery into this deep-seated situation of the hand: the nerve lies on the anterior surface of the arch and terminates in the muscles of the thumb.

The deep palmar arch gives off the following branches:—

Anterior. Superior.
Posterior. Inferior.

The *anterior branches* are small, and are lost in the lumbricales muscles.

The *posterior branches*, three in number, pass backwards towards the second, third, and fourth interosseous spaces: each of them penetrates between the two origins of the corresponding dorsal interosseous muscle, to communicate with the posterior carpal artery: these arteries may therefore be indifferently considered as branches of the last-mentioned artery, or of the deep arch.

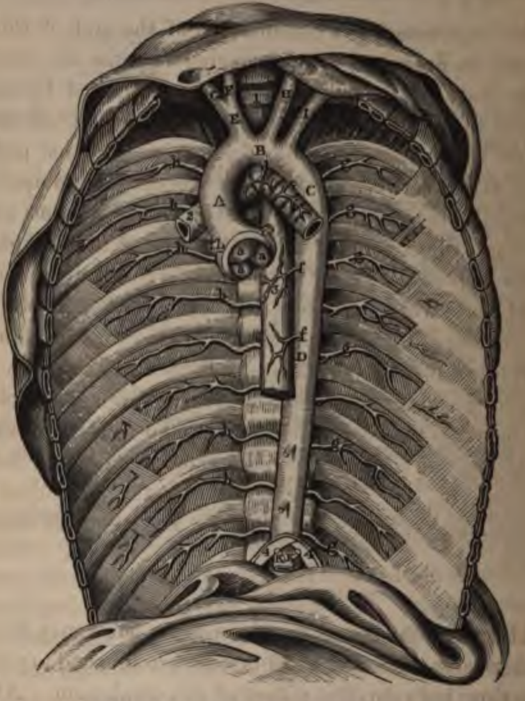
The *superior branches* are small, and are lost on the carpus.

The *inferior branches*, three or four in number, descend along the interosseous spaces, and anastomose with the digital branches of the superficial palmar arch.

Operation of tying the Radial Artery. The radial artery may be tied in the upper part of the fore-arm by making an incision over the interval between the pronator radii teres and supinator longus. In the lower part of the fore-arm it will be found between the flexor carpi radialis and supinator longus. In either case, after making the incision through the integuments, the fascia should be divided on a director: a small vein will be found on either side of the artery, and the radial nerve will lie on its external side. The possibility of mistaking the superficialis volæ for the trunk of the radial should be borne in mind. In judging of the strength of the pulse at the wrist, it will be necessary to attend to the deviations in the course and size of the radial artery.

Sir Philip Crampton succeeded in curing a circumscribed

Fig. 33.—The Thoracic Aorta and its Branches.



A, Ascending portion of the Arch of the Aorta. B, Middle portion of the Arch. C, Termination of the descending portion of the Arch. D, Thoracic Aorta. E, Arteria Innominata, or Brachio-Cephalic Artery. F, Right Common Carotid Artery. G, Right Subclavian Artery. H, Left Common Carotid Artery. I, Left Subclavian Artery. K, K, Inferior Phrenic or Diaphragmatic Arteries, which in this case came abnormally from the Cœliac Axis. a, a, a, Sigmoid or Semilunar Valves of the Aorta. b, Origin of the Right Coronary Artery. c, Origin of the Left Coronary Artery. d, Right Bronchial Artery, in this case arising from the concavity of the Arch of the Aorta. e, Left Bronchial Artery, having a similar origin. f, Œsophageal Arteries. g, g, g, g, g, g, Left Inferior or Aortic Intercostal Arteries. h, h, h, h, h, h, Right Inferior or Aortic Intercostal Arteries. 1, Trachea. 2, Right Bronchus. 3, Œsophagus. 4, 4, Portion of the Diaphragm.

traumatic aneurism of the radial artery as it passes behind the wrist, by the application of Dr. Carte's compressing instrument upon the artery leading to the tumor.*

THE DESCENDING AORTA.

This large vessel is a continuation of the arch of the aorta, and may be described as commencing opposite the lower part of the body of the third dorsal vertebra, and terminating opposite the fourth lumbar. Its commencement and termination are both on the left side of the spine, but that part of it which passes between the crura of the diaphragm approaches the middle line, so that in its entire course it forms a lateral curvature, the convexity of which is turned to the right side. In this respect the artery accommodates itself to the natural lateral curve which exists in the dorsal portion of the spine, the convexity of which is also directed towards the right side; in addition to this, the artery follows the curvature of the spine in the antero-posterior direction, and is therefore concave forwards in the thoracic region, and convex forwards in the abdominal. The descending aorta is divided into two portions, viz., the thoracic aorta, and the abdominal aorta. We shall first examine the thoracic, and then the abdominal portion.

THE THORACIC AORTA.

This great division of the descending aorta may be said to commence opposite the third dorsal vertebra, and to terminate in passing between the pillars of the diaphragm. As far as the tenth dorsal vertebra it is situated in a region called the posterior mediastinum: this region approaches somewhat to the form of a prism, and extends from about the third to the tenth dorsal vertebra: its sides are formed by the two pleuræ; its apex is situated anteriorly and corresponds to the back part of the pericardium, and its base is formed by the bodies of the vertebræ from the third to the tenth. The direction of the thoracic aorta is downwards, forwards, and to the right side. Its *posterior surface* rests on the spine and demi-azygos vein, and usually on the third, fourth, and fifth intercostal veins of the left side: the intercostal arteries arise from this part of the vessel. Its *anterior surface* is covered by the root of the left lung, by the back of the pericardium, and lower down by the œsophagus with the vagi nerves, and by the decussating muscular bands which spring from and connect the pillars of the diaphragm. Its *left side* is closely related to the left pleura and lung. Its *right side* is related remotely to the right lung and pleura, to the thoracic duct and vena azygos, and inferiorly it is related to the right crus of the diaphragm, from which it is separated by the vena azygos and thoracic duct. Along its right side superiorly we may also observe the œsophagus passing downwards towards the stomach: if we examine the relations between the œsophagus and aorta, we will find that these tubes run somewhat spirally with regard to one another:

---

* Dub. Med. Press, vol. xxii. p. 61.

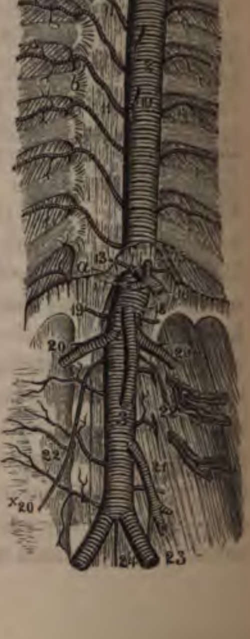


Fig. 34.—*The Aorta.*

1, Arch of the Aorta. 2, Thoracic Aorta. 3, Abdominal Aorta. 4, Innominate Artery. 5, Right common Carotid. 6, Right Subclavian. 7, Left common Carotid. 8, Left Subclavian. 9, Bronchial Artery, a small branch of the Aorta, 10, Œsophageal Arteries. 11, Intercostal Arteries of the right side. 12, Of the left side. 13, Phrenic Arteries. 14, Cœliac Axis. 15, Coronary Artery. 16, Splenic Artery. 17, Hepatic Artery. 18, Superior Mesenteric Artery. 19, Suprarenal Arteries. 20, Spermatic Arteries. 21, Inferior Mesenteric Artery. 22, Lumbar Arteries. 23, Common Iliac Arteries. 24, Middle Sacral Artery. *a*, Aortic Orifice of the Diaphragm. *b*, Articulation of the head of the ribs. *c*, Anterior Scalene Muscle.

at first the œsophagus lies upon a plane posterior to the second or middle portion of the arch of the aorta, though not in immediate relation to it; it then lies to the right side of the third portion of the arch, and continues its course along the right side of the thoracic aorta until it reaches a point corresponding to about the body of the seventh dorsal vertebra; the œsophagus here begins to pass obliquely from right to left, across the front of the aorta, and finally at its termination in the stomach it lies to the left side of this vessel, and upon a plane considerably anterior to it. The right and left splanchnic nerves descend on either side of it, the left being nearer to the artery.

The branches of the thoracic aorta are the following:—

Pericardial.
Bronchial.
Œsophageal.
Posterior Mediastinal.
Inferior Intercostal.

The *Pericardial branches* are a few small and irregular arteries which arise from the front of the vessel and are distributed to the back part of the pericardium.

The *Bronchial arteries* arise from the anterior part of the aorta; they are amongst the most irregular in the body, and can only be recognized by their termination in the lung, and not by their origin, as they may arise from the aorta, the intercostals, the mammary, or even from the subclavian arteries. Those most constantly found are three in number; viz., one on the right side; and two on the left,—a superior and an inferior.

The *right bronchial artery* sometimes comes from the aorta, in common with the left, or separately: usually, however, it is a branch of the first aortic intercostal: in all cases it descends on the back of the right bronchus, and, winding round it, accompanies it into the lung: the *superior left bronchial artery* usually comes from the aorta, and in a similar manner twines round the left bronchus, and with it enters the lung: the *left inferior bronchial artery* often arises from the aorta, opposite the third or fourth dorsal vertebra, and is conducted to the left lung by the left superior pulmonic vein: it is not as constant as the two preceding. Arrived at the lung, the right bronchial artery usually divides into five branches, and the left into four: these subdivide, and accompany the divisions of the bronchi through the lung, in such a manner, however, that one division of the bronchus has usually with it two or three arterial branches, which, frequently anastomosing, form a delicate net-work round the air-vessel. The bronchial arteries communicate with the other blood-vessels of the lung.

Two or three other bronchial arteries may arise occasionally from the concavity of the arch of the aorta, and also repair to the lung.

The *Œsophageal arteries*, three to six in number, arise from the anterior part of the thoracic aorta, at variable points: they are lost in the tunics of the œsophagus, and in anastomosing with the inferior branches of the inferior thyroid artery, and with the œsophageal branches of the gastric artery. They are always very small, and the highest of them occasionally comes from one of the bronchial arteries.

The *Posterior Mediastinal branches* are small and numerous: they arise from various parts of the thoracic aorta, and supply the glandular structures and areolar tissue contained in the posterior mediastinum.

The *Inferior or Aortic Intercostals* are usually from nine to ten in number on each side, according as the superior intercostal gives off three or two branches: they all arise from the posterior and lateral part of the thoracic aorta. The superior run obliquely upwards and outwards, the middle less obliquely outwards, and the inferior almost transversely: those of the *right side*, having to cross the spine, are necessarily longer than those on the *left*, and have additional relations: from their origins to the angles of the ribs, they rest on the spine posteriorly, and are covered in front by the œsophagus, thoracic duct, vena azygos, sympathetic nerve, and the right pleura. Those of the *left side*, traced as far as the heads of the ribs, rest on a very small portion of the spine, and are only covered by the sympathetic nerve and left pleura.

In the remainder of their course, being exactly alike on right and left, the same description will serve for the intercostal arteries of both sides. There are some differences, however, between the relations of those above and those below: thus, the superior aortic intercostal communicates with the lowest intercostal branch from the subclavian, while each of the others communicates with the aortic intercostal above and below it: again, those low down cross behind the splanchnic nerves on both sides, and behind the demi-azygos vein on the left side; and the eleventh and twelfth intercostals on either side pass behind the corresponding pillar of the diaphragm.

Having arrived in the intercostal space, each of the intercostal arteries divides into an anterior and posterior branch: the *anterior branch*, larger than the posterior, proceeds outwards towards the angle of the rib, having in front of it the pleura, and behind it the anterior, or inferior costo-transverse ligament, and the external layer of intercostal muscles; having arrived near the angle of the rib, it divides into a superior and inferior branch, both of which sink between the two layers of intercostal muscles: the inferior, much the smaller, runs for a short distance along the superior margin of the rib below, and is then lost in the periosteum on its external surface; while the superior, which is really the continued anterior intercostal, runs forwards between the two layers of intercostal muscles, lodged in the groove in the inferior margin of the rib above, till it reaches the anterior part of the thorax, its corresponding vein lying above it and its nerve beneath it; here it descends in the intercostal space, and its mode of termination depends on its situation: those corresponding to the true ribs anastomose with the internal mammary artery; those corresponding to the false ribs sink into the abdominal muscles, and, having supplied them, anastomose with the mammary, epigastric, and circumflexæ ilii arteries. The twelfth anterior intercostal differs somewhat from the preceding: it runs downwards and outwards between the corresponding crus of the diaphragm and the body of the last dorsal vertebra; then along the inferior margin of the twelfth rib, opposite to the middle of which it divides into transverse and descending branches; these are lost in the broad muscles of the abdomen, and in communication with the lumbar and circumflexæ ilii vessels. The *posterior branch* of each intercostal artery passes backwards, between the body of the corresponding vertebra on the inside, and the inferior costo-transverse ligament on the outside: in this situation it sends a small branch through the lateral foramen of the spine to the tunics of the spinal marrow, and then continues its course backwards to be lost in the spino-transverse, longissimus dorsi, and sacro-lumbalis muscle; some of its branches extend to the latissimus dorsi and trapezius muscles, and are lost in the integuments.

THE ABDOMINAL AORTA.

The examination of this vessel may be deferred till its branches have been dissected. It is about five inches and a half or six inches in length, and extends from the aortic opening in the diaphragm to the left side of the fourth lumbar vertebra, or to the cartilage between the fourth and fifth: it may, however, extend to the fifth, or only as far as the second. The *aortic opening* in the diaphragm is oblique, and corresponds to the twelfth dorsal and part of the first lumbar vertebræ: its *sides* are formed by the two crura of the diaphragm; *anteriorly* and *superiorly* it is bounded by a tendinous arch which unites the two crura across the anterior aspect of the artery, and from the convexity of which arch some of the short fleshy fibres of the crura arise; and *posteriorly* by the anterior common ligament of the spine, which separates the vessel from the first lumbar vertebra. The *posterior surface* of the abdominal aorta rests on the spine, right crus of the diaphragm, which here sends an expansion in front of the lumbar vertebræ; on the receptaculum chyli, and left lumbar veins: the lumbar and middle sacral arteries arise from this surface of the vessel, and are therefore placed posterior to it. The *anterior surface* is covered from above downwards, first by the posterior edge of the liver, next by the union of the semilunar ganglia to form the solar plexus; by the aortic plexus of nerves, by the lesser omentum and stomach, then by the commencement of the vena portæ and superior mesenteric artery, both of which separate it from the pancreas, which also crosses the anterior surface of the vessel; lower down, it is covered by the left renal vein, which separates it from the third portion of the duodenum; this intestine crosses the artery at a point corresponding to about the third lumbar vertebra: still lower, it is crossed by the transverse mesocolon and mesentery, and inferiorly by a single layer of the peritoneum, namely, the continuation downwards of the inferior or descending layer of the mesentery. Its *left side* corresponds to the left pillar of the diaphragm above, and below to the peritoneum. Its *right side* is separated from the vena cava superiorly by the Spigelian lobe of the liver, the right crus of the diaphragm, the vena azygos, and the thoracic duct; lower down it is nearly in contact with the latter vein. The sympathetic nerves also lie one at each side of the aorta, the left being in closer relation to it, and both on a plane posterior to the vessel.

Operation of tying the Aorta.—The abdominal aorta has been tied five times in the human subject, but unfortunately in every case without success. Sir A. Cooper was led, by a number of experiments* which he performed on dogs, and by a consideration of the various cases on record, in which the aorta had been found obliterated after death, to believe in the possibility of tying this vessel, in the human subject, with safety and advantage. It is true that in every instance in which it was found impervious in the human subject, the effect was produced slowly, and the anastomosing branches were gradually prepared for the additional duty they were to perform; yet it does not appear, either from experiments on brutes, from which, however, conclusions should be drawn with great caution, or from the results of the cases in which it has been tied in man, that the operation must fail, either on account of the immediate shock given to the system, or of the diminished supply of blood sent to both the lower extremities

Sir A. Cooper says he has ascertained that if the aortic plexus be tied with the artery, the lower extremities are rendered paralytic and the animal dies; but these consequences do not occur if the plexus be not included in the ligature.

LIGATURE OF THE AORTA.

No.	Operator.	Date of Operation.	Results and Observations.
1	Cooper	1817	Death on 2d day after the operation.
2	James	1829	Death on the evening of the day on which the operation was performed.
3	Murray	1834	Death in twenty-three hours.
4	Monteiro.....	1842	Death, from hemorrhage, on 10th day after operation.
5	South.........	1856	Death in forty-two hours.

Sir A. Cooper's Case.—A patient in Guy's Hospital had violent bleeding just above the left groin, from an aneurismal tumor of the external iliac artery. The integuments had sloughed, and the patient was exceedingly reduced from loss of blood. Under these circumstances, and finding it impossible from the size of the tumor to secure the iliac artery, Sir A. Cooper felt justified in tying the aorta. The operation was performed in April, 1817. He made an incision into the linea alba three inches long, allowing a curve in it to avoid the umbilicus. In this manner the sac of the peritoneum was opened, and the fingers were then conveyed to the artery, which was readily distinguished by its strong pulsations. The peritoneum was then lacerated with the finger-nail, in order to allow the ligature to be conveyed around it at about three-quarters of an inch above its bifurcation. During the operation the fæces were involuntarily discharged. The patient died on the second day after the operation, and his death is ascribed by Sir A. Cooper to want of circulation in the aneurismal limb; which led him to observe that "in an aneurism similarly situated, the ligature must be applied before the swelling has acquired any very considerable magnitude."* In his Surgical Lectures he observes, "If I were to perform this operation again, the only difference that I would make would be to cut the ligature close to the vessel, where it might take its chance either to be encysted or absorbed." A little farther on he observes, "The principal danger appeared to arise from the irritation produced in the intestines by the ligature; and that is the reason why I would cut the ligature close to the vessel." In dissection there were no appearances of peritoneal inflammation.

---

* Med. Ch. Trans., vol. ii. p. 158.

Mr. James's Case.—"The patient, æt. 44, of spare habit, but not otherwise unhealthy, had an aneurism of the external iliac artery, of such extent as to prevent any chance of success from tying the iliac artery above the tumor. It was accordingly determined to tie the femoral artery on the distal side of the aneurism, according to Brasdor's plan. This operation was performed on June 2, 1829. The patient appeared to be going on well until the 12th, after which the tumor gradually increased; and on the 24th the integuments were tense and shining, and there was considerable pain."* Mr. James accordingly felt it his duty to give his patient the only remaining chance, by putting a ligature round the aorta. The operation was accordingly performed, on the 5th of July, in the manner practised by Sir A. Cooper. We shall find, farther on, that the aorta may in general be tied without wounding the peritoneum; but in this case it would have been impracticable, as the serous membrane adhered firmly to the anterior surface of the tumor. The patient died on the evening of the day on which the operation was performed; and on opening the body a remarkable anomaly was observed; the external iliac artery divided, above Poupart's ligament, into two branches; one of which gave off the epigastric, and afterwards represented the profunda, while the other took the course of the femoral artery.

---

* Surgical Essays, vol. i. p. 114.

Dr. Murray's Case.—A Portuguese sailor applied at the Civil Hospital, at the Cape of Good Hope, with a large aneurismal tumor over the site of the external iliac artery.

"The tumor now presents the greatest size and prominence immediately above Poupart's ligament, in the site of the external iliac artery. The most prominent part is tense, shining, and circumscribed, about the size of an orange, and its hard irregular base extends upwards to an imaginary line drawn from the umbilicus to the lower ribs, and downwards to a couple of inches below Poupart's ligament; its lateral boundaries being formed by the ilium and linea alba. Pulsation is felt in the prominent part of the tumor, and a sort of whizzing sound is indistinctly discovered in it on the application of the ear or stethoscope; but there appears to be no circulation in the femoral artery. He does not complain of much pain in the tumor at present, but says it is often excruciatingly severe along the thigh-bone and in the knee. The limb is much swollen, and he keeps it constantly in the bent position, and cannot bear to have it extended. The skin is nearly insensible to the touch, and even to pinching, particularly on the inner part of the thigh; yet he describes having a feeling as if worms and flies were creeping over it. Temperature of the diseased limb, 92 degrees, and of the sound one, 97. Pulse 96, and intermittent; and the action of the heart has a corresponding irregularity. Two or three days ago he had an attack of epistaxis. Tongue covered; respiration natural; intellect clear. Has had scarcely any sleep for many nights, and no motion in his bowels for eleven days."

---

* Med. Ch. Trans., vol. xvi. p. 1.

He was accordingly taken into the Hospital, and medicines calculated to palliate his symptoms were exhibited. After a few days, however, matters were getting manifestly worse. His features were shrunk and exsanguine, limb cold and insensible, and the tumor enlarging and assuming a dark-bluish appearance at its prominent part. He complained that the friction employed to preserve the temperature of the limb was only increasing his pain, and the greatest agony was felt in the thigh and knee. Under these circumstances, it was resolved no longer to defer the operation.

"The operation had to be performed by candle-light, and, moreover, as he lay in bed, that he might not be put to the pain of being moved before and after it.

"The size and position of the tumor precluding the possibility of reaching the aorta by cutting from the right side of the abdomen, rendered this necessary to be done from the left, which fortunately, at the same time, had the advantage of affording the readiest and easiest access to the vessel, on account of its anatomical situation, but greatly increased the difficulty of reaching the right common iliac, to tie it, which it was hoped might be found possible.

"The patient lying inclined to the right side, the first incision was commenced a little in front of the projecting end of the tenth rib, and carried for more than six inches downwards, in a curvilinear direction, to a point an inch in front of the superior anterior spinous process of the ilium, its convexity being towards the spine. The skin, the subcutaneous cellular tissue, and the aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle, were first incised; next the fibres of this muscle; and successively afterwards the layers of the internal oblique and transversalis muscles were displayed and divided; which was found rather a delicate part of the operation, as their fibres contracted spasmodically when touched by the scalpel. The fascia transversalis was now brought beautifully into view, and cautiously divided by a pair of scissors upon a director, to avoid wounding the peritoneum. This membrane being now completely laid bare to nearly the whole extent of the external wounds, was next detached from the fascia covering the iliacus internus and psoæ muscles, chiefly by the hand, introduced flat between these parts, to separate the loose cellular substance connecting them, which was easily effected.

"Whilst detaching the peritoneum in the fossa of the psoæ, I found my fingers get into a soft pulpy mass, and a good deal of dark bloody fluid began to ooze out by the side of my hand, which made me withdraw it and examine the parts by throwing a ray of candle-light into the bottom of the wound, when, from the dark appearance of the parts, my first impression was that they were in a gangrenous state; but I soon discovered that it was caused by ecchymosis, or effusion of bloody serum into the loose cellular texture. I then reintroduced my hand, and gradually prosecuted the detaching of the peritoneum in the direction of the spine, till I came to a large pulsating vessel, which I found to be the upper part of the left common iliac, and in another minute the aorta itself was under my finger; to satisfy myself of which, I requested one of the gentlemen assisting me to place his ear on the tumor, and his hand on the left femoral artery, when he heard and felt the pulsation to stop and recommence in each, as I compressed the vessel, or the contrary. I now endeavored to reach the right common iliac, but found that the walls of the tumor extended nearly close up to the bifurcation of the aorta; and, even had this obstacle not existed, I do not think there is scope for the hand to perform the necessary manipulations to place a ligature upon that vessel from the left side, without using a degree of force, and causing a laceration of parts, that would be inconsistent with due professional caution, humanity, and judgment.

"A tedious and rather difficult part of the operation succeeded; viz., the making a division in the aortic plexus of nerves, and in the membranous sheath covering the aorta, to get betwixt the vessel and the spine, which I effected partly by the steel end of an elevator cranii, but chiefly by my nails, *with my mind at my fingers' ends;* and I was not a little rejoiced when I had got a sufficient separation, to be able to insert the point of the aneurism-needle beyond and behind it; after which I was soon able to get it, with the ligature, round the vessel, without including any portion of nerve or other extraneous substance. In this manœuvre it was with difficulty that the longest-handled aneurism-needle could be made to reach the necessary depth. The ends of the ligatures being brought out, the aorta was gently raised upon it, which enabled us, by holding up the peritoneal bag, to see this great vessel pulsating at an awful rate.

"The noose of the ligature was then gradually tightened till all pulsation and circulation was found to have decidedly ceased in the left groin; and we anxiously watched the general effect upon the patient whilst this and the second knot were being tied.

"The pulse at the wrist, during the time, underwent no sensible alteration, either in strength, fulness, or frequency; nor did the vascular organization of the head seem to be abnormally congested or excited by the sudden check to this great stream of the circulation. The tightening of the knot did not seem to occasion him any great pain, nor to cause any unusual sensation or shock in the vascular, nervous, or respiratory systems. His first complaint was, that his *left leg had become as benumbed and useless as his right*, and that we had done him bad service in laming his good leg, which he did not expect, and lamented it bitterly: on feeling the aorta, it was found to be full, and pulsating with very great strength, above the ligature, but empty and motionless below it. The ends of the ligature were now brought out exteriorly, and the lips of the wound drawn together by three sutures and adhesive straps, over which a compress and bandage were applied.

"The operation was more tedious than difficult; and being effected chiefly out of sight by the hand, it had not the terrific appearance which that by the method of cutting into the cavity of the abdomen must have, and it was accomplished with the loss of less than two ounces of blood. At one time, during its performance, he required to get some brandy and water to support him; but when it was over, he seemed quite as well as before its commencement; and the pulse was 128, steady and regular."

After the operation he felt deadness of the left thigh and leg, and complained of painful distention of the bladder, though it was empty. Afterwards he became easier, and smoked a cigar, and slept a little at intervals. Soon, however, he began to complain of violent pain in the pubic region and loins. Tongue was now dry and dark, strong pulsation of the carotid, and feeble pulse at the wrist, followed by jactitation: cold clammy sweats. No natural warmth ever returned to the lower limbs, and he died twenty-three hours after the operation. On dissection, it was found that the artery had been secured opposite the interval between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ; no extraneous substance was included, and "the aortic plexus of nerves had been accurately divided." Specks of ulceration were observed on the mucous membrane of the bladder.

The vessels of the lower part of the body having been injected, a few drops of the size injection were found in a small anastomosing vessel, discovered passing between the inferior mesenteric artery and left internal iliac; it arose about two and a half inches below the origin of the mesenteric artery, (from the hemorrhoidal branch of it, which seemed larger than usual,) and joined one of the upper branches of the internal iliac, being in length about two inches; but its calibre was so small, having only admitted two or three drops of the colored size, that it probably never carried red blood during life. No corresponding vessel was to be found on the right side, nor could any further anastomoses be discovered between the arteries of the abdominal aorta and those of the pelvis or lower extremities. The branches of the thoracic aorta were not injected, and therefore not examined.*

Dr. Monteiro's case. The subject of this operation labored under a large false aneurism, forming a tumor on the lower and right side of the abdomen and upper part of the thigh. The incisions were made pretty similar to those in Dr. Murray's case. The operation was performed at Rio Janeiro in 1842. The aorta was secured within the ligature after a good deal of difficulty in the operation: the patient died at the expiration of the tenth day after, from hemorrhage, which took place from a small opening in the vessel close to the ligature. On examination after death it was found that the ligature had been applied about four lines above the bifurcation of the aorta, and that the precise nature of the original disease was an aneurism of the femoral artery in which the coats of the vessel had given way.

Mr. South's case. No authentic report of Mr. South's operation of ligature of the abdominal aorta has been as yet published by himself; he has, however, most kindly favored me with the following interesting particulars connected with his case:—"The man was thirty years of age and a hard drinker, —had had a strange uneasy sensation two months before his admission, and six weeks after noticed a small hard pulsating swelling in his right groin, which grew rapidly, and when admitted was as big as a goose egg.—Soon suffered paroxysms of violent pain, and leg became numb. Eleven days after, the aorta was tied without difficulty by a cut from the tip of the tenth rib to the superior iliac spine. In course of a few hours, first one, and subsequently the other limb became discolored; was in constant profuse perspiration, and exceedingly restless. Died forty-two hours after. Examination showed false aneurism of right external iliac artery."

---

* Lond. Med. Gaz., 1834.

The foregoing cases suggest the following considerations:—In certain *wounds* the ligature of the aorta may be attempted: —in *aneurism* it can only be had recourse to in order to prolong life for a few days, as no surgeon would venture to propose so serious an operation for an early aneurism; and in an old one it will in all probability fail, or may hasten the death of the patient. Under these circumstances, would it not be more advisable to have recourse to internal or medical treatment than to propose an operation of so serious a character, and which we have no reason for hoping may be attended with success? In considering the dangers and difficulty of the operation, it may be well to observe that Dr. Murray's case shows that the aorta may be generally tied, without wounding the peritoneum; and Mr. South's case that it may be tied "without difficulty."

The branches of the abdominal aorta are the following, and from above downwards they arise in the following order:—

Proper Phrenic, or
Sub-Phrenic.
Renal.
Spermatic.

Cœliac Axis.
Superior Mesenteric.
Capsular.
Inferior Mesenteric.
Lumbar.
Middle Sacral.

These arteries should, however, be dissected in the succeeding order:—

The **Cœliac Axis** may be exposed by either of the following methods: the liver may be drawn upwards and the stomach downwards; by this means the gastro-hepatic or lesser omentum which connects them, will be brought into view: the anterior layer of this portion of the peritoneum being divided with caution near the pyloric end of the stomach, the hepatic vessels will be exposed, and the hepatic artery, by this dissection, may be easily traced to its origin. The cœliac axis may be also exposed by turning up the stomach together with the liver, and by tearing through the transverse mesocolon so as to arrive at the back part of the gastro-hepatic omentum. This artery arises opposite the body of the twelfth dorsal vertebra, and takes a direction downwards, forwards, and more frequently to the left than to the right side. After a course of about half an inch, it terminates by dividing into the gastric, hepatic, and splenic arteries. The cœliac axis has the superior margin of the pancreas beneath it, and this gland is frequently notched by the artery in this situation: on its sides are the crura of the diaphragm, and the semilunar ganglia, which unite both above and below the artery, so as to form a nervous collar around its origin, from which streams forth a tube of nervous filaments, forming the solar plexus, which surrounds the artery. In front of this artery we find the lesser omentum; the Spigelian lobe of the liver lies above and to its right side.

The branches given off by the cœliac axis are the following:—

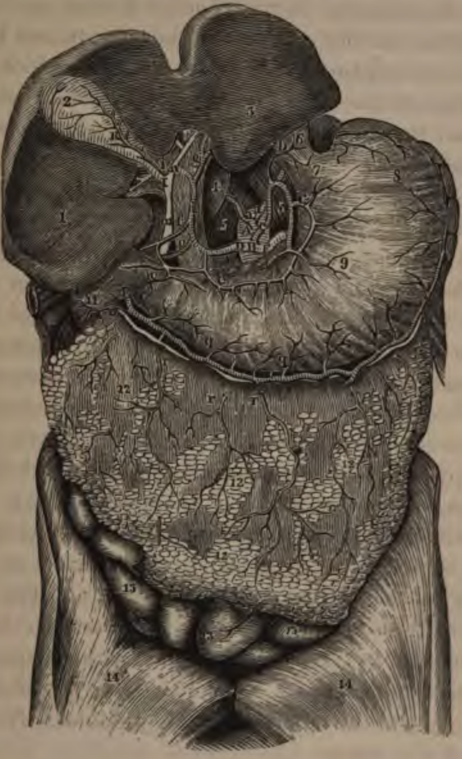
Gastric, or
  Coronaria Ventriculi.
Hepatic.
Splenic.

The GASTRIC ARTERY, or CORONARIA VENTRICULI, is smaller than the hepatic or splenic; it proceeds at first upwards, forwards, and to the left side, to reach the cardiac orifice of the stomach: in this situation it often sends a large branch to the left lobe of the liver; but its constant branches are—first, an *œsophageal branch* or *branches*, which ascend, one in front of, the other, the more remarkable, behind the œsophagus: they supply this tube and anastomose with the œsophageal branches of the thoracic aorta; secondly, some *coronary branches*, which surround the cardiac orifice; and, thirdly, a long *descending branch*, which follows the lesser curvature of the stomach, lying in a kind of triangular canal situated between the layers of the lesser omentum and the stomach: the artery is in this situation accompanied by some lymphatic vessels and glands, and by several branches of the left pneumogastric nerve: it sends numerous divisions over both surfaces of the stomach, and thus communicates with the arteries running along its convex margin. Having arrived near the pylorus, it terminates in anastomosing with the superior pyloric, which is a branch of the hepatic artery.

We shall find that not the gastric artery only, but the three divisions of the cœliac axis supply the stomach, so that its margin is in fact circumscribed by vessels. The gastric branches of these vessels are situated between the layers of the peritoneum, and are not in contact with the margins of the stomach, unless in its distended state: this observation does not apply to the minute divisions which ramify on both surfaces of this viscus.

The HEPATIC ARTERY is smaller than the splenic in the adult, but larger in the fœtus: it proceeds at first almost transversely along the superior margin of the pancreas, and beneath the Spigelian lobe of the liver, towards the upper and posterior surface of the pyloric extremity of the stomach: in this situation it gives off two branches, viz., the pylorica superior and gastro-duodenalis, and then proceeds upwards, for-

Fig. 35.—Represents the Arteries of the Stomach and Liver.



A, Abdominal Aorta. B, Cœliac Axis. D, Hepatic Artery. E, The Splenic Artery. a, a, Proper Phrenic or Sub-phrenic Arteries. b, Anterior Œsophageal branch from Coronary Artery. c, c, Gastric or Coronary Artery. d, Hepatic Artery. e, Superior Pyloric Artery anastomosing with the descending branch of Gastric Artery. f, The Vena Portæ. g, Left Hepatic Artery. i, Right Hepatic Artery. k, Cystic Artery. m, Ductus Choledochus Communis. n, Hepatic Duct. I, Union of Cystic and Hepatic Ducts, to form the Ductus Communis. o, The Gastro-duodenalis Artery. p, Gastro-epiploica Dextra Artery. q. q. Anastomosis between the Right and Left Epiploic Arteries. r, r, r, Omental branches from Epiploic Artery. 1, Under-surface of right Lobe of Liver. 2, Gall-bladder. 3, Under-surface of left Lobe of Liver. 4, Lobulus Spigelii. 5, 5, Pillars of the Diaphragm. 6, Œsophagus. 7, 8. 9, Stomach. 10, Pylorus. 11, Duodenum. 12, 12, 12, 12, The Great Omentum. 13, 13, 13, The Small Intestines. 14, 14, Peritoneum.

wards, and to the right side, surrounded by a considerable quantity of areolar tissue and branches of the solar plexus of nerves, all of which are situated between the two layers of the lesser omentum: in this part of its course it has the vena portæ behind it, and the ductus choledochus to its right side. Having arrived in this manner within about an inch of the liver, it terminates by dividing into the right and left hepatic arteries, having, as already stated, previously given off the superior pyloric and gastro-duodenalis.

The *Superior Pyloric artery* is small, and descends from right to left along the lesser curvature of the stomach: it supplies this organ, and anastomoses directly with the descending branch of the gastric artery, and by small branches which run across the stomach both anteriorly and posteriorly, with the arteries running along the great curvature of the stomach. The superior pyloric sometimes arises from the right hepatic.

The *Gastro-duodenalis artery*, about two inches in length, descends behind the first portion of the duodenum, which it separates from the head of the pancreas, and divides into the gastro-epiploica dextra, and the pancreatico-duodenalis: the *gastro-epiploica dextra*, considerably larger than the latter, proceeds from right to left along the greater curvature of the stomach, both surfaces of which it supplies, and terminates in anastomosing with the gastro-epiploica sinistra, which is a branch of the splenic: its stomachic branches anastomose with the superior pyloric and gastric artery, and with the vasa brevia, while other long straight branches descend from its convexity, between the layers of the great omentum, to supply the transverse colon. The *pancreatico-duodenalis*, very small, descends between the head of the pancreas and second portion of the duodenum: it supplies both of these parts, and sends a delicate branch between the inferior margin of the pancreas, and the third portion of the duodenum, to anastomose with the superior mesenteric artery.

The *right terminating branch of the hepatic artery* ascends between the hepatic and cystic ducts anteriorly, and the vena portæ and its right branch posteriorly, and sinks into the right extremity of the transverse fissure, to supply the liver: immediately after having passed behind the hepatic duct it gives off the *cystic artery*, which ascends between the hepatic and cystic ducts, and divides into two branches, one of which is distributed on the superior and the other on the inferior surface of the gall-bladder.

The *left terminating branch of the hepatic artery*, smaller than the right, ascends in front of the left branch of the vena portæ, ultimately gets behind it, and sinks into the left extremity of the transverse fissure to supply the liver.

CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD IN THE LIVER.

The *Vena Portæ* is formed by the junction of the splenic vein, after it has received the inferior mesenteric, with the superior mesenteric vein. The trunk of this large vein commences on the front of the aorta, behind the superior margin of the pancreas, and opposite to the first lumbar vertebra: it then takes a direction upwards, and to the right side, to reach the transverse fissure of the liver, in which it divides into a right and left branch. In this course it is at first behind and between the hepatic artery and ductus choledochus, and higher up it is directly behind them. In the adult, the right branch, shorter and larger than the left, and more in the direction of the trunk itself, soon sinks into the right extremity of the transverse fissure, to supply the right lobe; the left proceeds in the opposite direction, takes a longer course, forming nearly a right angle with the trunk, and sinks into the left lobe.

We shall now endeavor to explain the distribution of these vessels in the fœtus, and the manner in which the subsequent changes in their arrangement are effected.

The *Umbilical Vein in the Fœtus* runs obliquely upwards, backwards, and to the right side, in the posterior or free margin of the falciform ligament of the liver: having arrived in the umbilical or horizontal fissure of this gland, it sends several branches to its left lobe, and one or two small ones to the lobulus quadratus; then continuing its course backwards, it receives the left branch of the vena portæ; after having communicated with this branch, it passes between the Spigelian and left lobes of the liver, and in this part of its course receives the name of the *ductus venosus*, which terminates finally in the inferior cava, or left hepatic vein.

The *Vena Portæ in the Fœtus* divides into two branches; one of which sinks into the right lobe, the other runs towards the left lobe of the liver and terminates in communicating with the umbilical vein.

On examining the distribution of these two large veins in the fœtal liver, we will perceive that in reality the right lobe receives blood from the vena portæ only, but the left from both the portal and umbilical veins. This explains why the left lobe is so well developed at this period of life. After birth, however, the ductus venosus becomes entirely obliterated, but of the umbilical vein its left branches and a part of its trunk remain pervious, viz., that part of it in the immediate neighborhood of the transverse fissure; for otherwise there would be no way for the blood of the porta to arrive at the left lobe of the liver. All the rest of the umbilical vein is obliterated.

The use generally ascribed to the vena portæ is to convey to the liver the materials for the secretion of the bile. Some, however, insist that the bile is secreted from arterial blood; and others, as Mr. Phillips, that it may be indifferently secreted from either. In favor of the secretion from the portal blood, it has been said that the bile is of an oily character, and that the venous blood, being highly charged with carbon and hydrogen, is the best suited for its production. To this it has been replied, that fat, though compounded of carbon and hydrogen, is nevertheless separated by exhalation from the arterial blood. Again, the size of the vena portæ is said by those who suppose the bile derived from it, to be suited to the size of the liver; while the other party reply, that the vessel should be compared with the duct and not with the gland, they maintain that there is a proper proportion between the size of the hepatic artery and hepatic duct. There are at least four* cases on record, in which the vena portæ did not go at all to the liver, but terminated in the inferior cava. It would appear, however, that in one of these cases the portal system of the liver was not absent, but the peculiarity was, that it commenced in a cul de sac. The same would probably be found in the other cases if they had been accurately examined. M. Simon found, that if the hepatic artery be tied in pigeons, the secretion of the bile continues; if the portal vein and ducts be tied, it ceases; and if the ducts alone be tied, the liver is gorged with bile. Mr. Phillips infers from his experiments, that the blood may be secreted from the blood of either artery or vein, as, whichever vessel was tied, the secretion continued.

We shall now present the student with an abstract of Mr. Kiernan's valuable observations concerning the circulation and structure of the liver. Previous to his researches, it was supposed that the liver consisted of two different kinds of substance, termed *the red tissue* and *yellow tissue.* Mr. Kiernan, however, by a series of well-conducted experiments, has shown that the red color depends on congestion of the blood-vessels, and the yellow color on the absence of it. In order to make this more clear, let us attend to his exposition of the structure and arrangement of the vessels in the liver. According to Mr. Kiernan, each *lobule* of the liver has a conical form, and when divided longitudinally presents a foliated appearance; and through its axis passes a small vein, termed the *intra-lobular vein*. This vein terminates at a right angle in a larger vein, which is applied to *the base* of the lobule; this is accordingly called a *sub-lobular vein*. The sub-lobular veins terminate in the *venæ cavæ hepaticæ*, and these again in the *vena cava inferior*. Now, all that portion of the exterior of a lobule, which does not constitute its base, is termed its *capsular surface*, because it is in contact with, and separated from, the surrounding lobules by a process of the *capsule of Glisson*, which serves as a capsule for the lobule. Mr. Kiernan considers that the capsule of Glisson "is to the liver what the pia mater is to the brain; it is a cellulo-vascular membrane, in which the vessels divide and subdivide to an extreme degree of minuteness; it lines the portal canals, forming sheaths for the larger vessels contained in them, and a web in which the smaller vessels ramify; it enters the interlobular fissures, and with the vessels forms the capsules of the lobules; and it finally enters the lobules, and with the blood-vessels, expands itself over the secreting biliary ducts. Hence arises a natural division of the capsule into three portions, a *vaginal*, an *interlobular*, and a *lobular* portion; and as the vessels ramify in the capsule, their branches admit of a similar division." Thus, according to Mr. Kiernan, the capsule of Glisson enters the transverse fissure of the liver, and forms an internal lining for those canals called the *portal canals*, which convey the larger divisions of the vena portæ into the interior of the organ; this, which is called the *vaginal portion* of the capsule of Glisson, invests the primary divisions of the vena portæ, hepatic artery, and the larger portions of the hepatic ducts: the term *vaginal branches* has, therefore, been applied to these divisions of the vessels surrounded by the vaginal portion of the capsule. The minute divisions of these three sets of vessels, together with the lobular portion of the capsule of Glisson, constitute the principal part of the lobules, so that, according to Mr. Kiernan, each lobule is composed, "on the outer surface of a capsule formed by a process of Glisson's capsule, of a plexus of biliary ducts, of a venous plexus formed by branches of the portal vein, of a branch of an hepatic vein, and of minute arteries: nerves and absorbents, it is to be presumed, also enter into their formation, but cannot be traced to them." By taking the duct, artery, and vena portæ separately, we shall find how they are disposed of in the liver. First; the *ducts* penetrate the capsular surfaces of the lobules, and form in the interior of each, an extensive *lobular biliary plexus;* from this plexus the bile passes into the *interlobular* branches, and then into the *vaginal biliary plexus* which goes to form the *hepatic ducts.* Secondly; when the branches of the *hepatic artery* pass into the portal canals, they give off *vaginal* branches; these form the vaginal plexus of arteries which gives off the *interlobular* branches; these pass through the interlobular fissures and give off the *lobular* branches which also penetrate the capsular surface of the lobules: they supply the parenchyma of the lobules, and the coats of all the vessels; and the surplus quantity of blood not required for the nutrition of these parts, is conveyed into the minute branches of the vena portæ. Mr. Kiernan remarks concerning the function of the *hepatic arteries,* "I conclude that the secreting portion of the liver, like the excreting portion of the kidney, is supplied with arterial blood for nutrition only. As all the branches of the artery of which we can ascertain the termination, end in branches of the portal vein, it is probable that the lobular arteries terminate in the lobular venous plexus formed by that vein, and not in the intra-lobular branches of the hepatic veins, which cannot be injected from the artery, the blood of these arteries, after having nourished the lobules, becoming venous, and thus contributing to the secretion of bile." Thirdly; after the *vena portæ* has reached the transverse fissure of the liver, it divides into branches which enter into the *portal canals:* here they give off the *vaginal* branches which constitute the vaginal plexus; these then give off the *interlobular* branches, which in their turn give off the lobular branches. Finally; these last, after piercing the capsular surface of the lobules, form, in their interior, a *portal plexus* or the *lobular venous plexus of the porta*, which, having received, as above mentioned, part of the blood conveyed by the arteries, furnishes the material for the secretion of the bile. Hence it appears that the bile is not secreted from arterial blood, but from venous derived from two different sources, one from the returned blood of the hepatic arteries which flows into the portal veins, the other from the venous blood of the porta itself. Thus, the branches of the vena portæ act as veins to the hepatic artery, and as arteries to the hepatic veins, which receive the surplus quantity of blood not employed in secretion. Now the appearances of the yellow and red tissues can be readily explained. The red tissue is owing to venous congestion: when this occurs in the hepatic system of veins, the centre of each lobule will be dark from engorgement of the intra-lobular veins; and, *vice versa*, when the congestion occurs in the portal system, the centre of the lobule will be light (constituting the appearance of yellow tissue), but the circumference red, by engorgement of the portal veins investing it; so that in one case we shall have dark spots on a pale ground; and in the other, pale spots on a dark ground. Mr. Kiernan could produce these appearances at pleasure, in experiments on animals, both in the liver, and also in kidneys of those animals that have a portal renal circulation.

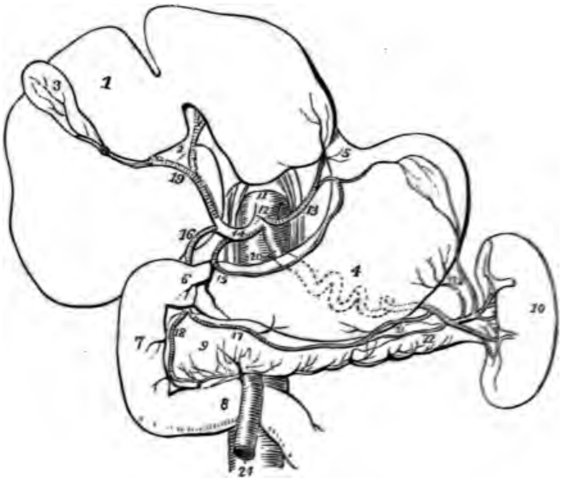
---

* Lieutaud, Hist. Anat. Med., tom. i. p. 190.
Huber, Observ. Anat., p. 34.
Abernethy, Phil. Trans., 1793.
Lawrence, Med. Chirurg. Trans., vol. v. p. 174.

According to Todd and Bowman, in the human subject the lobules are not isolated by a distinct capsule, but are only imperfectly marked out by the several points of their exterior, to which the ultimate twigs of the portal vein and duct arrive.

The SPLENIC ARTERY proceeds from its origin to the left side in a very tortuous manner along a groove in the back part of the upper margin of the pancreas: posterior to it are the left crus of the diaphragm, left semilunar ganglion, and supra-renal capsule of the same side; the stomach covers it

Fig. 36.—Distribution of the Cœliac Artery.



1, Liver turned upward, and showing its lower surface. 2, Transverse Fissure. 3, Gall-bladder. 4, Stomach. 5, Œsophagus. 6, 7, 8, Duodenum. 9, Pancreas. 10, Spleen. 11, Aorta. 12, Cœliac Artery. 13, Coronary Artery. 14, Hepatic Artery. 15. Pyloric Artery. 16, Gastro-duodenal Artery. 17, Right Gastro-epiploic Artery. 18, Pancreatico-duodenal Artery. 19, Hepatic Artery dividing into the right and left branches for the Liver. 20, Splenic Artery; its course indicated behind the stomach by dotted lines 21, Left Gastro-epiploic Artery. 22, Pancreatic branch. 23, Gastric branches. 24, Superior Mesenteric Artery, emerging from between the Pancreas and Duodenum.

in front, and the splenic vein lies inferior to it, and in the same groove in the pancreas. Whilst the artery is remarkable for its tortuosity, the vein presents a comparatively straight course from the hilus lienis to its termination in the porta. On approaching the spleen, the artery divides into five or six terminating branches, which enter the fissure, *or hilus lienis*, on its concave surface. The branches given off by the splenic artery in this course are, first, small branches, *pancreaticæ parvæ*, variable in number, to the pancreas: secondly, a large branch to the pancreas, *pancreatica magna*, which sometimes accompanies the duct of this gland, but is often deficient: thirdly, the *vasa brevia,* some of which come from the trunk of the splenic, and others from the branches which enter the spleen; they are five or six in number, and are reflected to the bulging extremity of the stomach, where they communicate freely with the other arteries supplying this organ: lastly, *the gastro-epiploica sinistra,* which sometimes arises from one of the terminating branches of the splenic, and proceeds from left to right along the great curvature of the stomach, to anastomose with the gastro-epiploica dextra, and to give off similar ascending and descending branches.

When the arteries penetrate the spleen, they soon break abruptly into numerous fine branches, compared to the hairs of a camel-hair pencil: these branches do not communicate with each other, but terminate in veins that form numerous plexuses. There are no cells in the spleen, as formerly represented. The following passage, describing the structure of the spleen, is extracted from Baly's translation of Muller:—

"The spleen is invested by a strong fibrous membrane, which sends numerous band-like processes into its interior, so as to support the soft, pulpy, red tissue of the organ. In the red substance there are contained, in many animals, whitish, round corpuscles, visible by the naked eye, which were first discovered by Malpighi, and of which the existence in the human spleen has been at one time admitted, at another denied.

"The red pulpy substance consists of a mass of red-brown granules, as large as the red particles of the blood, but differing from them in form, being irregularly globular, not flattened. These granules are easily separable from each other. In the mass which they form, the minute arteries ramify in tufts, and terminate in the plexus of venous canals, into which all the blood of the spleen is poured before it is carried out of the organ by the splenic vein. The anastomosing venous radicles, which are of considerable size, appear to have scarcely any distinct coats. If a portion of the pulpy substance of the spleen is examined more closely, it is seen to be everywhere perforated with small foramina, which are spaces bounded by the reticulated substance of the organ. These spaces are venous canals: on inflating them the organ acquires a cellular appearance; and if they are injected with wax, the substance of the spleen will present a great resemblance to the corpora cavernosa penis. There are no true cells in the spleen. The white corpuscles are imbedded in the pulpy substance, and not contained in cells, as Malpighi supposed. A fibrous trabecular tissue intersects in all directions the very soft, pulpy red substance, and affords support to the texture of the organ."

Cruveilhier observes, that if we inject the arteries of the spleen, it enlarges slowly; but if we inject the veins, it enlarges at once, showing that the connection between the arteries and the venous plexus is not so free as between the latter and the veins.

In speaking of the veins of the spleen, Mr. Gray mentions three modes in which these vessels commence—first, as continuations of the capillaries of the arteries; this is the most common method: secondly, in intercellular spaces in the substance of the pulpy material of the spleen, through which the veins communicate with each other: thirdly, by forming an imperfect capsule to each Malpighian corpuscle. This last mode of the commencement of the veins of the spleen has not been described by other writers: Mr. Gray considers that the secretion of the Malpighian corpuscles is carried into the circulation through these small veins which form this capsule.

The SUPERIOR MESENTERIC ARTERY, nearly as large as the cœliac axis, and sometimes even larger, arises about a quarter or half an inch lower down than that vessel, from the aorta; it first descends a little to the left, behind the splenic vein and pancreas, and on the front of the abdominal aorta; having reached the lower margin of the pancreas, it becomes separated from the aorta by the third portion of the duodenum, and the left renal vein. In the next part of its course it descends behind the transverse mesocolon, and then between the laminæ of the mesentery, to arrive at the ileum near its termination; it then ascends along this intestine towards the cæcum: in this course it has its vein to its right side, and it describes a curvature, the convexity of which looks downwards and to the left side. It first gives *small branches to the pancreas and duodenum*, which anastomose with the pancreatico-duodenalis artery; lower down it gives off two sets of branches, viz., one from its convexity, or left side; the other from its concavity, or right side.

The *Branches from the Convexity* are fifteen to twenty in number: they are contained between the layers of the mesentery, and destined for the ileum, jejunum, and third portion of the duodenum. Each of them, after a short course, divides into two branches, which anastomose with the branches of the adjacent arteries, so as to form a series of arches. From the convexities of these, smaller arteries arise, which likewise bifurcate, forming a second and lesser series of arches with those adjacent; and in the same manner a third and fourth, and, in some cases, a fifth series is formed, gradually approaching the intestine, and diminishing in size: the entire arrangement presents an areolar appearance in the mesentery; and when the ultimate branches (which advance in straight lines) reach the intestine for which they are destined, they encircle it, and form a delicate vascular stratum in its sub-mucous areolar tissue.

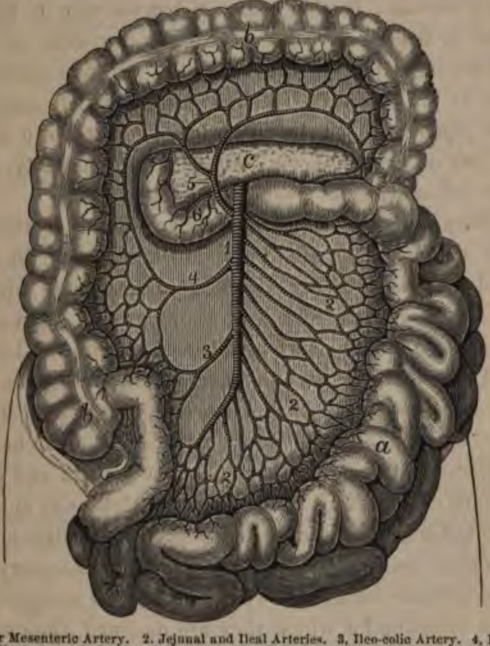
The *Branches from the Concavity* are three in number, viz.:

Colica Media, Colica Dextra, and Ileo-Colic.

These arteries are considerably longer than the preceding: they are contained between the layers of the mesocolon, and are destined to supply the arch of the colon, the right or ascending colon, and the cæcum, with part of the ileum.

The *Colica Media* goes horizontally forward between the laminæ of the transverse mesocolon, and soon divides into a right and a left branch; the former of which anastomoses with the superior branch of the colica dextra, and the latter with the superior branch of the colica sinistra, which is a branch of the inferior mesenteric: this artery supplies the arch or middle portion of the colon.

Fig. 37.—Distribution of the Superior Mesenteric Artery.



1, Superior Mesenteric Artery. 2. Jejunal and Ileal Arteries. 3, Ileo-colic Artery. 4, Right Colic. 5, Middle Colic Artery. 6, Duodenal Artery. *a*, Small Intestine turned to the left. *b*, Large Intestine. *c*, Pancreas.

The *Colica Dextra* passes towards the right colon, near which it divides into—a *superior* branch, which anastomoses with the right branch of the colica media; and an *inferior* branch, which descends to anastomose with the superior branch of the ileo-colic artery: it supplies the ascending colon.

The *Ileo-Colic branch* appears to be the termination of the superior mesenteric; it runs downwards, and to the right side, towards the cæcum. Before it reaches the intestine, however, it divides into three branches,—the *superior* of which ascends to anastomose with the colica dextra; the *inferior* descends to anastomose with the terminating branches from the convexity of the superior mesenteric artery; while the *middle* branch passes behind the cæcum, and terminates in supplying the ileum, cæcum, and vermiform appendix.

In the fœtus, the superior mesenteric artery gives off an *omphalo-mesenteric branch*, which proceeds along the umbilical cord to be lost on the vesicula umbilicalis. It is usually obliterated at the end of the second month, but Cruveilhier saw it in an acephalous fœtus at the ninth month.

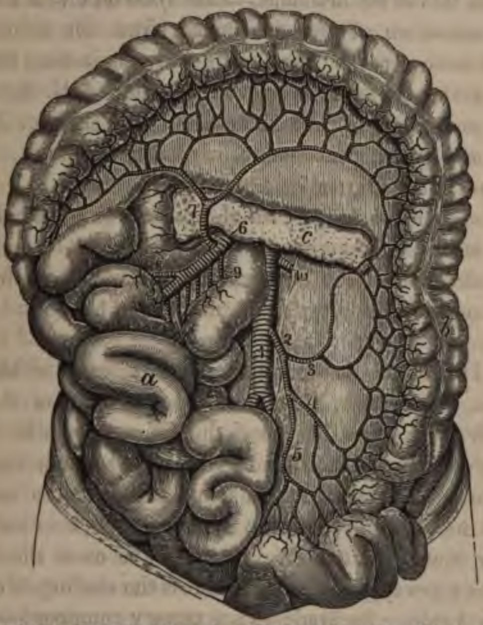
The INFERIOR MESENTERIC ARTERY, smaller than the preceding, arises from the anterior and left part of the aorta, about an inch and a half above its bifurcation. It first descends on the aorta, between the layers of the mesocolon, and then turns over the left common iliac artery to terminate behind the rectum. This terminating branch is called the superior hæmorrhoidal. In the above course, the inferior mesenteric artery forms an arch, the convexity of which looks to the left side. Its branches are three in number:—

Colica Sinistra. Arteria Sigmoidea; and
Superior Hæmorrhoidal.

The *Colica Sinistra* ascends between the layers of the left mesocolon, and divides into a superior and inferior branch; the *former* anastomoses with the colica media, and the *latter* with the sigmoid artery.

The *Sigmoid artery* crosses the front of the psoas muscle, and divides into a *superior* branch, which communicates with the colica sinistra, and an *inferior* branch, which terminates in supplying the sigmoid flexure of the colon, and in anastomosing with the superior hæmorrhoidal. This artery also supplies the psoas and iliacus muscles and the ureter.

Fig. 38.—Distribution of the Inferior Mesenteric Artery.



1, Aorta. 2, Inferior Mesenteric Artery. 3. Left Colic Artery. 4, Sigmoid Artery. 5, Superior Hæmorrhoidal Artery. 6, Superior Mesenteric Artery. 7, Middle Colic Artery anastomosing with the left and the right (8) Colic Arteries. 9. Branches to the small Intestine. 10, Left Renal Artery. a, Small Intestine turned to the right side. b, Large Intestine. c, Pancreas.

The *Superior Hæmorrhoidal artery* cannot well be examined until the arteries of the pelvis have been dissected. If we suppose the rectum divided into three stages,—a superior, middle, and inferior,—we find that in the superior stage it is surrounded with peritoneum, and has a meso-rectum: in the middle stage it has no meso-rectum, but is covered by peritoneum upon its anterior part, and on a portion of its sides: in the inferior stage it has no peritoneal covering. Now, we find the artery distributed in conformity with this arrangement; for in the first of these stages it descends as a single trunk between the layers of the meso-rectum; it then divides, about four inches from the anus, into two branches; and these, in the second stage, follow (one on either side) the line of reflection of the peritoneum from the side of the rectum; lastly, in the third stage the terminating branches of the artery are numerous, and distributed all round the inferior extremity of the intestine. The superior hæmorrhoidal artery communicates freely with the hæmorrhoidal branches of the internal iliac and pudic arteries.

In case of hemorrhage into the rectum from the hæmorrhoidal arteries, a membranous tube closed at one end may be introduced into the rectum, and through the other cold water may be injected with a syringe, so as to distend it, and thus compress the bleeding vessels on the surface of the gut. The water can be occasionally renewed without withdrawing the tube. Or, which is preferable, as in the case of hemorrhage after the operation for fistula in ano, or after the excision of hæmorrhoidal tumors, a small fine linen bag, open at one end, and provided with tapes, may be introduced into the rectum, and through the external or open extremity a quantity of charpie may be introduced, so as to distend the bag; the tapes may be then tied across the stuffing of charpie, and the dressing secured: the necessary compression on the bleeding vessels of the intestines will be thus effected.

The liver, stomach, spleen, and intestines may now be examined and removed, after which the student may proceed with the dissection of the deeper arteries within the cavity of the abdomen.

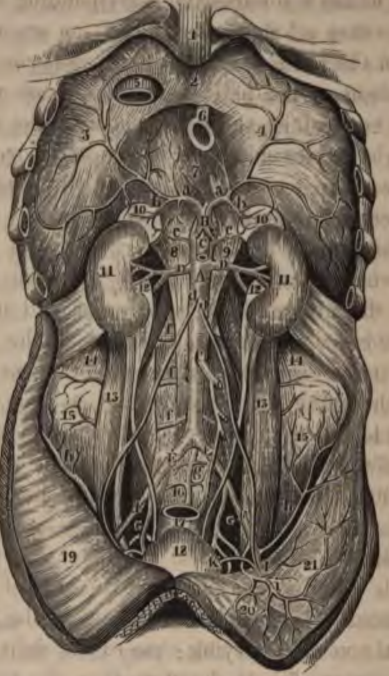
The PROPER PHRENIC ARTERIES, called also the inferior phrenic or sub-phrenic, are the first branches of the abdominal aorta; they arise immediately above the cœliac axis, from the front of the vessel. The artery on the right side passes upward, forward, and outward, between the right crus of the diaphragm, which lies behind it, and the inferior cava, which is in front: that of the left side takes a similar direction, separating the left crus of the diaphragm from the œsophagus. Having arrived at the posterior extremity of the cordiform tendon of the diaphragm, each artery communicates behind this tendon with its fellow of the opposite side, and then divides into external and anterior branches; these ramify in the substance of the diaphragm, and inosculate with the other arteries which supply this muscle. The artery of the right side sends branches to the liver through its coronary ligament, and that of the left side sends a branch to the œsophagus. The external branches anastomose with the intercostal arteries; and the anterior branches communicate with the internal mammary, and with the branches of the opposite side, in front of the cordiform tendon: in this manner there is a kind of arterial circle formed around this tendon.

Soon after its origin, the inferior phrenic gives off the *superior capsular artery*, to supply the upper portion of the supra-renal capsule.

The MIDDLE CAPSULAR ARTERIES are usually two in number, viz. one on each side: they arise from the aorta a little above the renal. Each of them proceeds transversely outwards, to arrive at the concave margin of the corresponding supra-renal capsule, and divides into a number of branches which ramify in the sinuosities on its anterior and posterior surfaces, and in its interior. In this course it gives a few branches to the pillars of the diaphragm, to the psoas muscle, and to the adipose and areolar tissue in the neighborhood.

The RENAL ARTERIES are two in number, one on each

Fig. 39.—The Abdominal Aorta and its deep Branches.



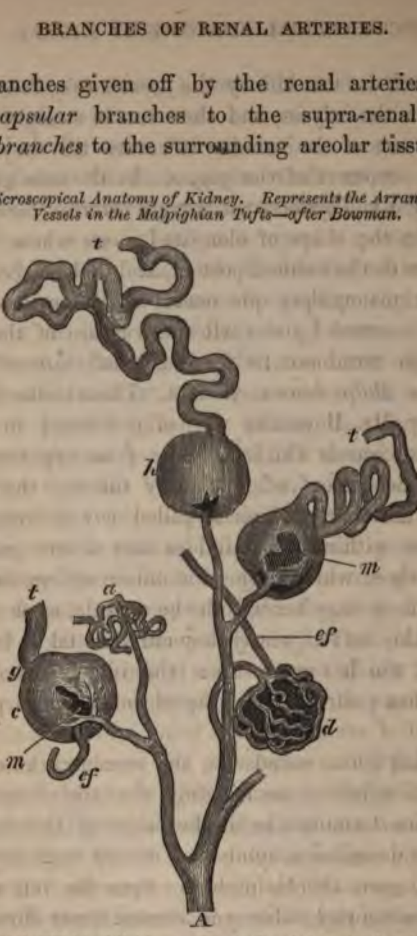
A, Abdominal Aorta between the Pillars of the Diaphragm. B, Cœliac Axis, dividing into the Gastric, Hepatic, and Splenic Arteries. C, Superior Mesenteric Artery, cut. D, D, Renal Arteries. E, E, Common Iliac Arteries. F, F, External Iliac Arteries. G, G, Internal Iliac Arteries. a, a, Inferior Phrenic Arteries. b, b, Superior Capsular Arteries. c, c, Middle Capsular Arteries. d, d, Spermatic Arteries. e, Inferior Mesenteric Artery. f, f, f, Lumbar Arteries of right side. g, Middle Sacral Artery. h, h, Internal Circumflexæ Ilii Arteries. i, Epigastric Artery. K, Vas Deferens. l, Internal Abdominal Ring. 1, Xiphoid Cartilage or Appendix. 2, 3, 4, Diaphragm. 5, Opening for Inferior Cava. 6, Œsophageal Opening. 7, Union of the Pillars. 8, 9, Pillars of the Diaphragm. 10, 10, Supra-Renal Capsules. 11, 11, The Kidneys. 12, 12, Pelvis of the Kidney. 13, 13, Psoas Magnus Muscles. 14, 14, Quadratus Lumborum. 15, 15, Internal Iliac Muscle. 16, Promontory of the Sacrum. 17, Rectum. 18, Urinary Bladder. 19, Peritoneum. 20, Left Rectus Muscle. 21, Aponeurosis over left Transverse Muscle.

side: they arise from the aorta opposite to about the second lumbar vertebra, inferior and close to the origin of the superior mesenteric: sometimes the left arises a little higher than the right. After their origin, each of them proceeds at nearly a right angle towards the corresponding kidney. The *right renal artery* is longer than the left, on account of having its origin on the left side of the spine; *posteriorly* it rests on the spine, right sympathetic nerve, and psoas muscle; *anteriorly* it is covered by the left renal vein, the inferior cava, and the right renal vein: thus it is nearly covered by these veins in its entire course, so that without disturbing these vessels a very small portion only of the artery can be seen. Its branches, four or five in number, penetrate the pelvis of the kidney between the branches of the vein which are in front, and the ureter which is posterior and inferior. The *left renal artery* lies on a small portion of the psoas muscle covered by its corresponding vein: the branches, however, do not enter the kidney behind the veins, as they do usually on the right side, but frequently they are situated in front of the branches of the left renal vein: in the hilus of both kidneys the ureter lies posterior and inferior to the blood-vessels.

The *Renal Veins*, called also the emulgent veins, are two large vessels which escape, one from the hilus of each kidney. The *right renal vein* is shorter than that of the left, in consequence of the vena cava lying close to the right kidney; and it runs in a more oblique direction than the vein of the left side, because the right kidney is situated lower down than the left. The *left renal vein* is longer and takes a more transverse course than the right; it crosses in front of the aorta and the spine in order to reach the left side of the inferior vena cava; and in this part of its course it lies behind the third portion of the duodenum. Sometimes instead of passing in front of the abdominal aorta, it passes behind it: this vein receives the contents of the spermatic vein of the left testicle.

The branches given off by the renal arteries are, first, *inferior capsular* branches to the supra-renal capsules; secondly, *branches* to the surrounding areolar tissue and adipose membrane; thirdly, a *small branch or two* to the ureter, and, lastly, terminating branches. The *terminating branches* are disposed of in the manner which we shall now describe.

Fig. 40.—Microscopical Anatomy of Kidney. Represents the Arrangement of the Vessels in the Malpighian Tufts—after Bowman.



A, Arterial Branch, with its subdivisions. At a, the Capsule is ruptured, and only some of the Vessels are seen. At d, the vessels are well filled, and the injection passed out through the efferent vessel ef. At c, h, the injection has extravasated, and passed along the tube. ef, Efferent Vessel. m, m, The injection, on escaping into the capsule, has not spread over the whole tuft. t, t, t, Uriniferous Tubes.

Arrangement of the vessels in the kidney.—Within the hilus or notch in the kidney the *terminating branches* first pass between the calyces, and then run in straight lines between the cones of the tubular structure till they arrive at the cortical structure of the organ. In the tubular portion, according to Mr. Toynbee, the minute arteries "are arranged in bundles in the shape of elongated cones whose bases are continuous with the cortical portion, and their *apices* directed towards the mammillary processes."* When these minute arteries have entered the cortical structure of the kidney, most of them terminate in forming small *tufts* of capillary vessels in the *Malpighian corpuscles*. These bodies have been described by Mr. Bowman† as being formed in the first instance by a *capsule* which consists of an expansion of the dilated commencement of a urinary tubule; through this capsule a minute artery passes, called *vas inferens*, which, after arriving within it, subdivides into several minute capillary branches, which form a number of vascular loops closely bound up together within the capsule, so as to form a tuft: from this tuft of vessels a small vein takes its origin, *vas efferens*, which escapes from the inner portion of the corpuscle, passes through the capsule and joins a plexus of veins, formed of several efferent veins, which are situated between the Malpighian corpuscles, and surround the small convoluted tubuli uriniferi immediately after their origin: these capillary veins terminate in the formation of the *renal vein*. Mr. Bowman describes a number of minute capillary arteries which do not go to the Malpighian corpuscles, but which envelope the convoluted tubes and communicate directly with the veins. According to Mr. Bowman, the capsule of the Malpighian body consists of the dilated origin of the uriniferous tubule; whilst, according to Mr. Toynbee, this capsule consists of a structure totally distinct from the tubule, and which surrounds the convoluted origin of the tubule in conjunction with the arterial tuft and the commencement of the efferent vein.

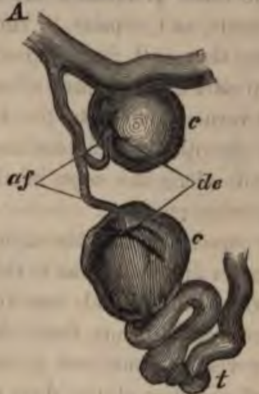
---

* Med. Ch. Trans., vol. xxix., 1846.

† Phil. Trans., 1842.

In the early period of intra-uterine life, the kidney is formed of a number of independent lobules, each supplied with a distinct set of vessels; and even in the adult there remains so much distinction, that different compartments of the kidney can be injected of different colors.

Fig. 41.—Represents two Malpighian Bodies injected. The tufts are burst, and the fluid has escaped into the capsule. In one case it has passed also along the tube, the tortuosity of which, at its commencement, is well seen.—After Bowman.



A, Arterial Branch. a, f, Arterial Twigs or Afferent Vessels of the Malpighian Tufts. c, c, Malpighian Bodies, distended. d, e, The Depression sometimes seen where the Afferent and Efferent Vessels pass. t, Uriniferous tube.

The SPERMATIC ARTERIES arise from the front of the aorta a little beneath the renal: each of them descends obliquely outwards, lying anterior to the psoas muscle and ureter, which latter it crosses at an acute angle. On the right side, the spermatic artery crosses also, obliquely, the front of the vena cava inferior; sometimes, however, it goes behind it. On the left side the artery passes behind the sigmoid flexure of the colon. In this course the spermatic veins lie to the outside of the corresponding arteries, and the peritoneum covers them in front: sometimes we may find two spermatic veins, one lying at either side of the artery and communicating in front of it by numerous small transverse branches. In the rest of their course the spermatic arteries differ in the male and in the female subject.

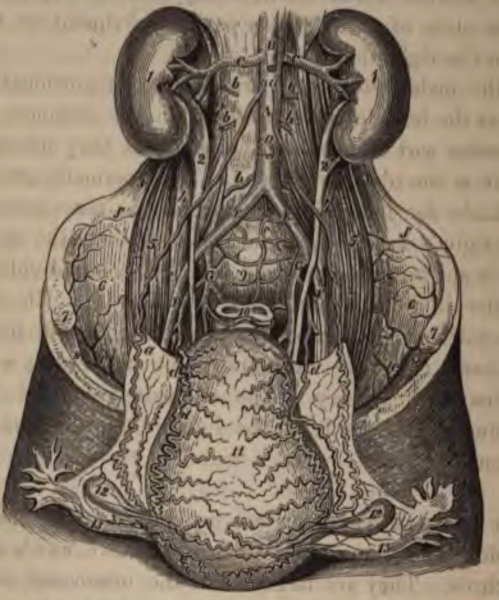
In the *male*, the spermatic artery enters the inguinal canal, and descends on the front of the vas deferens, forming part of the spermatic cord, and becoming extremely tortuous as it approaches its termination: a little above the testis it divides into two branches, one of which enters the head of the epididymis, while the other penetrates the superior margin of the body of the testis, and repairs to the corpus Highmorianum, from whence they both issue in two sets: one set ramifies on the internal part of the tunica albuginea, and detaches minute vessels at various points to the tubuli testis, around which they coil; the other set pierces the corpus Highmorianum, and descends along the septa of the testicle from its posterior to its anterior margin.

Sir A. Cooper describes the tunica albuginea as having two layers,—an outer one analogous to the dura mater, and an inner one (in which the vessels ramify) analogous to the pia mater. Cruveilhier dissents from this description, and thinks that "the vessels contained in the tunica albuginea rather resemble the sinuses of the dura mater than the vascular net-work of the pia mater."

In the *female*, the spermatic artery turns inwards over the common iliac, and passes to the side of the uterus, between the layers of the peritoneum composing its broad ligament: it supplies the ovary, Fallopian tube, and uterus, and anastomoses with the proper uterine arteries. In pregnancy, the branches to the uterus become enormously large and tortuous.

The *Veins* which accompany the spermatic artery arise from the testis and epididymis, and form a plexus immediately after their junction. They then ascend, four or five in number, through the inguinal canal, lying in front of the vas deferens, and ultimately unite, in the lower part of the lumbar region, into a single trunk which ascends on the outside of the spermatic artery. The right spermatic vein empties its contents into the inferior vena cava, with which it forms an acute angle below the termination of the right renal. The left spermatic vein empties itself into the left renal, with which it forms nearly a right angle. In many cases the spermatic vein divides at a short distance above the gland, into many branches, so as to form a peculiar plexus, termed

Fig. 42.—Represents the Arteries of the Uterus in a Female who died six days after delivery.



A, Abdominal Aorta. B, Superior Mesenteric Artery, divided. C, C, Renal Arteries. D, Inferior Mesenteric Artery, cut. E, E, Common Iliac Arteries. F, F, External Iliac Arteries. G, G, Internal Iliac Arteries. a, a, a, Spermatic Arteries, greatly convoluted and enlarged at their termination. b, b, b, b, b, Lumbar Arteries. c. Middle Sacral Artery. d, d, d. d. Uterine Arteries, convoluted and enlarged. e, e, Internal Circumflexæ Ilii Arteries. f, f, Anastomosis between Ilio-lumbar and Circumflexæ Ilii Arteries. 1, 1, Kidneys. 2, 2, Pelves of the Kidneys. 3, 3, Quadratus Lumborum Muscle of each side. 4, 4, Psoas Parvus. 5, 5, Psoas Magnus. 6, 6, Iliacus Internus. 7, 7, Anterior Superior Iliac Spine. 8, 8, Crural Arch. 9, Promontory of Sacrum. 10, Rectum. 11, Uterus turned forward. 12, 12, The ovaries. 13, 13, The Fallopian Tubes.

the *pampiniform plexus;* after which it again becomes a single trunk. Meckel says that the plexus exists more frequently on the left side than on the right.

As the left testicle is lower than the right, the veins are longer; and this (together with the peculiar mode of termination of the left spermatic vein, and its relation to the sigmoid flexure of the colon) is supposed to explain why a varicose state of these vessels is more frequent on the left than on the right side.

In the male fœtus these arteries are proportionably very short, as the testicles are placed within the abdomen during the greater part of intra-uterine life; but they subsequently elongate as the testicles descend. The spermatic arteries are remarkable for increasing in diameter as they recede from their origin. In the operation of castration, the spermatic artery is apt to contract considerably on being divided, so as to render it difficult to secure it in a ligature. The surgeon may avoid this embarrassment by holding the divided cord in his hand till an assistant draws out and secures whatever branches are necessary. The exquisitely painful practice of including the cord in the ligature is now universally abandoned.

The Lumbar Arteries are generally four in number on each side; sometimes, however, we meet five, and sometimes only three. They are larger than the intercostal, to which they are analogous. Each of them arises from the posterior and lateral part of the aorta, and passes outwards on the body of the corresponding vertebra, and then behind the sympathetic nerve and psoas muscle: those that are sufficiently high pass also behind the corresponding pillar of the diaphragm. The upper ones are also more nearly horizontal; while the lower descend with a gradually increasing obliquity. Opposite the corresponding transverse process, each of them divides into an anterior and posterior branch.

The *anterior branch*, smaller than the posterior, passes outwards between the psoas and quadratus lumborum muscles, and then between the quadratus and anterior layer of the transversalis tendon. The anterior branch of the first lumbar passes outwards beneath the last rib, and along the insertion of the diaphragm, and then on front of the quadratus lumborum: it communicates with the intercostal arteries. The anterior branch of the fourth, follows the attachment of the quadratus lumborum to the crest of the ileum, and communicates with the ilio-lumbar. All the anterior branches, moreover, communicate with the adjacent ones, and supply the quadratus lumborum and broad muscles of the abdomen.

The *posterior branch* of each lumbar artery first sends a small vessel through the corresponding lateral foramen into the spinal canal to be distributed in the spinal marrow and its tunics, and afterwards expends itself in the lumbar mass of muscles, and the integuments.

The MIDDLE SACRAL ARTERY, usually smaller than the lumbar arteries, arises from the posterior part of the aorta a little above its bifurcation; it then descends on the front of the spine, separated from it by the anterior common ligament; and then on the middle line of the sacrum, separated from it by the periosteum of that bone; it is covered in front by the aorta, left common iliac vein, and by the pelvic viscera. It is separated from the lateral sacral of either side by the corresponding trunk of the sympathetic nerve. Inferiorly it terminates by dividing into two branches, right and left, which communicate, in the form of a double arch, with the right and left lateral sacral arteries. Opposite each bone of the sacrum this artery sends off transverse branches to either side, which supply the periosteum, and communicate with the lateral sacral and hæmorrhoidal arteries.

COMMON ILIAC ARTERIES.

On the left side of the fourth lumbar vertebra, or corresponding to the intervertebral substance between the fourth and fifth (and nearly opposite the left margin of the umbilicus), the aorta bifurcates into the right and left common iliac arteries. These large vessels vary in length from two to three inches: they diverge as they descend, leaving an angle between them, wider in the female than in the male.

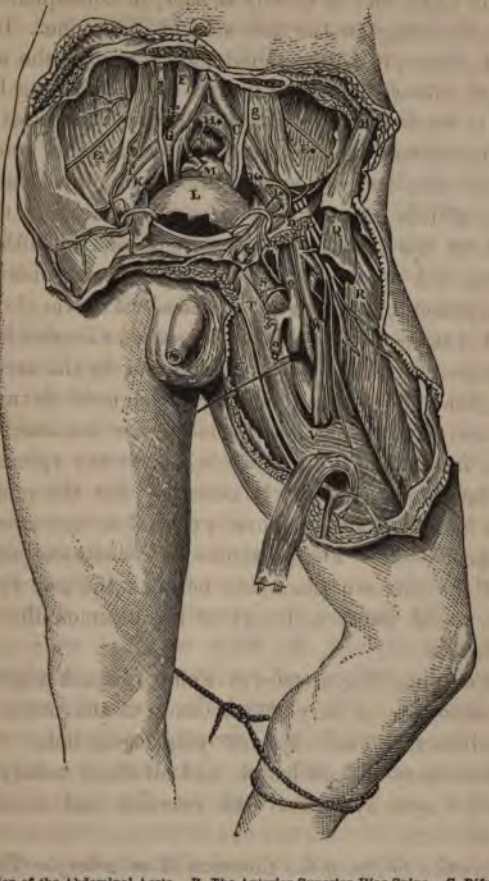
The *Right Common Iliac Artery* descends obliquely to the right side, till it reaches the superior extremity of the sacro-iliac symphysis. Its *posterior surface* in this course lies on the cartilage between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ; on the body of the last-named vertebra, and on the anterior common ligament which is interposed between these parts and the artery: it then lies on the bifurcation, or, more properly speaking, on the commencement of the inferior vena cava, and consequently on both the left and right common iliac veins as they unite to form, by their conflux, the origin of this large vein. In fact, almost immediately after its origin the right common iliac artery is borne off the spine by the large veins which lie behind it. Its right or corresponding vein not only lies behind it, but projects above to its outside, whilst lower down, part of the vein appears on its inner side: the sympathetic nerve, and still more deeply seated the obturator nerve, descend behind it into the pelvis. We may observe a deep groove situated between the inner edge of the psoas magnus and the spine, and it is in this groove that we expose the obturator nerve: by continuing our dissection still deeper in this locality we come upon the lumbo-sacral nerve on its way into the pelvis, and upon the lumbar division of the ilio-lumbar branch of the internal iliac artery. Its *anterior surface* is covered by the peritoneum; it is crossed obliquely at its bifurcation into the internal and external iliac arteries, by the ureter; and it is crossed by the last coil of the ileum, as it ascends from the true pelvis to join the cæcum in the right iliac fossa. In the female the spermatic vessels turn over it to reach the uterus.

The *Left Common Iliac Artery* descends with less obliquity than the right, and is usually shorter, in consequence of the aorta bifurcating on the left side of the spine. In many cases, however, it will be found longer, that is, the artery of the right side will bifurcate into its two terminating branches before it reaches the right sacro-iliac synchondrosis; whilst the left continues its course until it reaches this point at the left side: this fact, we believe, was first pointed out by Mr. Adams, of this city. Its *posterior surface* rests on the outer portion of the anterior common ligament, the fifth lumbar vertebra, and on the outer edge of its corresponding vein: the sympathetic, obturator and lumbo-sacral nerves also descend behind it as on the other side. Its *anterior surface* is covered by the peritoneum, and crossed obliquely by the ureter at its bifurcation; it is covered also by the sigmoid flexure of the colon and the termination of the inferior mesenteric artery. In the female, the vessels, analogous to the spermatic, are also related to it. It may be observed that the vein on this side is in no part of its course external to the artery, as on the opposite side. The psoæ muscles are situated on the outside of the common iliacs, and between the two we see the middle sacral artery and part of the common iliac vein of the left side.

The common iliac arteries give off no branches before their bifurcation, except very minute ones to the ureters, peritoneum, iliac veins, and adjacent lymphatic glands. The common iliacs vary in their length, and bifurcate usually near the sacro-iliac symphysis into the external and internal iliac arteries.

Operation of tying the Common iliac artery.—The operation of tying the common iliac artery has been performed upwards of twenty times on the human subject; first, by Dr. Wm. Gibson, of Philadelphia, in 1812, in a case of gun-shot wound; the patient died from hemorrhage in thirteen days after the operation: it was tied in March, 1827, by Valentine

Fig. 43—Represents the Surgical Anatomy of the Iliac and Femoral Arteries.



A, Bifurcation of the Abdominal Aorta. B, The Anterior Superior Iliac Spine. C, Bifurcation of left common Iliac Artery. D, Poupart's Ligament. E, E*, The right and left Iliac Muscles, with the Inferior Musculo- or Inguino-Cutaneous Nerve of each side. F, The Inferior Vena Cava. G, Bifurcation of the right Common Iliac Artery. H, H*, The right and left Common Iliac Veins. I, I*, The right and left External Iliac Arteries, each crossed by the Circumflexa Ilii Vein. K, K*, The right and left External Iliac Veins. L, The Urinary Bladder, covered by Peritoneum. M, The Rectum, divided and tied. N, The Profunda Branch of the Femoral Artery. O, The Femoral Vein; o, the Saphena Vein. P, The Anterior Crural Nerve. Q, The Sartorius Muscle, cut. R, The Rectus Muscle. S, Pectineus Muscle. T, The Adductor Longus. U, The Gracilis Muscle. V, The Opening or Entrance into Hunter's Canal, with the strong Fibrous Structure given off by the Adductor Longus to the Vastus Internus. g, g, The right and left Ureters.

Mott, of New York; and in the year following by Sir P. Crampton in this city. It has also been tied by Salamon, Liston, Guthrie, Syme, Deguise, Perigof, Post, Stevens, Peace, Stanley, Hey, and Lyon. Out of all these cases nearly two-thirds of them terminated successfully. Mott's case was successful; and as it contains a great deal of important and interesting information, we shall detail it at length.

Mr. Mott's Case.—The subject of this operation, Isaac Crane, aged 33, was a man of temperate habits, and his disease was a large aneurismal tumor, of nearly three months' standing; filling the iliac fossa, and extending from a little above Poupart's ligament, to near the umbilicus.

"The patient being placed upon a table of suitable height, the pubes and groin of the right side being shaved, an incision was commenced, just above the external abdominal ring, and carried in a semicircular direction, half an inch above Poupart's ligament, until it terminated a little beyond the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, making it in extent about five inches. The integuments and superficial fascia were divided, which exposed the tendinous part of the external oblique muscle, upon cutting which, in the whole course of the incision, the muscular fibres of the internal oblique were exposed, the fibres of which were cautiously raised with the forceps and cut from the upper edge of Poupart's ligament. This exposed the spermatic cord, the cellular covering of which was now raised with the forceps, and divided to an extent sufficient to admit the fore-finger of the left hand to pass upon the cord, into the internal abdominal ring. The finger, serving now as a director, enabled me to divide the internal oblique and transversalis muscles to the extent of the external incision while it protected the peritoneum. In the division of the last-mentioned muscles, outwardly, the circumflexa ilii artery was cut through, and it yielded, for a few minutes, a smart bleeding. This, with a smaller artery upon the surface of the internal oblique muscle, between the rings, and one in the integuments, were all that required ligatures.

"With the tumor beating furiously underneath, I now attempted to raise the peritoneum from it, which we found difficult and dangerous, as it was adherent to it in every direction. By degrees we separated it, with great caution, from the aneurismal tumor, which had now bulged up very much into the incision. But we soon found that the external incision did not enable us to arrive at more than half the extent of the tumor, upwards. It was therefore extended, upwards and backwards, about half an inch within the ileum, to the distance of three inches, making a wound in all about eight inches in length.

"The separation of the peritoneum was now continued, until the fingers arrived at the upper part of the tumor, which was found to terminate at the going off of the internal iliac artery. The common iliac was next examined, by passing the fingers upon the promontory of the sacrum; and, to the touch, appearing to be sound, we determined to place our ligature upon it, about half-way between the aneurism and the aorta, with a view to allow length of vessel enough on each side of it to be united by the adhesive process.

"The great current of blood through the aorta made it necessary to allow as much of the primitive iliac to remain between it and the ligature as possible; and the probable disease of the artery, higher than the aneurism, required that it should not be too low down. The depth of this wound, the size of the aneurism, and the pressure of the intestines downwards by the efforts to bear pain, made it impossible to see the vessel we wished to tie. By the aid of curved spatulas, such as I used in my operation upon the innominata, together with a thin piece of board, about three inches wide, prepared at the time, we succeeded in keeping up the peritoneal mass, and getting a view of the arteria iliaca communis, on the side of the sacro-vertebral promontory. This required great effort on our part, and could only be continued for a few seconds. The difficulty was greatly augmented by the elevation of the aneurismal tumor, and the interruption it gave to the admission of light.

"When we elevated the pelvis, the tumor obstructed our sight; when we depressed it, the crowding down of the intestines presented another difficulty. In this part of the operation I was greatly assisted by Dr. Osborn, and my enterprising pupil Adrian A. Kissam. Introducing my right hand, now, behind the peritoneum, the artery was denuded with the nail of the fore-finger, and the needle conveying the ligature was introduced, from within outwards, guided by the fore-finger of the left hand, in order to avoid injuring the vein. The ligature was very readily passed underneath the artery, but considerable difficulty was experienced in hooking the eye of the needle, from the great depth of the wound, and the impossibility of seeing it. The distance of the artery from the wound was the whole length of my aneurismal needle.

"After drawing the ligature under the artery, we succeeded, by the aid of our spatulas and board, in getting a fair view of it, and were satisfied that it was fairly under the primitive iliac, a little below the bifurcation of the aorta. It was now tied; the knots were readily conveyed up to the artery by the fore-fingers: all pulsation in the tumor instantly ceased. The ligature upon the artery was a very little below a point opposite the umbilicus."

The wound was dressed in the usual way: the operation lasted less than an hour. It was performed on the 15th of March, and the ligature was removed from the artery on the 3d of April following. On the 20th of May, he made a journey of twenty-five miles.*

Sir P. Crampton's patient died on the eleventh day; and the failure of the operation has been attributed to the employment of a catgut ligature, which (as appeared from examination of the body) either broke from the impulse of the blood, or had rotted away.

---

* Johnson's Med. Chir. Review, vol. viii. 1828, p. 472.

Mr. Hey's Case.—"The patient, a gentleman aged forty, perceived, on the 10th of November, a small hard tumor in his left groin, above the centre of Poupart's ligament. Three days afterwards he had severe pain in the part, and on the following day the swelling increased in size, accompanied with pulsation. It was resolved, in consultation, to apply a ligature to the common iliac artery, which operation was performed on December the 3d. The incision was begun two inches and three-quarters above the navel, and three inches from the median line, and was carried six inches downwards in a semicircular direction, with a prolongation of an inch and a half in a straight line outwardly. The layers of muscles and fascia transversalis having been divided to the whole extent of the incision, the peritoneum was gently separated from the parts beneath, and the common iliac artery was easily reached. A little time was occupied in scratching through the sheath with the point of the aneurism-needle, after which it was passed under the artery from within outwards, armed with a double ligature of stay-maker's silk, and the operation completed. The pulsation in the tumor ceased immediately after the artery was tied. The tumor gradually subsided in size. A week after the operation, pulsation was felt in the anterior tibial artery. On the twenty-eighth day the ligature was found loose in the wound and removed. About the 20th of January the patient was free from complaint and was able to walk about."*

When the flow of blood through the common iliac artery is prevented, the internal mammary supplies the limb through the epigastric; the inferior lumbar arteries supply it through the glutæal and ilio-lumbar; and the internal iliac of the sound side, through the communicating branches of the internal iliac of the diseased side.

---

* Med. Press, vol. ii. p. 299.

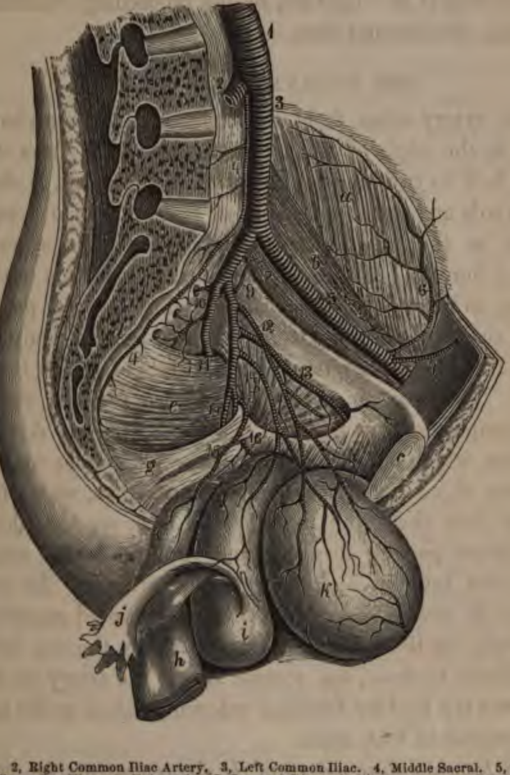
The common iliac artery may be arrived at for the purpose of including it in a ligature, by the proceeding recommended for tying the internal iliac.

THE INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY.

This artery arises from the common iliac on a plane posterior to the origin of the external iliac; it is from an inch and a half to two inches in length: in the adult, it descends backwards and inwards in front of the sacro-iliac symphysis, as far as the superior extremity of the great sacro-sciatic notch; here it becomes ligamentous, and ascends to the umbilicus, on the side of the bladder, being covered posteriorly by its superior false ligament. In its first or truly arterial stage it forms a curvature, the *concavity* of which looks forwards. Its *posterior* or convex surface rests on the sacro-iliac symphysis, from which it is separated by its corresponding vein, which on the right side projects from underneath its outer edge; and by the lumbo-sacral nerve, which lies still deeper than the vein: from behind it we see also the obturator nerve passing forwards, and running in the angle between the internal and external iliac arteries. Its *anterior* surface is covered by peritoneum, and crossed superiorly, at its origin by the ureter, and inferiorly by the vas deferens. In addition to these, the rectum covers the artery on the left side, and the bladder forms an anterior relation to the internal iliac arteries of both sides.

The *Internal iliac artery of the fœtus* presents for our consideration many distinct peculiarities. First, it is considerably larger than the external iliac; the reverse is the fact in the adult: in the fœtus, it does not descend deep into the pelvis, but rather winds along the ilio-pectineal line, and then ascends, not in a ligamentous form, but pervious, and carry-

Fig. 44.—View of the left side of the Pelvis, the Bladder, Uterus, Vagina, and Rectum, turned downward so as to exhibit the distribution of the Internal Iliac Artery.



1, Aorta. 2, Right Common Iliac Artery. 3, Left Common Iliac. 4, Middle Sacral. 5, External Iliac. 6, Circumflex Iliac. 7, Epigastric. 8, Internal Iliac. 9, Ilio-Lumbar. 10, Lateral Sacral Arteries. 11, Glutæal Artery passing from the Pelvis, above the Pyriform Muscle, at the upper part of the great Sacro-Sciatic Foramen. 12, Superior Vesical Artery; the branch cut off is extended into the remains of the Umbilical Artery. 13, Obturator Artery. 14, Inferior Vesical Artery giving off the Uterine Artery to the Vagina and Uterus. 15, Middle Hæmorrhoidal Artery. 16, Internal Pudic Artery, seen emerging from and again entering the Pelvis. 17, Ischiatic Artery. *a*, Iliac Muscle. *b*, Psoas Muscle. *c*, Symphysis of the Pubis. *d*, Sacrum. *e*, Pyriform Muscle. *f*, Internal Obturator Muscle. *g*, Sacro-Sciatic Ligaments. *h*, Rectum. *i*, Uterus and Vagina. *j*, Fallopian Tube. *k*, Bladder.

ing blood from the fœtus along the sides of the bladder through the umbilicus to the placenta. From the umbilicus to the placenta the two arteries form part of the umbilical cord.

After birth, the internal iliac arteries gradually diminish, and the external iliac arteries, and posterior or external branches of the internal iliac, gradually enlarge.

Operation of tying the internal Iliac.—The internal iliac artery may require to be tied in consequence of a wound, or for aneurism of the glutæal or other of its branches. The operation of tying it has been performed in seven instances, in four of which it succeeded. It was first tried by Dr. Stevens, of Santa Cruz, in the West Indies: this patient recovered.* It was afterwards performed unsuccessfully, at the York Hospital, by Mr. Atkinson. It was also performed by a Russian army surgeon, upon whom the Emperor Alexander settled a pension as a reward for his dexterity and skill.† Dr. White, of Hudson, tied the artery on a tailor aged sixty years: in both these latter cases the operation succeeded. It was also tied by Mr. Mott; and by Thomas, of Barbadoes: these two patients died. It was since tied by Mr. Guthrie.

In *Dr. Stevens's* and *Mr. Atkinson's* cases the operation in each case was commenced by an incision, five inches long, through the integuments, fascia, and muscles, parallel and a little external to the epigastric artery.

Mr. White made a similar incision on the side of the abdomen, about seven inches long, with its convexity to the ilium, commencing near the umbilicus, and terminating near the inguinal ring.

The remaining steps, in these cases, consisted in pushing inwards the sac of the peritoneum and carrying the finger along the external iliac artery, until it reached the origin of the internal iliac.

---

* Med. Ch. Trans., vol. v. p. 422.

† Averill's Operative Surgery, p. 55.

It is a fact worthy of attention that the ureter is closely connected to the peritoneum, and invariably accompanies this membrane when it is removed out of the way during the operation, so that there will be no fear whatever of including this duct within the ligature.

In order to arrive at the internal iliac artery, an incision should be made in the direction of a line extending from the umbilicus to midway between the spine of the pubis and the anterior superior spine of the ilium; this incision should commence at the outer edge of the rectus muscle, and terminate about an inch above Poupart's ligament, in order to avoid the spermatic cord. The different muscular layers composing the anterior wall of the abdomen being successively divided, the transversalis fascia should be cautiously scraped through, and the peritoneum exposed and pushed inwards. The fascia covering the vessels should also be torn with the nail, and then, by following the external iliac artery backwards, we arrive at the internal. In the angle between them lies the external iliac vein, which should be carefully avoided, and the needle introduced from within outwards.

The branches of the internal iliac artery are classed into those which remain *within* the pelvis, and those which leave it to be distributed *externally*. The latter are four in number, viz., the glutæal, sciatic, pudic, and obturator; and the former, which in the male are five in number, are the ilio-lumbar, lateral sacral, middle hæmorrhoidal, vesical, and umbilical; to which may be added in the female, the uterine and vaginal. We shall proceed, first, with the description of the external branches.

The branches of the internal iliac artery are the following:—

Branches supplying the parts outside the pelvis.

Glutæal. Sciatic. Pudic. Obturator.

Branches supplying the parts within the pelvis.

Ilio-lumbar.
Lateral Sacral.
Middle Hæmorrhoidal.
Vesical.
Umbilical: and, in addition, *in the female*, the
Uterine and the
Vaginal.

The GLUTÆAL ARTERY is the largest branch of the internal iliac. It arises far back in the pelvis, opposite the lower part of the sacro-iliac symphysis, and immediately passes backwards between the lumbo-sacral nerve which afterwards lies in front of it, and first sacral nerve which lies behind it; and above the pyriform muscle, in order to escape from the pelvis, by passing through the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch. While within the pelvis, it gives off some small branches to the pyriform muscle, to the rectum, and to the areolar tissue. After this very short course, in which it is accompanied by the superior glutæal nerve, it divides opposite the posterior margin of the glutæus minimus muscle, between it and the pyriformis, and under cover of the glutæus maximus, into a superficial and a deep branch.

The *superficial branch* ascends between the glutæus maximus and medius, and divides into numerous lesser branches, some of which supply these muscles and the great sacro-sciatic ligament; while others are distributed to the sacro-lumbalis muscle and the integuments: some of these branches communicate with the sciatic artery.

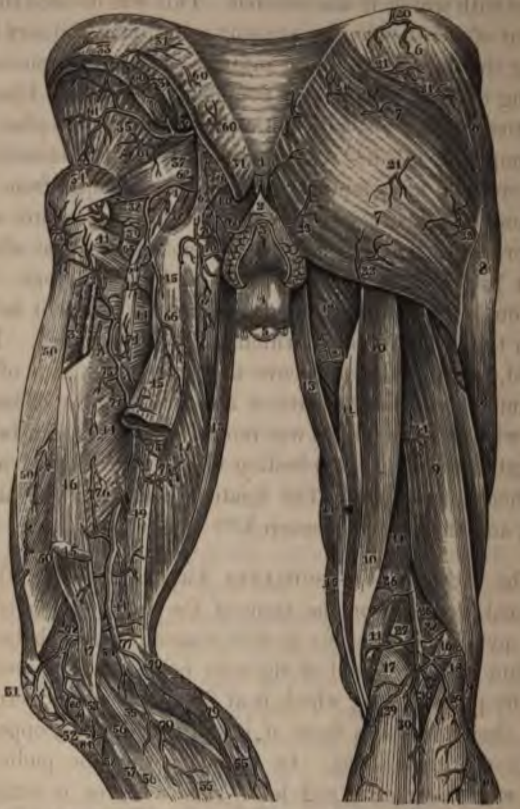
The *deep branch* takes a direction obliquely upwards and forwards between the glutæus medius and minimus muscles. After giving a small *nutritious artery* to the ilium, it divides into two lesser branches; the *superior* of which follows accurately the middle curved line upon the bone, which marks the upper margin of the glutæus minimus. This branch supplies, in its course, the last-mentioned muscle and the glutæus medius, and having arrived at the anterior superior spine of the ilium, it anastomoses with the ilio-lumbar, circumflexa ilii, and external circumflexa femoris arteries. The *inferior branch* runs downwards and forwards between the two lesser glutæi muscles, which receive many branches from it, and having arrived at the great trochanter, supplies the pyriformis muscle and capsule of the hip-joint, and communicates with branches of the sciatic and internal circumflexa femoris arteries.

Operation of tying the Glutæal Artery. M. Lizars gives the following rule for finding the trunk of the glutæal artery. Draw a line from the posterior superior spinous process of the ilium downwards to the mid-point between the tuberosity of the ischium and the great trochanter; and then divide this line into three equal parts; the glutæal artery will be found emerging from the pelvis at the junction of its upper and middle thirds. It will rarely be necessary, however, to apply this rule, unless for the purpose of avoiding it in opening deep abscesses of the glutæal region; for in case of a wound, we must be guided by the wound itself; and, in case of glutæal aneurism, the surgeon may prefer tying the internal iliac artery. The opposite practice has, no doubt, been successful: thus, Mr. Bell cut down on the tumor, in a case of glutæal aneurism, opened the sac, and tied the vessel successfully.* Mr. Carmichael tied the glutæal artery for a wound of this vessel by a pen-knife. The following is Mr. Carmichael's description of the operation:—"The patient being placed upon a table, lying on his face, I commenced by making an incision five inches in length, beginning an inch below the superior posterior spinous process of the ilium, and about the same distance from the margin of the sacrum, and continued it in a line extending obliquely downwards to the trochanter major. The glutæus maximus and medius were then rapidly divided, or rather their fibres separated (as the incision ran in the direction of the fibres), to the same extent as that of the integuments. The coagulated blood forming the tumor then

---

* Principles of Surgery, vol. i. p. 421.

Fig. 45.—Represents the Arteries of the posterior part of the Pelvis and Thigh.



1, The Coccyx. 2, The Superficial Sphincter of the Anus. 3, The Anus. 4, The Scrotum. 5, The Glans Penis. 6, 6, The Glutæus Medius Muscle. 7, 7. The Glutæus Maximus. 8, 8, External portion of Vastus Externus. 9, 9, Biceps. 10, 10, The Semi-tendinosus. 11, 11, 11, The Semi-membranosus. 12. The Adductor Magnus. 13, The Gracilis. 14, The Sartorius. 15, Small portion of the Vastus Internus. 16, The Plantaris. 17, 18, The two heads of the Gastrocnemius. 19, The Soleus. 20, Branch from the Ilio-lumbar Artery. 21, 21, 21, 21, Branches of the Glutæal Artery. 22, 22, Twigs from the Sciatic Artery. 23, Twig from the Internal Pudic Artery. 24, 24, Branches of the Perforating Arteries. 25, The Popliteal Artery. 26, Muscular Branch from the Popliteal Artery. 27, Superior Internal Articular Artery. 28, Superior External Articular Artery. 29, 29, Sural Arteries, proceeding from a common trunk. Upper 30, Twig to Plantaris. Lower 30, Branch to accompany the Posterior Saphena Vein. 31, 31, Origin of the Glutæus Maximus, cut. 32, Insertion of the Glutæus Maximus, cut. 33, 33, Origin of the Glutæus Medius, cut. 34, The insertion of the Glutæus Medius, cut. 35, The Glutæus Minimus. 36, The Great Sacro-Sciatic Ligament. 37, The Pyriformis. 38, 38, 39, The two Gemelli, and Obturator Internus between. 40, Portion of Levator Ani. 41, Quadratus Femoris. 42, Great Sciatic Nerve, cut. 43, Gracilis. 44, 44, The Adductor Magnus. 45, 45, 45, Long portion of Biceps Muscle, cut. 46, Short portion of Biceps between the Vastus Externus and the Adductors. 47, Tendon of Biceps. 48, The Semi-tendinosus. 49, The Semi-membranosus. 50, 50, 50, Vastus Exbecame apparent through the sac or condensed cellular membrane with which it was covered. This was divided the whole extent of the incision by running a buttoned bistoury quickly along the finger introduced into the sac, and its contents, consisting of from one to two pounds of coagulated blood, were emptied rapidly out with both hands into a soup-plate, which it completely filled. A large jet of fresh blood instantly filled the cavity I had emptied; but, the precise spot from whence it came being perceived, I was enabled, by pressure with the finger, to prevent any further effusion, while that which had been just poured out was removed by the sponge. It was obviously the trunk of the glutæal artery, just as it debouches from the ischiatic notch, which had been wounded. I endeavored, but in vain, to secure the artery by means of a tenaculum. I had then recourse to a common needle of large size, and with this instrument was immediately successful in passing a ligature around the bleeding vessel, and in preventing all further hemorrhage. The ligature came away on the sixth day, and the patient recovered."*

The Sciatic or Ischiatic Artery, smaller than the glutæal, descends on the front of the sacral plexus of nerves and pyriformis muscle: in this course it passes between the rectum and outer wall of the true pelvis, and is accompanied by the pudic artery, which is at first somewhat external to it, and then crosses in front of it and to its inside, opposite the spine of the ischium. In company with the pudic artery, and with the greater and lesser sciatic nerves, it escapes from

ternus. 51, The Patella. 52, The Ligamentum Patellæ. 53, External Lateral Ligament of Knee Joint. 54, The Plantaris. 55, 55, 55, The Gastrocnemius. 56, 56, The Soleus. 57, The Peroneus Longus. 58, Extensor Digitorum Longus. 59, The Glutæal Artery. 60, 61, 61, Branches of the Glutæal Artery. 62, The Sciatic Artery. 63, Coccygeal Branch of the Sciatic Artery. 64, 64, Comes Nervi Ischiatici: there are two in this dissection. 65, Muscular Twig for Quadratus Femoris and Gemelli. 66, Descending Branch of the Hamstring Muscles. 67, Branch for the Adductors. 68, 69, 70, 70, External or Inferior Hæmorrhoidal Artery and Anastomoses. 71, First Perforating Artery. 72, 73, Anastomosis between the External Circumflex and first Perforating Artery. 74, Small Branch from the first Perforating Artery, for the Sciatic Nerve. 75, 75, 75, Muscular Twigs from first and second Perforating Arteries. 76, Third Perforating Artery. 77, Popliteal Artery. 78, Superior External Articular Artery of Knee. 79, 79, 79, Sural Arteries, and Branch for Posterior Saphena Vein. 80, Inferior External Articular Artery of Knee. 81, Branch from the Anterior Tibial Recurrent Artery.

---

* Dublin Journal, vol. iv. p. 231.

the pelvis through the inferior part of the great sacro-sciatic notch, passing between the lower edge of the pyriformis muscle and the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. After its exit from the pelvis it is covered by the glutæus maximus muscle, and is situated posterior and then internal to the great sciatic nerve: it lies behind the spinous process of the ischium near its root, and passes also behind the gemelli, obturator internus, and quadratus femoris muscles. While within the pelvis it gives small branches to the bladder, rectum, uterus, and levator ani muscle: after it leaves the pelvis, it terminates by giving off the following branches:—

Muscular.
Coccygeal.
Comes Nervi Ischiatici.
Anastomotic.

The *Muscular branches* are distributed to the glutæus maximus, quadratus femoris, and hamstring muscles.

The *Coccygeal branch* passes inwards, and in so doing runs across the posterior surface of the pudic artery, and then passes between the origins of the greater and lesser sacro-sciatic ligaments: it supplies the glutæus maximus, levator ani, and coccygeus muscles, and periosteum of the coccyx, and anastomoses with the anterior spinal and with the middle and lateral sacral arteries.

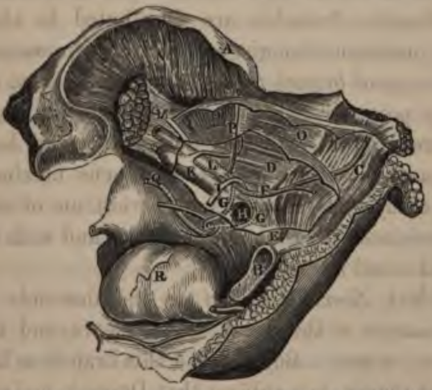
The *Comes Nervi Ischiatici* at first descends along the internal margin of the great sciatic nerve, and then penetrates its substance. Boyer found this branch as large as the radial at the wrist, in a subject that Dessault had operated on eight months before for popliteal aneurism. I have found it in a young child fully as large; and when it had reached the popliteal space it took the place of the popliteal artery: in this case the femoral artery was so very small as to be nearly rudimentary.

The *Anastomotic* branches unite at the back of the thigh with the terminating branches of the internal circumflex from the profunda femoris, and with the perforating arteries.

According to Mr. Lizars, the exit of the ischiatic artery from the pelvis may be found by placing the patient on his face, with the toes turned out, and drawing a line from the posterior superior spine of the ilium, to the fossa between the tuberosity of the ischium and great trochanter, but a little nearer to the former: the exit of the artery will be found opposite to the centre of this line.

The Obturator Artery. This is the smallest and most anterior of the four branches of the internal iliac which go out of the pelvis, and should be dissected before the pudic.

Fig. 46.—Represents the Surgical Anatomy of the Obturator Artery, in both its Normal and Abnormal Course, in connection with Femoral Hernia.



A, Anterior Superior Spine of the Ilium. B. Symphysis Pubis. C, The Rectus Muscle. D, The Peritoneum. E, Conjoined Tendons. F. Epigastric Artery. G, G, Two different courses of the Obturator Artery, when given off by the Epigastric. H. Crural Ring. I, Round Ligament of the Uterus. K, External Iliac Vein. L, External Iliac Artery. M, Tendon of Psoas Parvus Muscle, resting on Psoas Magnus. N. Iliacus Internus Muscle. O, Transversalis fascia. P, Circumflexa Ilii Artery. Q, Normal course of Obturator Artery. R, The Urinary Bladder. (See *Varieties of the Obturator artery.*)

It runs downwards and forwards below and within the brim of the true pelvis, in order to pass through the upper part of the obturator foramen. In this course it is accompanied by the obturator nerve which lies above, and the obturator vein which lies beneath it: it communicates with the artery of the opposite side by a branch crossing transversely behind the body of the pubis. When the obturator artery arises from the epigastric, its vein and nerve lie below it. Having passed through the obturator canal, it lies on the obturator externus muscle, covered by the pectineus, and there divides into two branches, an anterior and posterior.

The *Anterior and larger branch* descends between the adductor brevis and longus muscles, and supplies these, as well as the obturator externus, adductor magnus, and gracilis muscles. It anastomoses with the internal circumflex, and the muscular branches of the femoral artery. Some of its divisions extend into the perineum, and anastomose with the pudic artery.

It also detaches a small vessel, which descends along the internal margin of the obturator foramen, to communicate with the posterior branch: in this manner a kind of arterial circle is formed around the obturator foramen.

The *Posterior branch* descends along the outer edge of the obturator foramen, towards the tuberosity of the ischium, passing between the internal and external obturator muscles: it supplies the adjacent muscles and the capsular ligament of the hip-joint: it also sends a small branch through the notch in the inner margin of the acetabulum, to supply the Haversian body, round ligament, and head of the femur.

Before commencing the dissection of the pudic artery the student is recommended to direct his attention to the anatomy of the ano-perineal region.

ANO-PERINEAL REGION.

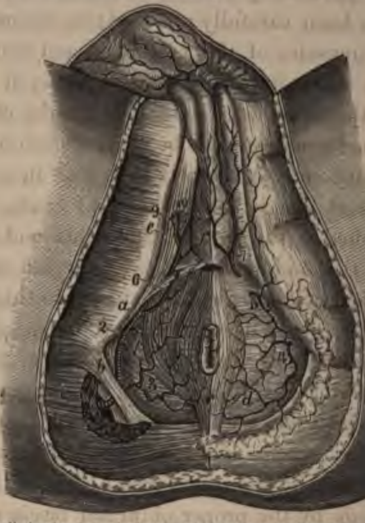
For the purpose of dissecting this region, the subject should be placed in the same position as in that recommended for the operation of lithotomy: the hands should be placed so as to grasp the outer edges of the feet, and retained in this situation by suitable bandages: the buttock being thus elevated, the rectum should be moderately distended with curled hair or tow, the knees held apart from each other, a staff introduced through the urethra into the bladder, and the scrotum well kept up towards the abdomen.

The *Ano-perineal region*, when fully exposed, presents, in its outline, the shape of a lozenge or rhomb; that is, the appearance of two triangles united at their bases. *The apex of the anterior triangle* corresponds in the middle line, anteriorly, to the root of the scrotum superficially, and still deeper and farther forward to the symphysis pubis and subpubic ligament. The *apex of the posterior triangle* corresponds posteriorly to the point of the coccyx, and to the posterior attachment of the ano-coccygeal ligament. The *lateral angles* correspond to the two tuberosities of the ischia. The *four sides* of the region are formed, *anteriorly*, by the anterior portion of the tuberosities of the ischia, by the ascending ramus of the ischium and descending ramus of the pubis at each side; and *posteriorly* at each side by the posterior portion of the tuberosities of the ischia, and by the great sacro-sciatic ligament, overlapped by the glutæus maximus muscle. A line drawn across from one tuberosity to the other would indicate the union of the two bases; this, however, is merely an artificial arrangement, as it does not accurately define the proper perineal from the anal portion of the region, since it must pass across the anterior part of the anus: but, if the line were made to describe a curve, the convexity of which, looking forwards, would in the middle line pass anterior to the anus, such a line would more correctly define the boundary of these two spaces, viz., the proper perineal and the anal, in this situation. As we pursue the dissection of this region, we will find that such a curved line does exist, and that it is formed by the two transverse perinei muscles uniting in front of the anus at their insertions in the central point of the perineum. Before raising the integuments the student would do well to observe the appearances on the surface of this region :—in the middle line, anteriorly, he will perceive an elevation corresponding to the root of the scrotum, and indicating the situation of the hinder part of the spongy portion of the urethra, and along its centre an elevated but narrow ridge, known by the name of the raphé of the perineum: this ridge terminates posteriorly at the orifice of the anus. The surface of the integument surrounding this orifice is thrown by the action of the superficial sphincter into a number of longitudinal folds, parallel with the longitudinal axis of the intestine. Behind this orifice we remark, along the middle line, more the appearance of a groove than of a ridge, leading posteriorly to the point of the coccyx. On either side of the elevation which denotes the situation of the urethra, we see a groove or channel terminating posteriorly along the side of the anus, and anteriorly running along the side of the scrotum upwards towards the abdomen. On raising the integuments from off the ano-perineal region we expose the *superficial fascia:* this layer varies in its structure according to the situation in which we examine it: in the perineal space, properly so called, it is coarse and strong, and presents a yellowish color, and is divisible into two layers, a *superficial* and a *deep.* The superficial layer is loose in its texture, containing a quantity of adipose tissue, the cells of which are united by areolar tissue: the deep layer is comparatively strong and membraniform. There is no distinction between these two layers as we pass into the anal portion of the region; for corresponding to the inferior surface of the transverse muscles of the perineum they become identified with each other, and are closely adherent to the middle perineal fascia at the posterior margin of each of these muscles, and at the central point of the perineum, in front of the anus. If we trace the two layers of superficial fascia farther back, we find them still united into one mass, which enters into and fills up the ischio-rectal spaces, which lie at the sides of the rectum and anus. The two layers of superficial fascia are also intimately united with one another corresponding to the tuberosities of the ischia, to which they become firmly adherent; and though this membrane appears to glide loosely over these prominences, when friction is exercised upon the integuments, yet, if after having removed the skin we attempt to draw away the fascia from the bone, we find it firmly adherent to it. Along the sides of the proper perineal space we find the superficial fascia firmly adherent to the ascending rami of the ischia, and descending rami of the pubes: as we examine this structure still more anteriorly we will observe, that, as it becomes related to the root of the scrotum and to the channels along its sides, the fascia loses all its adipose tissue, and the entire substance becomes areolar in its character.

When, in cases of extravasation of urine, either from laceration of the urethra from injury, or from previous ulceration in the dilated portion of the urethra behind the stricture, this fluid makes its way to the superficial perineal fascia, its course afterwards is remarkably uniform: in such cases it cannot pass backwards between the layers of the superficial fascia, because they become firmly united, both at the central point of the perineum and corresponding to the back part of the transverse muscles of the perineum; neither can it make its way backwards between the deep-seated surface of this fascia and the middle perineal fascia, because these fasciæ are closely connected with each other in the situations just alluded to. It cannot pass laterally, in consequence of the close attachment which the superficial fascia takes to the tuberosities of the ischia, and to the rami of the ischia and pubes: the urine, therefore, will pass along those situations where it meets with the least amount of resistance, and it will become extravasated freely into the scrotum, distending it exceedingly; it may then extend upwards to the anterior wall of the abdomen, conducted by the spermatic cord; and descend over Poupart's ligament into the superficial fascia of the upper portion of the thigh.

In this stage of the dissection the student will find the superficial sphincter lying between the layers of the superficial fascia; and whilst removing the integument from off this muscle he will observe what an exceedingly small amount of superficial fascia lies between it and the skin: it is closely connected with the integuments, and is of an elliptical form; its posterior *attachment*, or origin, is to the ano-coccygeal ligament, which springs from the tip of the coccyx posteriorly, and runs forwards to be connected with the back of the rectum; this ligament is merely a raphé formed by the union of the posterior portions of the levatores ani on the middle line: the anterior attachment of the sphincter is to the central point of the perineum, which is situated immediately

Fig. 47.—View of the Perineum, exhibiting the distribution of the Internal Pudic Artery.



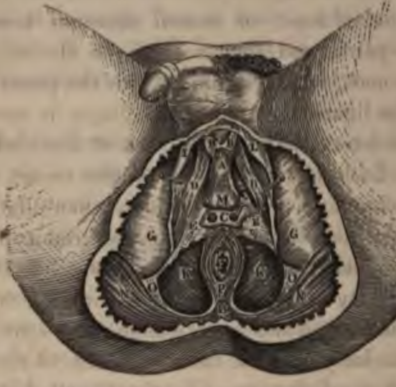
1, The Internal Pudic issuing from the Pelvis at the lower part of the great Sacro-Sciatic Foramen. 2, The same vessel after it has returned into the Pelvis through the small Sacro-Sciatic Foramen. 3, Inferior Hæmorrhoidal Artery. 4, 5, Superficial Perineal branches to the Perineum. 6, Transverse Perineal. 7, Perineal branch to the Scrotum and skin of the Penis. 8, Bulbo-urethral Artery. 9, Cavernous Artery. 10, Dorsal Artery of the Penis. *a*, Tuberosity of the Ischium. *b*, Greater Sacro-Sciatic Ligament. *c*, Sphincter of the Anus. *d*, Perineal Fascia, which is removed on the opposite side so as to expose the Anal Elevator Muscle. *e*, Ischio-Cavernous Muscle. *f*, Bulbo-urethral Muscle.

behind the bulb: into this point we have inserted the following muscles:—superficial sphincter, acceleratores urinæ, transversi perinei, and Wilson's muscles. We may now remove the entire of the superficial fascia from both the proper perineal and the anal spaces; and we will thus expose, in the former space, the middle perineal fascia, and, in the latter, the two ischio-rectal fossæ or spaces.

The *middle perineal fascia* will be seen when the superficial fascia has been carefully removed; it covers the under surface of the muscles of the perineum, and sends in septa between them from its deep-seated surface; it is to these muscles what the fascia lata is to the muscles of the thigh, and it is by some considered to be an extension of this fascia across the perineum. Anteriorly it is lost in a thin, loose, delicate expansion along the urethra and crura penis; laterally it is attached to the rami of the ischia and pubes; and posteriorly, in the middle line, it is connected with the central point of the perineum, whilst external to this point it is reflected behind the transverse perineal muscles, and is lost by becoming continuous with the two layers of fascia, which form the "anterior cul de sac" of the *ischio-rectal space or fossa*. This latter space may now be examined: it is bounded *internally* by the rectum, and the levator ani muscle covered on its outer surface by the ischio-rectal layer of the obturator fascia; *externally* by the proper obturator fascia covering the obturator internus muscle, and continuous inferiorly with the falciform process of the great sacro-sciatic ligament, and by the tuberosity of the ischium: *anteriorly* by the transverse muscles of the perineum, and by the union of the ischio-rectal with the proper obturator fascia, forming an anterior "cul de sac," or fossa, with which, as we have already stated, we find continuous the posterior part of the middle perineal fascia: *posteriorly* by another "cul de sac," formed by the ischio-rectal and proper obturator fascia, becoming continuous above the great sacro-sciatic ligament and inferior border of the with the perineal arteries veins and nerves at both sides, the *triangular ligament of the urethra* or *deep perineal fascia* will be exposed. It occupies the deepest portion of the proper perineal space: its *apex* passes in front of the subpubic ligament to which it is attached, and is ultimately lost in affording a covering to the upper surface of the corpus cavernosum penis: its *sides* are attached to the rami of the ischia and pubes, where they become continuous with the obturator fascia; and its *base* presents the appearance of a double arch, though not well defined, somewhat resembling the velum pendulum palati: the middle portion of the base is connected with the central point of the perineum, and the arched portion at each side is lost by becoming continuous with the anterior "cul de sac" of the ischio-rectal fossa under cover of the transversus perinei muscle. The triangular ligament is divisible into two layers, the anterior or superficial, and the posterior or deep; and situated between the layers we find the following parts:—externally, close to the rami of the ischia and pubes, the pudic artery of each side; near the base, and more internally, the two arteries of the bulb, with their small branches to the bulb of the urethra and to Cowper's glands: still nearer to the middle line we find the small glands of Cowper, with their ducts; a quantity of exceedingly fine areolar tissue is also situated here, and a small part of the membranous portion of the urethra near the bulb corresponds to the interval between the layers. Through an opening in this ligament is transmitted the urethra: the part of this canal which pierces the ligament corresponds to the junction of the membranous portion with the spongy: consequently, the spongy portion, which includes the bulb, is in front of the triangular ligament, and the principal portion of the membranous and the entire of the prostatic portions are behind it. The opening for transmitting the urethra is, in the adult, about an inch below the symphysis pubis, and two inches from the tuberosity of the ischium, and about half an inch above the centre of the base of the ligament: this orifice does not present a distinct margin, as there is a production sent off from its anterior layer forwards over the spongy portion, and another backwards (funnel-shaped) from its posterior layer, which invests the membranous and prostatic portions of the urethra. It is this latter production that is usually termed the posterior layer of the triangular ligament: it unites with the vesical fascia and with the recto-vesical fascia, as it surrounds the prostate gland. An American writer states that the part of it on the inferior surface of the prostate gland is reflected on the front of the rectum, so as to form a "cul de sac" opposed to that of the peritoneum; and the division of this "cul de sac" in lithotomy he conceives to be attended with considerable risk of abscesses and peritonitis.

The student is now recommended to attend to the anatomy of the *fasciæ* of the pelvis, with which that of the perineum is intimately connected. When the peritoneum has been removed from the iliac fossa of either side, the *fascia iliaca* will be exposed; there is, however, between the peritoneum and the iliac fascia, a layer of adipose and loose areolar tissue intermixed, which extends in every direction, as well into the pelvis as on the back part of the structures which form the anterior wall of the abdomen. If we examine this sub-peritoneal layer of fascia, we will find that as we trace it internally towards the true pelvis, it becomes more condensed in its structure, and, assuming the appearance of a distinct fascia, it becomes connected with the fascia iliaca along the external side of the external iliac artery; it then passes *around* this artery and its accompanying vein; and internally to the latter vessel it is attached to the pelvic fascia. It is not always of equal strength, but sometimes we are able to trace distinct fibrous bands in this structure, passing across the artery and the vein. By means of this fascia the vessels are connected together in a *proper sheath*, and are more or less securely fixed upon the iliac fascia which passes behind them. This fascia is continuous, inferiorly behind Poupart's ligament, with the *fascia propria* of Sir A. Cooper, and has sometimes been described as a prolongation of this latter structure upwards over the vessels: below Poupart's ligament it still continues its course along the femoral vessels, forming their sheath. There is no doubt that it was this fascia which presented an obstruction to the passing of the ligature in Mr. Abernethy's second operation on the external iliac artery. In describing this operation, he says, "The pulsations of the artery made it clearly distinguishable from the contiguous parts, but I could not get my finger round it with the facility which I expected. This was the only circumstance which caused any delay in the performance of the operation. After ineffectual trials to pass my finger beneath the artery, *I was obliged to make a slight*

Fig. 49.—Represents the Surgical Anatomy of the Male Perineum after the Integument, Superficial Fascia, portion of the Acceleratores Urinæ Muscles, Superficial Vessels, &c. have been removed.



A, The Corpus Spongiosum Urethræ. B, B, The anterior forked termination of the Acceleratores Urinæ Muscles. C, Cowper's Glands and their Arterial Twigs from the Artery of the Bulb of each side, between the layers of the Triangular Ligament; a portion of the anterior layer has been removed. D, D, The Right and Left Erector Penis Muscle. E, E, The Triangular Ligament or Deep Perineal Fascia. F, The Anus. G, G, The Ischiatic Tuberosities. H, The Coccyx. K, K, The Levatores Ani Muscles. L, L, Portion of the Superficial Fascia, and its connection to the Rami of Ischium and Pubis. M, The Bulb of the Urethra. N, N, The Great Glutæi Muscles. O, O, Portion of the Great Sciatic Ligament. P, The Superficial Sphincter Muscle.

incision on either side of it, in the same manner as is necessary when it is taken up in the thigh, where the fascia which binds it down in its situation is strong."*

The student may now follow the course of the *fascia iliaca*. This fascia is attached to the crest of the ilium, covers the psoas and iliacus internus muscles and anterior crural nerve; and passes underneath or behind the external iliac vessels, in order to descend into the true pelvis. At its connection with the brim of the pelvis, it receives the name of *pelvic fascia*. Having descended as far as the upper edge of the levator ani, it divides into two layers, between which this muscle is placed; the *internal layer* or *vesical* descends towards the bottom of the pelvis, and then ascends on the side of the bladder and its neck, where it unites with the posterior layer of the triangular ligament. This vesical layer is confined to the anterior and lateral part of the neck of the bladder, and goes no farther back, along the side of this viscus, than the spine of the ischium: hence the bladder, when dilating, performs a rotation which throws its upper extremity forwards, on account of its being tied down anteriorly, while the posterior part is at liberty to dilate. From the inferior surface of the vesical fascia we find two layers passing off,—one between the rectum posteriorly, and the inferior fundus of the bladder and under surface of the prostate gland, called the recto-vesical or Tyrrell's fascia; the other passing along the sides and on the under surface of the rectum, called the rectal fascia. The *external layer* of the pelvic fascia, or the *obturator fascia*, descends between the obturator internus muscle and levator ani, and divides into the proper obturator fascia and the ischio-rectal or anal fascia. Now, these are the two fasciæ which line the ischio-rectal cavity,—viz., the *obturator* on the outside, and the *ischio-rectal* on the inside: the former has its external surface applied to the obturator muscle and pudic artery, and its inferior edge is inserted into a production of the great sacro-sciatic ligament; while the latter, peculiarly thin, is applied to the outer surface of the levator ani and lower part of the rectum.

---

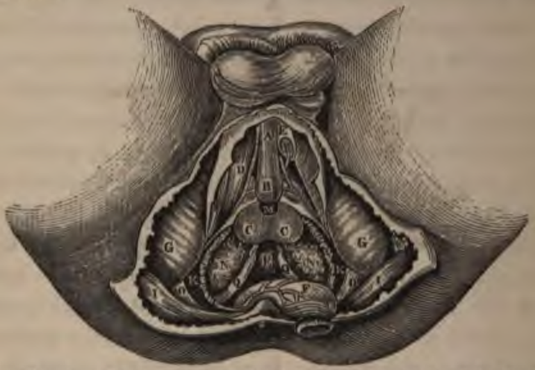
* Abernethy's Surgical Works, vol. i. p. 307.

The arteries of the ano-perineal region will be described when speaking of the branches of the internal pudic.

The *Lateral Operation for Lithotomy.*—The rectum having been previously emptied by an enema, and the patient desired to retain his urine, the hair of the perineum should be shaved, and the presence of the stone again ascertained. A grooved staff is then to be introduced into the bladder, and the patient tied, as already directed when speaking of the dissection of this region, and laid on his back, on a table of convenient height. The scrotum being raised by an assistant, the operator, sitting on a low chair, or kneeling on one knee before the patient, holds the staff vertically in his left hand, keeping it firmly drawn upwards, and at the same time making it sufficiently prominent in the perineum. Some prefer committing the staff to the care of an assistant during the operation. The first incision should be commenced about half an inch below the symphysis pubis, or at a point corresponding to about an inch in front of the anus, and carried downwards and outwards on the left side of the perineum, until it has fairly passed the interval between the rectum and tuberosity of the ischium. This incision will divide the superficial fascia and probably the outer portion of the superficial sphincter, and form a wide, gaping wound. The second incision should commence about half an inch lower down than the commencement of the first, and, being carried in the same direction, will almost invariably divide the long perineal artery and nerve, and certainly the transverse artery of the perineum, and will pass between the accelerator urinæ and erector penis muscles. It should also be carried sufficiently far back to cut across the transversus perinei muscle. The staff is now to be lateralized, so as to turn its convexity a little to the operator's right side.

The point of the knife should now be passed through the base of the triangular ligament, and then carried behind the bulb into the membranous portion of the urethra, in which the grooved staff will be felt. By passing the knife into this part of the urethra sufficiently behind the bulb, the artery of the bulb will be avoided. As soon as the point of the knife has been made to enter the groove in the staff, it should be moved in it from side to side, in order to be certain that it is fairly in contact with this instrument. In performing this incision into the membranous portion of the urethra, the edge of the knife should neither be turned too much outwards, for fear of wounding the pudic artery, nor too much inwards, lest the rectum be wounded, but in an intermediate direction. The point of the knife must now be passed onwards steadily in the long axis of the prostate gland, giving it, at the same time, by depressing its handle, *the direction upwards as if towards the anterior wall of the abdomen;* and according as the knife is thus made to move along the groove, the handle of the staff should be simultaneously depressed. In this manner the membranous and anterior part of the prostatic portion of the urethra will be divided; and as the urethra, in passing through the prostate gland, is nearer to its upper than to its lower surface, one-third of the gland will be left above the incision, and two-thirds below. The knife being withdrawn, the first finger of the left hand is to be introduced into the incision, and the nail of it into the groove in the staff. The surgeon now lays aside the first knife, and next employs a long, narrow, probe-pointed knife, which he inserts into the groove in the staff, directed by the fore-finger of the left hand. With this instrument carefully pushed in the direction already indicated, so much of the prostate gland will be divided as may be considered necessary. This knife having been withdrawn, the surgeon should insert the fore-finger of the left hand into the wound in the prostate, and so pass it along the staff into the neck of the bladder. When the surgeon feels that the passage is now clear into the bladder, he should still keep his finger in the same position, its dorsal surface being directed upwards; he will then take the blunt gorget in his right hand, and, resting its concavity on the dorsum of the index finger of his left, he will steadily pass it along into the bladder. The staff should now be withdrawn; the gorget should be then turned so as to direct its concavity upwards, whilst the handle of the instrument should be depressed at the same moment: in this movement the stone may possibly roll along the gorget into the hand of the operator; if not, however, the forceps should be introduced on the concavity of the gorget, one of its blades being directed upwards, and the other, of course, downwards. When this instrument is fairly within the bladder, the gorget may be withdrawn, and the forceps turned so that the blades will look, one inwards and the other outwards. At first it is only to be used as a probe to feel for the stone; when this is ascertained, it is to

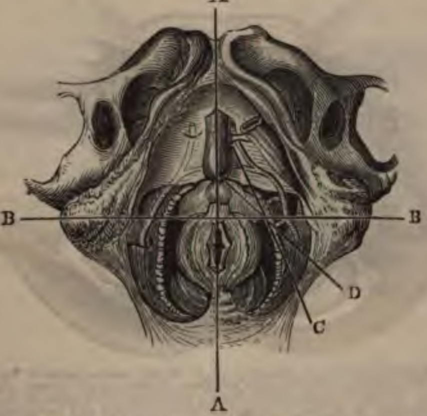
Fig. 50.—Represents the Surgical Anatomy of the deep portions of the Male Perineum. The Rectum has been divided and turned back. Left Crus Penis divided and a portion removed.



A, Corpus Spongiosum Urethræ. B, The Bulb. C. C, The two lateral Lobes of the Prostate. D, The Right Erector Penis Muscle. E, The left Crus Penis divided so as to show the Artery of the Corpus Cavernosum. F, The Rectum turned down. G, G, The Tuberosities of the Ischia. I, I. The Great Glutæl Muscles. K, K, The Levatores Ani Muscles divided and partly removed. M, The membranous portion of Urethra. N, N, The Vesiculæ Seminales. O, O, The Great Sciatic Ligament. P, The base of the Bladder. Q, Q, The two Vasa Deferentia becoming tortuous before their termination.

be taken hold of by its short axis and withdrawn. If it be very large, it may be necessary to break it with Le Cat's forceps, and in this case great care will be necessary to wash out, subsequently, every remaining fragment. If, after the operation, we find the urine does not come through the wound, but through the urethra, and stained with blood, we know that hemorrhage has occurred: we should, therefore, at once remove the clots which block up the wound, and fill it with a sponge, or with charpie, surrounded by a small bag, and secured to a female catheter which has been previously passed through them. The catheter should be made to enter fairly within the bladder, in order to allow the free escape of the urine.

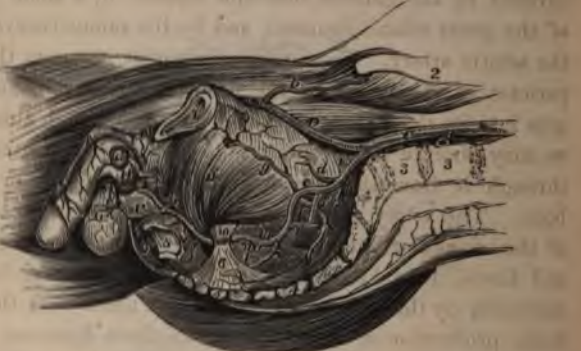
Fig. 51.—Represents the Normal Relations of the parts concerned in Lithotomy performed in the Perineal Region. (After Maclise.)



A, A, Median line intersecting B, B, a transverse line dividing the Perineum into the Anterior and Posterior Regions. C, The incision through the integument crossing at an acute angle the incision D, which divides the Prostate.

The Internal Pudic Artery.—The description of this vessel has been purposely deferred till the present stage of the dissection of the pelvis. This artery is larger than the obturator, but smaller than the sciatic, with which it usually arises in common. It may be divided into four stages: in the first it lies within the cavity of the pelvis; in the second it is situated outside this cavity; in the third it is again within its osseous walls; and in the fourth stage it is lodged

Fig. 52.—Represents the course of the Internal Pudic Artery to its termination. The Viscera and Fasciæ have been removed.



A, Aorta. B, Left Common Iliac Artery divided. C, Right Common Iliac. D, External Iliac. E, Internal Iliac. a, Situation of the origin of the Epigastric Artery. b, Circumflexa Ilii Artery. d, Umbilical Artery divided. e, Anterior part of the Internal Iliac. f, Posterior part. g, Obturator Artery. h, A small artery sending twigs into the first Sacral Foramen. I, Lateral Sacral Artery. k, Glutæal Artery passing out of the Pelvis above and in front of the first Sacral Nerve. l, The Sciatic Artery. m, m, Internal Pudic Artery. n, A Hæmorrhoidal branch from the Internal Pudic in its first stage. o, External Hæmorrhoidal Arteries. P, Long, or Superficial Perineal Artery, giving off in this instance s, the transverse Perineal branch. r, Scrotal branches of the Superficial Perineal Artery. t, t, t, Dorsal Artery of the Penis. 1, Symphysis Pubis. 2, Crest of Ilium. 3, 3, Bodies of the fourth and fifth Lumbar Vertebræ. 4, 4, Sacrum. 5, Coccyx. 6, Lesser Sciatic Ligament, with Coccygeus Muscle. 7, Great Sciatic Ligament. 8, A portion of the lower end of the Rectum. 9, Right half of the External or superficial Sphincter. 10, Spine of the Ischium. 11, Obturator Internus Muscle. 12, Septum Scroti. 13, Membranous part of the Urethra dissected and cut. 14, Bulbous portion of Corpus Spongiosum. 15, Section of left Corpus Cavernosum. 16, Suspensory Ligament of the Penis.

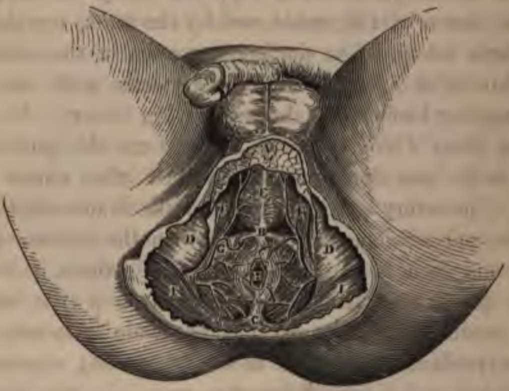
between the two layers of the triangular ligament of the urethra. In the *first stage* it descends in front of the sacral plexus of nerves and pyriformis muscle, between the rectum and outer wall of the pelvis. Usually it lies at first somewhat external to the sciatic artery, but at the lower portion of the first stage it lies anterior and internal to it, and escapes from this cavity through the inferior part of the great sciatic notch, accompanied by its own nerve, the sciatic artery, and the sciatic nerve. At its exit from the pelvis it passes between the lower edge of the pyriformis muscle and the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. After the pudic artery has escaped from the pelvis, it enters its *second stage*, and in this situation lies behind the spine of the ischium, near the attachment of the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament to its point. Here, as we dissect the artery from behind, we will find it covered by the glutæus maximus muscle, by a small portion of the great sciatic ligament, and by the ramus coccygeus of the sciatic artery. The pudic artery next re-enters the bony parietes of the pelvis by the lesser sciatic notch, and thus gets into its *third stage*. As it is passing through this notch, we may observe the obturator internus muscle also escaping through it from the pelvis, the muscle lying closer to the bone. The artery in its third stage ascends towards the base of the triangular ligament, lying between the obturator muscle and fascia, in a kind of prismatic canal, which is bounded *internally* by the obturator fascia and its union with the semilunar production of the great sacro-sciatic ligament, which latter extends as far forwards as the crus penis; *externally* by the ischium and obturator internus, and *inferiorly*, where we observe the narrow portion of the canal, it is bounded by the attachment of the great sciatic ligament to the ischium. Professor Alcock maintains, that corresponding to this situation the artery does not lie between the fascia and the muscle, but that it is contained "in a canal in the obturator fascia."*

The pudic artery, finally, pierces the back part of the triangular ligament, near the external attachment of its base, and enters its *fourth stage*. In this stage the artery of each side is situated between the two layers of the ligament corresponding to the attachment of its sides to the rami of the ischia and pubes; and close to the sub-pubic ligament it pierces the anterior layer of the triangular ligament at its apex, and terminates in the dorsal artery of the penis. Throughout these several stages the pudic nerve accompanies the artery.

---

* Todd's Cyclopædia, p. 835.

Fig. 53.—Represents the Surgical Anatomy of the Ano-perineal Region in the Male, when the integuments and superficial fascia have been removed.



A, Portion of the Superficial Fascia. B, The central point of the Perineum. C, The Coccyx. D, D, The Ischiatic Tuberosities. E, The Acceleratores Urinæ Muscles meeting in the central Raphé. F, F, The Erectores Penis Muscles of each side. G, The Transverse Muscle of the Perineum of the right side. H, The Anus. I, I, The Great Glutæal Muscles.

Within the pelvis the pudic artery gives off branches to the rectum, bladder, and vesiculæ seminales in the male, and to the upper part of the vagina in the female:—to the muscles and sacral plexus of nerves.

As the artery turns round the spine of the ischium, it supplies the glutæus maximus and rotator muscles in this situation. Its principal branches are given off in its third and fourth stages. They are the following:—

External or Inferior Hæmorrhoidal.
Long or Superficial Perineal.
Transverse Perineal.
Artery of the Bulb.
Artery of Corpus Cavernosum.
Dorsal Artery of the Penis.

The External Hæmorrhoidal. These arteries, generally two in number, come off from the pudic artery in its third stage, and pierce the obturator fascia to reach the inferior part of the rectum. They supply the mass of adipose and areolar tissue in the ischio-rectal excavation, together with the parts belonging to the lower portion of the rectum and the skin of this region, and communicate with the middle and superior hæmorrhoidal arteries.

The *Long Perineal Artery* arises from the pudic in its third stage, pierces the obturator fascia, then curves under, that is, posterior and superficial to the transversus perinei muscle, and advances in company with the inferior perineal nerve and vein in the triangular space between the erector penis, accelerator urinæ, and transversus perinei muscles; being nearer to the ischium than to the raphé or middle line of the perineum. In this course it supplies the two last-mentioned muscles and the sphincter ani and integuments, after which it penetrates the septum scroti and forms a net-work of vessels, both in the septum and in the subcutaneous areolar tissue of the rest of the scrotum. It anastomoses with the arteries of the spermatic cord and with the external pudic arteries. This artery may possibly escape in the lateral operation for the stone.

In the female this branch is larger in proportion to the other branches, and is the artery of the labium.

The *Transverse Artery of the Perineum* is a small branch which arises from the pudic at the termination of its third stage; it then pierces the obturator fascia in this situation, and the base of the triangular ligament, and passes inwards and forwards on the cutaneous surface of the transversus perinæi muscle, which it supplies; it then passes to the central point of the perineum, where it anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side. This artery is sometimes a branch of the long perineal: it is necessarily divided in the lateral operation for the stone.

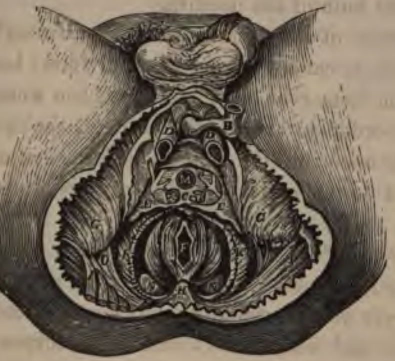
The *Artery of the Bulb.* This artery arises from the pudic in its fourth stage; it then passes downwards, forwards, and inwards, between the layers of the triangular ligament, near its posterior lunated margin, and terminates by dividing into two branches; viz.: a small one to Cowper's gland, and a larger to the bulb of the urethra.

On account of the fibrous structure through which this artery passes, it cannot retract when divided: hence the great danger from hemorrhage when it has been wounded in lithotomy. In order to avoid this accident, the operator should endeavor to open into the membranous portion of the urethra towards its lower surface, and as far behind the bulb as possible.

The *Artery of the Corpus Cavernosum.* This artery arises from the pudic immediately after it has passed through the anterior layer of the triangular ligament: it then pierces the crus penis, and advances through the corpus cavernosum, distributing its branches on either side, and gradually approaching the middle line. It communicates through the *septum pectiniforme* with the artery of the opposite side, and ramifies in the areolar tissue of the corpus cavernosum.

The following is Müller's opinion as to the distribution of the arteries of the corpus cavernosum:—"The arteries of the corpus cavernosum have two sets of branches:—the one set are the ultimate ramuscules, which terminate in the minute radicles of the veins, and are destined for the nutrition of the part; the other set come off from the side of the arteries, and consist of short, slightly curled branches, terminating abruptly by a rounded, apparently closed extremity, turned back somewhat on itself. These are sometimes single; sometimes several arise by one stem, forming a tuft. I have named them *arteriæ helicinæ*. They project into the venous cells, and are found principally in the posterior part of the corpora cavernosa, and of the corpus spongiosum urethræ. They are not distinct in man. Although no openings can be discovered in the coats of these free arterial excrescences, yet there is no doubt but that it is through them that the blood, which is ordinarily carried into the texture of the corpora cavernosa by the minute nutrient branches of the arteries, is, in the act of erection, poured directly into the venous cells and sinuses. When the arteria corporis cavernosi is injected with size and vermilion, the injected matter always fills the venous cells; and if it is afterwards washed from them, the arteriæ helicinæ will be seen injected. The means by which,

Fig. 54.—Represents the Surgical Anatomy of the Male Perineum: the Crus Penis of each side divided and partly removed. The membranous portion of Urethra divided behind the Bulb; and the latter with the Corpus Spongiosum are turned forwards. The urethral opening in Triangular Ligament is seen, as well as the vessels between its layers. The anterior layer opened and some of it cut away.



B, The Bulb. C, Cowper's Glands receiving twigs from the Artery of the Bulb. D, D, The two Crura Penis. E, E, The Triangular Ligament or deep Perineal Fascia; a portion of its anterior layer removed. F, The Anus. G, G, The Tuberosities of the Ischia. H, The Coccyx. I, I, The Great Glutæi Muscles. K, K, The Levatores Ani Muscles partly removed. L, The Artery of the Bulb divided. M, The Urethral opening in Triangular Ligament. N, N, The Rectum. O, The Great Sciatic Ligament.

during life, they are enabled to force blood into the cells must be the increased attraction exerted between their coats and the blood by the nervous influence transmitted to them by the spinal cord, in consequence of which attraction an increased quantity of blood goes to them. This throws new light, at the same time, upon the mutual action of the blood and smaller vessels in other parts, and upon the phenomenon of active turgescence, or turgor vitalis. The blood is returned from the corpora cavernosa partly by small veins, running, at the sides and on the surface of these bodies, into the vena dorsalis, partly by deeper veins, which issue from the corpora cavernosa at their root, and enter immediately the venous plexus, situated behind the symphysis pubis. The fact, then, that the vena dorsalis does not return the blood from the deep veins, shows that no pressure on the former vein alone can cause accumulation of blood in the penis."*

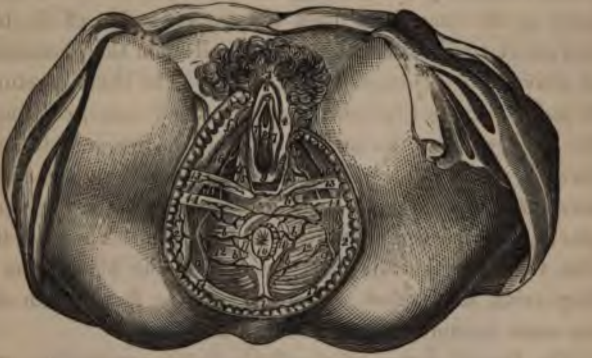
The *Dorsal Artery of the Penis* is the terminating artery of the internal pudic; it ascends between the crus penis and symphysis pubis, then advances in front of the sub-pubic ligament, and through the substance of the suspensory ligament of the penis, to arrive in the longitudinal groove on the upper surface of the corpus cavernosum. As it advances in this groove, it supplies the integuments and fibrous layer of the corpus cavernosum. Having arrived as far as the glans penis, it communicates with its fellow of the opposite side, both above and below, so as to form a vascular ring, from which vessels are detached to the glans and the prepuce. The corresponding nerve accompanies the artery lying on its outside; and the dorsal vein, which is common to both arteries, is found on the middle line between them.

In the female, the terminating branches of the pudic artery are distributed in an analogous manner; that is, one branch is distributed on the dorsum of the clitoris, and the other terminates in its corpus cavernosum.

---

* Baly's Trans. of Müller's Physiology, vol. i. p. 226.

Fig. 55.—Represents the distribution of some of the branches of the Pudic Artery in the Female.



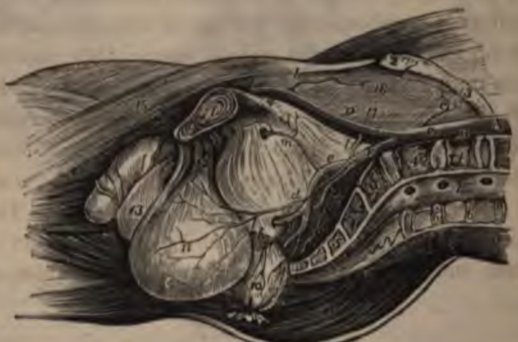
1, The Coccyx. 2, 2, The Tuberosities of the Ischia. 3, The Mons Veneris. 4, The left Labium. 5, Clitoris. 6, Prepuce of Clitoris. 7, 7, The Labia Minora. 8, Orifice of Urethra. 9, Entrance to Vagina. 10, The Anus. 11, 11, Superficial Sphincter. 12, 12, The Levatores Ani Muscles, 13, 13, The Transversalis Alter Muscle of each side. 14, 14, The Transversales Perinei Muscles. 15, 15, Constrictor of Vagina. 16, 16, The Ischio Cavernosa Muscles. 17, 17, The Great Glutæi Muscles. a, Continuation of the Internal Pudic Artery of the right side. b, b, b, b, External Hæmorrhoidal Arteries. c, Twig passing over the Tuberosity of the Ischium. d, Deep Perineal Artery. e, Branch to the Great Labium. f, f, Artery of the Clitoris. g, Continuation of Internal Pudic Artery of left side. h, Transverse Artery of the Perineum.

We shall now examine the branches of the internal iliac which remain *within* the pelvis.

The Ilio-Lumbar Artery arises from the posterior part of the internal iliac, and takes a direction upwards, backwards, and outwards in front of the lumbo-sacral nerve, and behind the obturator nerve and psoas muscle; in this situation it divides into its two principal branches, the iliac and the lumbar.

The *Iliac branch* takes a transverse direction beneath the anterior crural nerve and psoas and iliacus internus muscles; some of its branches ramify on the surface of the muscle, and others in a more deep-seated situation. From the latter branches arises the *nutritious artery of the ilium*, which enters the canal observable near the centre of the internal iliac fossa. The *Lumbar branch* ascends under cover of the psoas muscle and on the front of the lumbo-sacral nerve: one of its branches enters the lateral foramen of the spine between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the sacrum, and is distributed on the tunics of the spinal marrow; the others are distributed to the psoas and quadratus lumborum muscles. This lumbar branch sometimes arises from the middle sacral artery.

Fig. 56.—Represents a lateral view of the Arteries of the Pelvis in the Male subject. A vertical incision has been carried through the Symphysis Pubis, the middle of the Lumbar Vertebræ, and the Sacrum. The Viscera are drawn downwards.



A, Aorta. B, Left Common Iliac Artery divided. C, Right Common Iliac. D, External Iliac. E, Femoral Artery. F, Internal Iliac. a, Epigastric Artery cut. b, Internal Circumflexa Ilii. c, Twig from the Ilio-lumbar Artery. d, Vesical Artery. e, Anterior part of Internal Iliac Artery. f, Internal Pudic Artery. g, Sciatic Artery. h, Middle Hæmorrhoidal Artery coming from the Pudic, and giving off vesical twigs. k, Posterior part of Internal Iliac Artery. l, Ilio-lumbar Artery. m, Obturator Artery. n, Glutæal Artery. o, A small branch passing into the first Sacral Foramen. p, Lateral Sacral Artery a little lower down. 1, Symphysis Pubis. 2, Anterior Superior Spine of the Ilium. 3, Crest of the Ilium. 4, 4, Divided last two Lumbar Vertebræ. 5, 5, Divided Sacrum. 6, 6, Divided spinous processes of the two last Lumbar Vertebræ. 7, Termination of the Spinal Canal. 8, Erector Spinæ Muscle of the right side. 9, Glutæus Maximus Muscle. 10, Rectum divided, tied, and turned down. 11, Bladder drawn down. 12, Anterior Ligaments of the Bladder. 13, Scrotum. 14, Corpus Cavernosum of the left side divided. 15, Sartorius Muscle. 16, Iliac and Psoas Muscle, covered by 17, the Iliac Fascia.

The communications of the ilio-lumbar artery are extremely important: its lumbar branch communicates with the proper lumbar and intercostal arteries, and its iliac branch communicates freely at the crest of the ilium with the glutæal, circumflexa ilii, and external circumflex femoris arteries. This explains how blood is freely carried to the extremities when the iliac artery or lower part of the aorta has been rendered impervious.

The LATERAL SACRAL ARTERY descends obliquely inwards on the front of the sacral plexus, being separated from the middle sacral by the trunk of the sympathetic nerve, and covered in front by the pelvic viscera. The *external branches*, usually four in number, enter the sacral foramina and supply the membranes within the spinal canal: they anastomose with the proper spinal arteries, and by branches which pass through the posterior sacral foramina communicate with the coccygeal branch of the sciatic artery. The *internal branches* are distributed to the pelvic viscera, and anastomose with the middle sacral, and with those of the opposite side. The *inferior* or *terminating branch* communicates in the form of an arch with the corresponding division of the middle sacral artery.

The MIDDLE HÆMORRHOIDAL ARTERY descends obliquely upon the anterior and lateral parts of the rectum, which it supplies. It communicates superiorly with the hæmorrhoidal branches of the inferior mesenteric artery, and inferiorly with those of the pudic.

The VESICAL ARTERY arises from the lowest part of the internal iliac, immediately before the latter vessel contributes to form the superior vesical ligament. It accompanies the ureter to the inferior region of the bladder, and its branches are distributed to this reservoir and to the prostate gland, vesiculæ seminales, and urethra. One of its branches, the *deferential artery*, has been particularly mentioned by *Sir A. Cooper:* he describes it as the "second artery" in the spermatic cord, the spermatic artery being the first, and the cremasteric the third. "It takes its origin from the vesical artery, close to the commencement of the ligamentous remains of the umbilical artery;" near the inferior fundus of the bladder it "divides into two sets of branches, one set descending to the vesicula seminalis and to the termination of the vas deferens; the other, ascending upon the vas deferens, runs in a serpentine direction upon the coat of that vessel, passing through the whole length of the spermatic cord; and when it reaches the cauda epididymis, it divides into two sets of branches,—one advancing to unite with the spermatic artery, to supply the testicle and epididymis, the other passing backwards to the tunica vaginalis and cremaster."*

The bladder is supplied from other arteries also, viz., those given off by the pudic, obturator, and middle hæmorrhoidal. There are also branches given off by the umbilical artery; but they are only pervious in a part of their course.

The UMBILICAL ARTERY.—This vessel is merely a continuation of the internal iliac artery as it runs along the bladder towards the umbilicus: after a course of about two inches it becomes closed, and degenerates into the ligamentous remains of the umbilical artery, which, when pervious in the fœtus, carried the blood to the placenta. This artery gives off small branches to the bladder.

The UTERINE ARTERY proceeds to the superior and lateral parts of the vagina and beneath the bladder. Having supplied these parts, it ascends on the side of the uterus, between the folds of its broad ligament: here it divides into several branches, which penetrate its structure and spread in a tortuous manner on both its surfaces, to communicate with its fellow of the opposite side: some of them ascend to the round ligament, and Fallopian tubes, and anastomose with the spermatic arteries; and one or more of them descend on the vagina. These arteries are remarkable for the great tortuosity of all their branches, even the smallest; and this character they preserve when they become greatly enlarged, as in pregnancy.

---

* "Observations on the Structure and Diseases of the Testis," p. 33.

The VAGINAL ARTERY is equal in size to the uterine in the young subject, but smaller than it after puberty. It descends on the side of the vagina, to which it distributes several branches. It also sends a branch to the bladder, and supplies the external organs of generation.

EXTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY.

This vessel arises from the common iliac nearly opposite the superior extremity of the sacro-iliac symphysis, and descends obliquely forwards and outwards towards the centre of Poupart's ligament. The length of the artery varies according to the situation at which the bifurcation of the common iliac takes place: generally speaking, however, it is about three and a half or four inches in length. *Posteriorly*, it corresponds to the external iliac vein, which separates its origin from that of the internal iliac artery, the vein lying in the angle between the two arteries; and farther onwards, the psoas muscle and iliac fascia are situated behind it. On the right side the commencement of the right common iliac vein lies posterior to it. *Anteriorly*, it is covered by the peritoneum, and near Poupart's ligament by the circumflexa ilii vein, which sometimes, however, passes behind it. *Externally*, the fascia iliaca and some fibres of the psoas muscle separate it from the anterior crural nerve, which lies behind the fascia, deeply imbedded between the psoas and iliacus muscles: a branch of the genito-crural nerve is also found running along the artery in this situation, and inclining to its anterior surface. *Internally*, near Poupart's ligament, we see its accompanying vein, lying also on a plane posterior to the artery; and on the inner side of the vein we may observe the septum crurale, or "fascia propria" of Sir A. Cooper, lying across the internal opening of the crural canal. On a plane posterior to the artery, in the male subject, the vas deferens, as it descends into the pelvis, lies internal to it. The artery and vein will be found surrounded completely by the sub-peritoneal layer of fascia already described. The student should bear in mind that the anterior crural nerve is external to the artery and on a deeper plane; and that the external iliac vein is at first posterior, and afterwards, near Poupart's ligament, becomes internal to the artery.

Operation of tying the External Iliac Artery.—Mr. Abernethy's method.—The external iliac artery was first tied by Mr. Abernethy, in the year 1796, in a case of femoral aneurism. He had previously tied the femoral artery, according to Brasdor's plan, on the capillary side of the aneurism; but, dangerous hemorrhage having occurred on the fifteenth day after the operation, he proceeded to tie the external iliac artery.

Having separately divided the integuments and aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle, for about three inches in extent over the course of the artery, he next passed his finger beneath the margin of the internal oblique and transversalis muscles, and divided them in the same direction. The peritoneum being next pushed upwards and inwards, he proceeded to separate the vein from the artery. In this, however, as already stated, much difficulty was experienced until the fascia, which covered and united them, was divided; this was done with much caution, and a ligature passed round the artery from within outwards. In his next case he proceeded in a similar way, except that he made his incision not over, but in a line a little external to, the course of the artery, in order to avoid the epigastric. In both these cases he failed; but in the third, in 1806, the patient perfectly recovered. Mr. Freer, of Birmingham, performed the operation in 1806; Mr. Tomlinson operated in 1807, and in a second instance in 1809,—in both cases with success. In 1811, the operation of tying this artery with a single ligature was successfully performed in this city by the late Mr. Kirby. During the operation he experienced the same difficulty from the sub-peritoneal layer of fascia that Mr. Abernethy encountered in his operation.* In 1814 Sir A. Cooper had performed this operation seven times, and four out of seven cases were successful. The artery has also been tied in this city by Todd, Wilmot, Porter, Houston, Bellingham, &c.: in all, it has been tied about forty-three times for aneurism of the femoral artery.†

Sir A. Cooper's Operation on the External Iliac Artery.— "A semilunar incision is made through the integuments in the direction of the fibres of the aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle. One extremity of this incision will be situated near the spine of the ilium; the other will terminate a little above the inner margin of the abdominal ring. The aponeurosis of the external oblique muscle will be exposed, and is to be divided throughout the extent and in the direction of the external wound. The flap which is thus formed being raised, the spermatic cord will be seen passing under the margin of the internal oblique and transverse muscles. The opening in the fascia which lines the transverse muscle, and through which the spermatic cord passes, is situated in the mid-space between the anterior superior spine of the ilium, and the symphysis pubis. The epigastric artery runs precisely along the inner margin of this opening, beneath which the external iliac artery is situated. If the finger, therefore, be passed under the spermatic cord, through this opening in the fascia, it will come into immediate contact with the artery, which lies on the outside of the external iliac vein. The artery and vein are connected by dense cellular tissue, which must be separated, in order to allow of the ligature being passed round the former."*

---

* "Cases in Surgery by John Kirby," p. 104.

† Crisp on the Structure, Diseases, &c. of the Blood-Vessels, p. 226.

According to Mr. Abernethy's method, two-thirds of the longitudinal incision are made over a portion of peritoneum which closely lines the abdominal muscles, and does not require to be separated: it is therefore uselessly endangered. Moreover, the division of the muscles in this direction weakens the abdominal parietes, and gives a tendency to the formation of hernia, which occurred in Mr. Kirby's case. For these reasons Sir A. Cooper's operation is generally preferred. It has been said that Mr. Abernethy's mode gives greater facility of tying the artery high up if necessary; but this can be equally well effected by enlarging the external angle of the incision, recommended by Sir A Cooper.

In either operation the greatest care should be taken that no injury be done to the peritoneum. In Dr. Post's practice, however, an instance occurred in which this membrane was so thickened by disease that he could not detach it, but was obliged to make an opening in it, and include a part of it in the ligature. The surgeon should attend also to the origin and course of the epigastric artery in relation to this operation. Dupuytren lost a patient by wounding it; and Beclard, by tying the iliac immediately beneath its origin, so that sufficient room was not left for the formation of a coagulum: in some cases this vessel arises six or eight lines higher up than usual, and the operator should therefore search for its origin, and apply the ligature *above it*. The proximity of the vas deferens and the femoral branch of the genito-crural nerve to the artery are also to be borne in mind

When the trunk of the external iliac artery is tied, the limb is abundantly supplied with blood by the branches of the internal iliac in the following manner:—the *glutæal* branch of the internal iliac transmits blood to the femoral artery, through the internal and external circumflex branches of the latter: the *sciatic* artery transmits blood to the femoral by the internal circumflex and perforating arteries; and to the popliteal through the comes nervi ischiatici:* (Boyer mentions an instance where this small branch, eight months after the operation for popliteal aneurism, had attained the size of the radial artery at the wrist:) the *obturator* artery supplies the femoral through the branches which communicate with the internal circumflex: lastly, the *pudic artery* supplies the femoral by its communication with the pudic branches of the latter.

---

* Hodgson on the Arteries and Veins, p. 421.

Upon examining the limb on which the operation of tying the external iliac has been performed, we find that the portion of the femoral artery below the origin of the profunda is unchanged in calibre; while that portion between the origin of the profunda and the ligature may either remain the natural size, as in Mr. Norman's case,† or it may be contracted, as in Sir. A. Cooper's case,‡ in which the vessel, in this situation, was found reduced to one-half its size.

The late Mr. Wilmot has observed, "that the recoveries after this operation (ligature of the external iliac artery) have been more frequent, in proportion to the numbers operated upon, than after tying the femoral artery for popliteal aneurism."§

The external iliac artery gives off two branches, viz., the

Epigastric and Internal Circumflexa Ilii;

and then terminates in the Femoral.

---

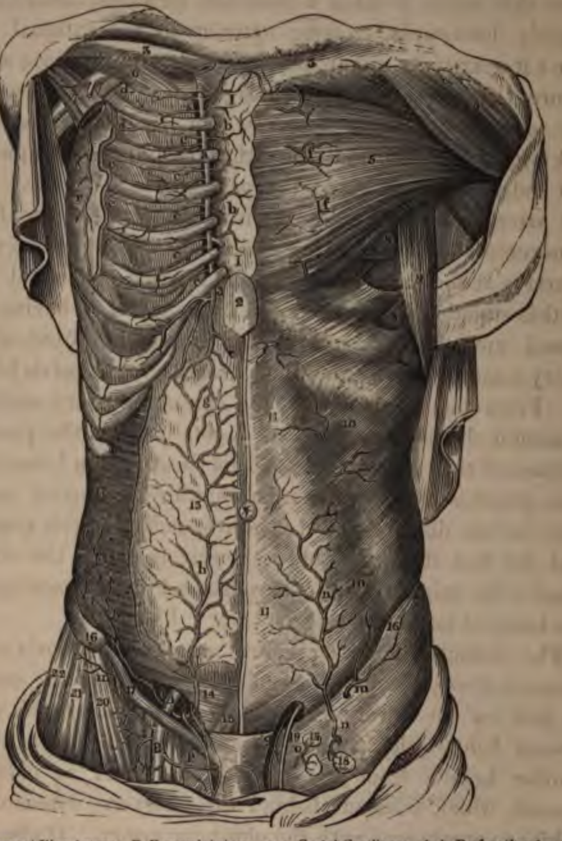
* See Med. Chirurg. Trans., vol. iv., and Guy's Hospital Reports, No. 1, Jan. 1836.

† Med. Chirurg. Trans., vol. xx.

‡ Guy's Hospital Reports.

§ Dub. Hosp. Report, vol. ii. p. 214.

Fig. 57.—Represents the course of the Internal Mammary and the Epigastric Arteries. At the right side the muscles have been partially removed, in order to expose the anastomosis between these vessels.



A, External Iliac Artery. B, Femoral Artery. a, a, Costal Cartilages. b, b, Perforating branches of the Internal Mammary Artery. c, c, c, c, c, Anterior Intercostal branches of the Internal Mammary. d, d, e, e, e, External Intercostal branches. g, Anastomosis between the Internal Mammary and Epigastric Arteries. h, Epigastric Artery. i, Internal Circumflexa Ilii Artery. k, k, l, Twigs from the Circumflexa Ilii Artery. m, m, External Circumflexa Ilii. n, Superficial Epigastric Artery from the Femoral. o, Glandular twigs from the Femoral. P, Superficial Pudic Branch. q, Spermatic Artery. r, Long Thoracic Artery. I, I, The Sternum. 2, Xiphoid appendix. 3, 3, Clavicles. 4, Deltoid Muscle. 5, Great Pectoral Muscle. 6, Subclavius Muscle. 7, Portion of Lesser Pectoral Muscle. 8, 8, Serratus Magnus Muscle. 9. Latissimus Dorsi Muscle. 10, 10, External Oblique Muscle. 11, 11, Linea Alba. 12, Transversalis Abdominis Muscle. 13, Peritoneum. 14, Portion of Internal Oblique and Transversalis Abdominis—the dotted lines show the course of the Epigastric Artery in this region. 15, Pyramidalis Abdominis. 16, Anterior Superior Spine of Ilium. 17, Poupart's Ligament. 18, 18, Superficial Inguinal Glands. 19, Vas Deferens. 20, Sartorius Muscle. 21, Tensor Vaginæ Femoris. 22, Glutæus Medius

The *Epigastric Artery* arises from the external iliac, usually about three or four lines above Poupart's ligament: from this origin it takes a direction forwards, inwards, and slightly downwards, crossing anterior to the external iliac vein: it next turns upwards and inwards, so as to form a curvature, the convexity of which is directed downwards, looking towards Poupart's ligament, and, in some cases, even sinking into the femoral ring; the concavity looks upwards, and lodges a cul de sac of the peritoneum. We next trace the artery ascending obliquely inwards, between the fascia transversalis in front and the peritoneum posteriorly, in order to arrive at the inner margin of the internal abdominal ring. In this situation the vas deferens hooks round it, having first passed upwards and outwards, to the ring in front of the artery; and then downwards and inwards, to the pelvis behind it. From the inguinal ring, the epigastric artery continues to ascend obliquely inwards, till it gets between the posterior surface of the rectus muscle and its sheath; this latter structure presents at its termination inferiorly a lunated margin more or less distinct, and it is corresponding to this situation that we find the artery of each side entering the sheath. Finally the epigastric artery terminates by anastomosing with the internal mammary artery.

The branches of the epigastric are: the *spermatic* or *cremasteric branch*, which descends with the spermatic cord, to be lost on the coverings of the testicle: *a branch* which crosses behind the symphysis pubis, to anastomose with a similar branch from the opposite side; and an *obturator branch*, which descends behind the transverse ramus of the pubis, to anastomose with the obturator artery. It also gives *several branches* to the oblique muscles of the abdomen, some of which are of considerable size, and fatal hemorrhage has been known to arise from a wound of one of them, in tapping the abdomen. Lastly, the epigastric artery terminates in anastomosis with the internal mammary in the substance of the rectus muscle as well as within its sheath.

The *Epigastric Vein* arises from the external iliac close to Poupart's ligament, and ascends on the inside of the epigastric artery; it then bifurcates, and the artery lies between its divisions.

The *Internal Circumflexa Ilii Artery*, smaller than the preceding, usually arises a little beneath, and sometimes opposite to it: immediately after its origin it pierces the junction of the fascia transversalis and fascia iliaca, crossing over a small pouch or depression which we may observe between the outer side of the external iliac artery and the lunated margin of the fasciæ at their junction; it then takes a direction upwards, backwards, and outwards, corresponding, not to Poupart's ligament, as usually represented, but to a white line which marks the junction of the two fasciæ: this line is a little above and behind Poupart's ligament. Having arrived near the anterior superior spine of the ilium, it terminates by dividing into two branches, one of which supplies the broad muscles of the abdomen, and anastomoses with the inferior intercostal and lumbar arteries; the other continues in the direction of the trunk, and, having arrived at the anterior superior spine of the ilium, terminates in anastomosing with the superficial circumflexa ilii, the external circumflexa femoris, the glutæal, and ilio-lumbar arteries.

The *Circumflexa Ilii Vein* comes from the external iliac, and usually crosses in front of, sometimes behind, the external iliac artery, to arrive at its destination in the external iliac vein.

THE FEMORAL ARTERY.

This vessel, called by some the superficial femoral artery, commences behind Poupart's ligament, and loses the name of femoral after having passed through a tendinous opening in the adductor magnus muscle, when it receives the name of popliteal. Professor Alcock refers the commencement of the femoral artery to a fixed point, namely, "the ilio-pectineal eminence of the os innominatum," corresponding to a point midway between the spinous process of the ilium and the symphysis pubis.* Its course is nearly parallel to a line drawn from a point a little internal to the centre of Poupart's ligament to the internal margin of the patella. According to Professor Alcock, though for the most part the artery inclines inwards at first, that is, from the os innominatum into the inguinal space, yet, "the general direction of it is

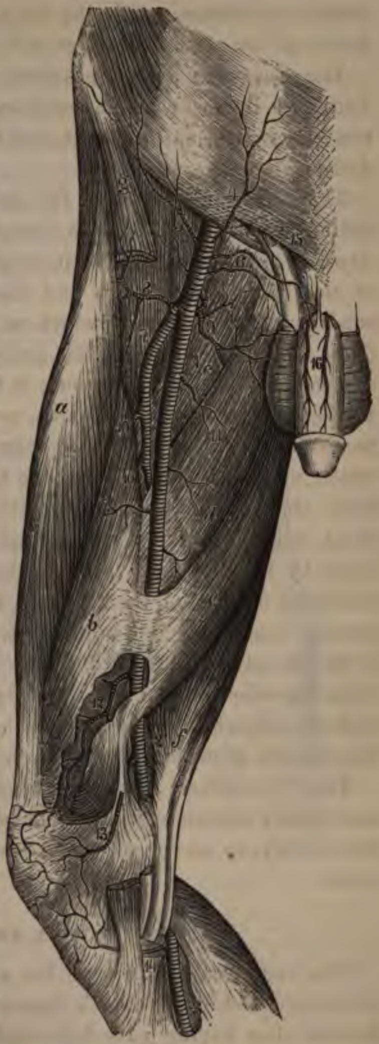


Fig. 58.—Arteries of the front of the Thigh.

1, Femoral Artery. 2, Popliteal Artery. 3, Posterior Tibial Artery. 4, Superficial Epigastric Artery. 5, Superficial Circumflex Iliac. 6, External Pudics. 7, Profound Femoral Artery. 8, 9, External and Internal Circumflex Arteries. 10, Perforating Arteries. 11, Muscular Branches. 12, Anastomotic Artery. 13, 14, Internal Articular Arteries. 15, Small Branch from the Epigastric. 16, Dorsal Arteries of the Penis. *a*, Rectus Muscle. *b*, Internal Vastus. *c*, *d*, *e*, Adductor Muscles. *f*, Semi-tendinous Muscle. *g*, Sartorius Muscle.

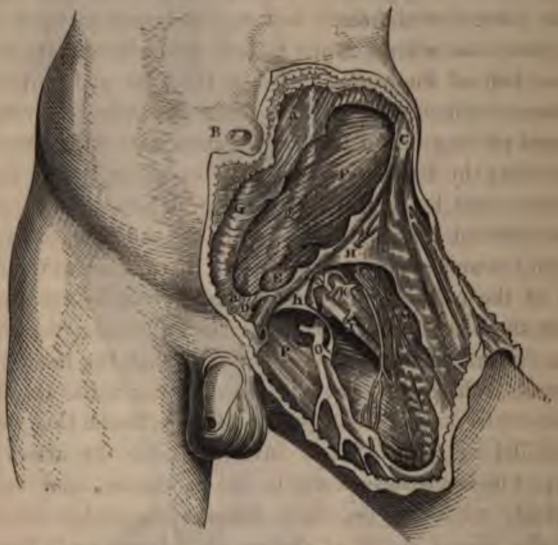
---

* Todd's Cyclopædia, p. 236.

either slightly outward, or at the most directly downward, not inward."* It is at first on a plane anterior to the femur, but soon becomes internal, and lastly, where it becomes the popliteal artery, it lies posterior to this bone.

In the superior third of the thigh it is covered by the integuments, then by the superficial fascia; and on removing this layer of parts we expose the fascia lata of the thigh, which in this region is arranged in the following divisions or layers, viz., the iliac, cribriform, and pectineal or pubic. The

Fig. 59.—The Surgical Anatomy of the Inguinal Region. The Fascia Lata has been partly removed.



A, Muscular part of External Oblique. B. The Umbilicus. C, The Anterior Superior Iliac Spine. D, The Spine of the Pubis. E, The Cremaster. F. The Internal Oblique. G. The Linea Alba. H, The Iliac portion of the Fascia Lata. I. The Femoral Vein. K. The Femoral Artery. L, The Anterior Crural Nerve. M, The Sartorius Muscle. N, The Anterior wall of the Funnel partially dissected away from the vessels. The Septum formed by the sheath and dipping in between the artery and vein, attaching itself anteriorly to the anterior wall of the Funnel, and posteriorly to the posterior wall, is here exhibited. O, The Saphena Vein. P. The Pubic portion of the Fascia Lata. a, a, The tendon of the External Oblique. g, The Linea Semilunaris. h, Hey's Ligament.

---

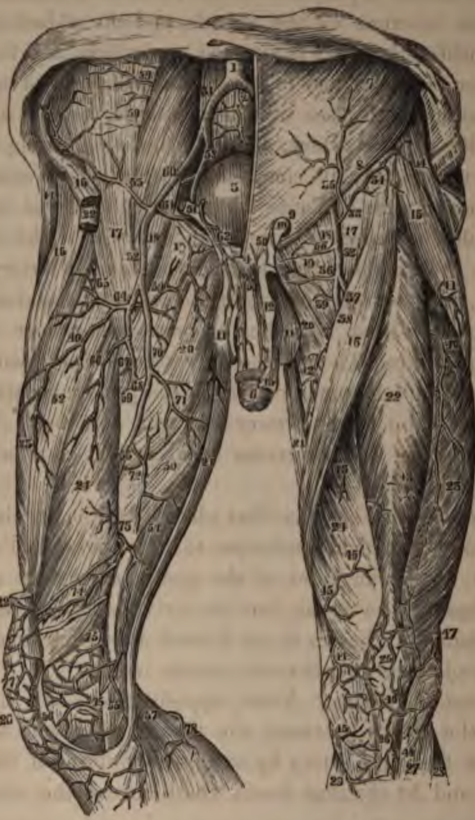
* Todd's Cyclopædia, p. 236.

middle or cribriform portion crosses the saphenic opening or anterior inferior termination of the crural canal, and lies anterior to the femoral artery and vein. The external margin of the saphenic opening is formed by the iliac portion of the fascia lata, and presents a lunated appearance, the concavity of which is directed inwards, and unites with the cribriform layer, and in this situation covers a portion of the artery: above this point we may observe the iliac portion of the fascia lata passing upwards and inwards to form Hey's ligament, the commencement of which also lies anterior to the artery; this ligament, as it passes inwards to its insertion, forms also an anterior relation to the femoral vein. The pectineal or pubic portion of the fascia lata may be traced outwards from the pubis, and will be found to form an inclined plane which passes behind the vessels. When the iliac and cribriform portion of the fascia lata have been carefully removed, the femoral prolongation of the fascia transversalis will be brought into view: the fascia transversalis is exceedingly thin in this situation, and by a careful dissection can be seen passing upwards behind Poupart's ligament to the abdomen, externally forming a connection with the fascia iliaca, close to the outer side of the external iliac artery, and internally corresponding to the base of Gimbernaut's ligament, connected with the same fascia. It will be seen presently that the fascia iliaca descends behind the vessels in the same manner as the fascia transversalis does in front. Both of these fasciæ thus form a pyramidal or funnel-shaped investment for the artery and vein; wide superiorly towards the abdomen, and narrow inferiorly, where the two fasciæ become inseparably identified with the proper sheath of the vessels. Some confusion has arisen from the names given to these prolongations of the fasciæ from the abdomen and pelvis. Sir A. Cooper, in speaking of the fascia transversalis and fascia iliaca as related to the femoral artery and vein, says that they form the "*crural sheath*," or "the *sheath* in which the crural vessels are contained;" and again, "the sheath is therefore formed like a funnel." If we cautiously remove the fascia transversalis and the fascia iliaca from the vessels, it will be distinctly seen that they have still a well-marked sheath surrounding them, which, as has been already indicated, is a prolongation of the sub-peritoneal layer of tissue which forms a proper sheath for the external iliac artery and vein: it would appear, therefore, that the term *sheath of the vessels* might be more correctly applied to this latter structure, and the term "funnel" might with equal propriety be confined to the investment formed by fascia transversalis and fascia iliaca. On gently passing the handle of the scalpel downwards between the vessels and the anterior part of funnel, we will remark that the fascia transversalis identifies itself with the sheath of the vessels higher up, that is, nearer to Poupart's ligament, on the front of the artery than on the vein: the connection between the anterior wall of the funnel and the sheath passes obliquely downwards and inwards, and extends as far down along the femoral vein as the entrance of the saphena vein: there is therefore more of the vein than of the artery contained within the funnel.

In this stage of the dissection it will be observed that within the funnel, and throughout its length, the artery and vein do not lie in contact with one another, but are separated from each other by a more or less strong and thickened portion of the sheath: a similar structure exists also along the outer side of the artery, and along the inner side of the vein: these partitions are attached anteriorly to the fascia transversalis, and posteriorly to the fascia iliaca. The artery and vein are thus lodged in two separate and distinct compartments of the sheath; a similar arrangement has been already noticed when speaking of the carotid artery and internal jugular vein.

The posterior surface of the artery is applied, first, upon the anterior surface and inner portion of the psoas magnus muscle, with the intervention of the posterior wall of the funnel or femoral prolongation of the fascia iliaca, and the deep layer of the iliac portion of the fascia lata, and on part of the anterior surface of the capsule of the hip-joint: it then descends in front of the pectineus muscle, but separated from it by the profunda artery and the profunda and femoral veins and the pectineal portion of the fascia lata. Between the pectineus muscle and adductor longus there is sometimes an interval in which the femoral artery corresponds to the adductor brevis. In this region the artery is lodged in a prismatic space, bounded anteriorly by the anterior relations of the artery which form the base; internally by the pectineal or pubic portion of the fascia lata, and by the pectineus and adductor brevis muscles; externally by the psoas and iliacus internus muscles, and by the upper part of the vastus internus: the apex corresponds posteriorly to the convergence of the internal and external boundaries. Superiorly this space receives the parts which enter it from the abdomen behind the crural arch; and inferiorly it terminates in another prismatic channel, called the Hunterian canal. Previously to its entering into this canal, the artery is covered by the sartorius muscle, with the interposition of a strong aponeurosis. This aponeurosis commences in a gradual manner, immediately below Scarpa's angle, and terminates abruptly opposite the origin of the anastomotica magna artery: its fibres are distinct, and run obliquely downward and outwards. After the removal of the superficial relations of the femoral artery, and before examining its deep-seated relations in the upper third of the thigh, we observe a comparatively superficial triangular space, called Scarpa's space or angle, which contains the artery and vein: it is bounded by the sartorius muscle on the *outside*, and the adductors on the *inside;* the convergence of these muscles below forms the apex, and the base is formed superiorly by Poupart's ligament. When the femoral artery passes under the sartorius muscle, it becomes lodged in the *Hunterian canal;* this canal occupies the middle third of

Fig. 60.—Represents the Arteries on the Anterior Aspect of the Thigh.



1, The Bifurcation of the Aorta into the Common Iliacs. 2, The Middle Sacral Artery. 3, The Urinary Bladder. 4, The Symphysis Pubis. 5, Suspensory Ligament of the Penis. 6, The Penis. 7, External Oblique Muscle of Abdomen. 8, The Crural Arch. 9, The External Abdominal Ring. 10, The Spermatic Cord. 11, 11, The Scrotum. 12, The skin of the Penis cut and turned over. 13, The Prepuce. 14, 14, The Glutæus Medius Muscle of each side. 15, 15, The Tensor Vaginæ Femoris of each side. 16, 16, The Sartorius. 17, 17, The Iliacus Internus. 18, 18, The Psoas Magnus. 19, 19, Pectineus. 20, 20, Adductor Longus. 21, 21, The Gracilis. 22, 22, 22, The Rectus. 23, 23, The Vastus Externus. 24, 24, The Vastus Internus. 25, The Patella. 26, 26, The Ligamentum Patellæ. 27, The Tibialis Anticus. 28, Extensor Communis and Peroneus Longus. 29, Internal portion of Gastrocnemius. 30, Adductor Magnus. 31, Right Common Iliac Artery. 32, 32, Femoral Artery. 33, 34, External Circumflexa Ilii. 35, The Superficial Epigastric, which in this case came from the preceding vessel. 36, 36, The External Pudic Vessels. 37, The Profunda. 38, The Femoral Artery. 39, 39, Twigs from the Internal Circumflex. 40, 40, Descending Branch from the External Circumflex. 41, Twig from the External Circumflex to the Tensor Vaginæ Femoris. 42, Muscular Branch from the Femoral. 43, 43, Muscular Twigs from the Femoral. 44, Superficial Branches of the Anasthe thigh, and is about four inches or four inches and a half in length, and of a prismatic form; its *lateral* boundaries are the vastus internus on the outside, and the adductor longus on the inside; the apex is situated posteriorly, and is formed by the conjoined tendons of the vastus internus and adductor longus muscles: the *base* of this prismatic canal is placed in front of the femoral artery, and is formed by a strong aponeurotic structure, chiefly composed of short transverse fibres, which connects the adductor longus with the vastus internus, and which commences superiorly under cover of the sartorius muscle. Within this canal we find the femoral artery, femoral vein, and two or three branches of the anterior crural nerve; one of these branches becomes the proper internal saphenous nerve. Though the nerves are situated within the canal, they are not contained within the proper sheath of the vessels which binds the artery and vein together. The internal surface of the Hunterian canal presents a shining tendinous appearance.

The *Femoral Vein* is at first placed on the inside of the artery, and on a plane posterior to it. Opposite Poupart's ligament, it lies in front of the pectineus muscle and the inner edge of the psoas, but on arriving at the origin of the profunda, it begins to get behind its artery, and so remains, projecting a little to its outside inferiorly.

The *Anterior Crural Nerve*, opposite Poupart's ligament, lies in the groove between the psoas and iliacus muscles, separated from the artery by some of the fibres of the psoas muscle, and by the iliac fascia which covers the nerve and

tomotica Magna Artery. 45, 45, Muscular Twig from same vessel. 46, Twig to the Patella. 47, Terminating twigs of the Superior External Articular Artery. 48, Twig from the Tibial Recurrent Artery. 49. Arterial Anastomosis over the Patella. 50, The Cremasteric branch of Epigastric. 51, Spermatic Cord, cut. 52, Crurœus Muscle. 53, Aponeurotic Opening in the Adductor Magnus, with the Anastomotica Magna. 54, Semi-membranosus. 55, Twig from the Anastomotica Magna. 56, Tendinous expansion over the Knee, cut and turned forward. 57, Internal portion of Gastrocnemius. 58, Internal Iliac Artery. 59, 59, Branches of the Ilio-lumbar Artery. 60, The External Iliac Artery. 61, The Epigastric Artery. 62, Cremasteric Artery. 63, Internal Circumflexa Ilii. 64, External Circumflex. 65, Ascending branch of preceding artery. 66. Muscular twig for the Quadriceps. 67, First Perforating Artery. 68, The Second Perforating Artery. 69, Profunda passing behind Adductor Longus. 70, The Femoral Artery displaced inwards to show the Profunda. 71, Muscular twig from the Femoral for the Adductors. 72, Muscular twig. 73, Anastomotica Magna. 74, Branch from the preceding vessel running through the Vastus Internus; the muscle is partly divided, to show this course. 75. Superior Internal Articular Artery. 76, The Inferior Internal Articular Artery. 77, The Patellar Arterial Anastomosis. 78, Sural Artery.

lies behind the artery. Three branches of this nerve are related to the artery in its course down the thigh. One of them accompanies the sartorius muscle, and is lost at the inside of the knee-joint; the second is the internal *saphenous nerve;* at first it lies external, and afterwards crosses in front of the artery, running at the same time inwards as it descends in the thigh; it then accompanies the anastomotic artery, and lastly the saphena vein: the third branch descends on the outside of the artery, and drops near the middle of the thigh into the vastus internus muscle. The second and third branches are contained within the Hunterian canal, but not within the sheath of the vessels.

Operations on the Femoral Artery.—The usual circumstances requiring ligature of the femoral artery are wounds of that vessel, or aneurism in the popliteal region. Mr. Hunter was the first who tied the *femoral* artery for popliteal aneurism. This operation was performed in the year 1785. His first incision was made through the integuments of the anterior and inner part of the thigh, a little below its middle, so as to cross somewhat obliquely the internal margin of the sartorius muscle: the muscle being turned outwards, the fascia covering the artery was exposed and divided, so as to bring the femoral vessels lying within the Hunterian canal into view. The artery having been disengaged from its connections, a double ligature was passed under it, and then separated, so as to form two distinct ligatures, with a portion of the vessel lying between them: two additional ligatures were applied at certain distances from the two former, making four in all. This was done with a view to secure adhesion, by compressing a larger extent of the vessel. On the fifteenth day, some of the ligatures came away. Soon after, the patient left the hospital with some open abscesses; and six months after, more of the ligatures came away, and the patient perfectly recovered. In an earlier part of the same year, Dessault had tied the popliteal artery for popliteal aneurism; but Hunter's merit consisted in having tied the artery at a distance from the diseased part. It is scarcely necessary to inform the advanced student that the number of ligatures employed by Mr. Hunter, and the extent of the artery detached from its connections, were calculated to produce most dangerous consequences, such as abscesses and secondary hemorrhage. In his second operation he committed another error in dressing the wound from the bottom; but it is proper to add that he gradually corrected these errors, and in his subsequent practice used only a single ligature, and endeavored to unite the wound as quickly as possible.

Ligature of the Femoral Artery immediately below Poupart's ligament.—Professor Porter proposed and performed the operation of tying the femoral artery for aneurism of this vessel, by making a *transverse* incision through the integuments, and so reaching the artery whilst enclosed within the funnel, and of course before it had given origin to the profunda: the operation was successful. Mr. Butcher performed Mr. Porter's operation in Mercer's Hospital, in the case of a wound of the profunda femoral artery. The patient sunk from loss of blood in twenty-four hours after the infliction of the wound.* Mr. George Porter and Mr. Smyly have also tied the artery according to Mr. Porter's method, in the Meath Hospital, for aneurism, with complete success. The femoral artery has been tied before the giving off of the profunda for hemorrhage after amputation of the thigh.

Ligature of the Femoral Artery in the middle of the thigh.—In this situation the artery is covered by the sartorius muscle, and much discussion has arisen whether it be preferable to cut down on its internal margin and evert it, or on its outer margin, and then draw it inwards.* Both modes have their advocates: Mr. Hunter, whose operation has already been described, adopted the former plan, and the advocates for it affirm that it can be more easily done, and that a depending opening is thus gained for the exit of matter. On the other hand, Mr. Hutchinson, who has written a letter to recommend the latter plan, objects to the internal incision,—that the artery is not easily found in this way, and that the saphena vein and trunks of the lymphatics are greatly endangered. The truth is, that if we operate on the termination of the femoral artery, as Hunter did, we will find it easier to expose this vessel by cutting on the outer edge of the muscle; but if we operate immediately below Scarpa's angle, which is a simpler and better operation, we must of necessity cut on the internal edge of the sartorius, unless we choose to have a tedious and difficult operation and a valvular opening in order to reach the artery. By not attending to this distinction, many useless discussions have arisen. In this country surgeons usually operate in Scarpa's space; but in France, we are informed by Velpeau, that the operation below this point, that is, in the middle third of the thigh, is usually preferred.

---

* Dub. Quar. Med. Jour., vol. xviii. p. 2.

If the artery be tied just before it reaches the tendon of the adductor magnus muscle (an operation which is not recommended), in order to avoid the saphena vein and come readily on the artery, the incision should be made over the *external* or anterior margin of the sartorius. If care be not taken to divide the strong fascia that lies beneath this muscle, it will be almost impossible to find the artery. The operator must also take care not to mistake the anastomotic for the femoral artery: this error has been committed. Lastly, he should remember how closely the artery and vein are connected in this situation; and, as the vein projects a little to the outside of the artery, the needle should be passed from without inwards, taking care not to include the *saphenous* or the *genicular* nerves.

---

* Dessault proposes cutting this muscle across, which can never be necessary; though we are informed it produces no permanent injury.

If the artery be tied higher up in the middle third of the thigh, our incision should be made over the internal margin of the sartorius muscle: the fascia, which is much weaker in this situation, must be next divided, and the artery will then be exposed. The nerves are to be carefully avoided, and the needle passed from within outwards.

Ligature of the Femoral Artery in Scarpa's Space.—The patient is to be placed on his back, on a table, and the thigh rotated slightly outwards, so as to make the incision look directly upwards. The line of the artery is to be distinguished by feeling its pulsation, which will become indistinct or imperceptible, inferiorly, where the sartorius begins to overlap it. In the course of this line, the first incision should be made through the integuments, commencing about two inches beneath Poupart's ligament, and extending from about two inches and a half to three inches in length. This incision will lie on the outside of the saphena vein. The superficial fascia should be next cautiously divided. Any lymphatic gland, or large cutaneous veins, that present themselves, should be carefully avoided. A portion of the fascia lata should then be raised in the forceps, and divided horizontally; after which a director should be introduced into the opening in the fascia, with the view of enlarging it to the extent of an inch. The sheath of the vessel is now to be divided in the same cautious way, when the artery will be brought into view. The femoral vein lies immediately behind the artery; therefore a blunt instrument, such as an eye-probe, must be employed, with great caution, to separate them. The needle is then to be passed round the artery, from within outwards; keeping it close to the artery, in order to avoid the vein and some small branches of the crural nerve, which usually lie to its outside. In some cases a nerve will lie directly over the artery;—it should be carefully drawn out of the way. Should the femoral vein be unfortunately wounded, there will probably be no notice given of the occurrence till the needle is withdrawn, and then a gush of black blood will announce the accident. This is certainly an alarming occurrence; but we have known it to happen, and the patient notwithstanding to recover, without suffering any inconvenience whatever from it.

State of the circulation and vessels after the operation.—When the femoral artery is tied above the origin of the profunda, the circulation in the limb is carried on in the same manner as if the external iliac were tied.

When the femoral artery is tied beneath the origin of the profunda, we find the circulation maintained by the latter vessel, the circumflex branches of which freely anastomose with the anastomotic and inferior muscular branches of the femoral, and with the articular branches of the popliteal. If this operation have been performed for popliteal aneurism, the femoral artery afterwards becomes impervious as far up as the origin of the profunda;* and the portion of it between the ligature and aneurismal tumor may either be obliterated throughout,† or pervious throughout; or it may be partly pervious, being interrupted at different parts of its course by points of obliteration. If the femoral artery be tied below the profunda, independently of aneurism, the obliteration on either side of the ligature will extend to the next considerable branch.‡

---

* In some of the cases, however, in which the artery has been tied low down, the impervious state may not extend to the origin of the profunda, but only to the origin of the muscular branches.

† Sir A. Cooper in Med. Ch. Trans., vol. i.

‡ Hodgson on the Arteries. Todd's Cyclop., art. Femoral Artery.

Treatment of Popliteal Aneurism by Compression on the Femoral Artery.—The treatment of aneurism by compression upon the artery leading to the tumor, may be considered as one of the greatest achievements in modern surgery. In this city it has almost entirely superseded the operation of tying the femoral artery. It accomplishes without danger what Hunter's operation effected with the risk of human life. It is obvious, however, that it is not applicable to every form of this disease; nor can it be exercised on many of the arteries of the body. Mr. Todd had recourse to this method in June, 1820, for the cure of a popliteal aneurism in the right ham. He observes, "The disease in this case was so recent that it was resolved to watch its progress for some time before an operation should be decided on. The patient was accordingly directed to remain in a horizontal posture; he was put upon low regimen and occasionally blooded and purged. The tumor was so much under the control of pressure on the inguinal portion of the artery, that I was not altogether without hope that by diminishing the current of blood in the trunk of the artery, so as to favor the coagulation of the contents of the sac, a cure without operation might be effected: at all events, it was obvious that by giving time to the collateral arteries to be dilated, the success of the operation would be rendered less uncertain." The instrument employed by Mr. Todd resembled a common truss for femoral hernia, but the "spring was much stronger, and the pad longer, of a more oval form and more firmly stuffed than in the truss." After a trial, however, of several weeks, the patient "could not be persuaded that the plan adopted was productive of benefit; during this period the tumor had obviously diminished, and its contents had acquired a firm consistence, but the patient complained that the instrument gave him much pain, and that his health and spirits had suffered materially from confinement, rigid abstinence, &c.; the operation was accordingly agreed to, and I performed it on the 1st of September, being two months after his admission into the hospital." In July of the same year, Mr. Todd had another opportunity of trying this mode of compression on the femoral artery for the cure of popliteal aneurism in the left ham; in a few weeks no alteration could be observed in the tumor; the man became impatient and refused to submit to the treatment, so that in this case also the operation was finally performed.* On the 27th of August, 1824, Mr. M'Coy applied compression to the femoral artery for the cure of aneurism of that vessel occurring in a stump after amputation for a diffused popliteal aneurism. The patient perfectly recovered, and lived for several years afterwards.† In the year 1825, compression of the femoral artery was successfully employed by Mr. Todd for the cure of a popliteal aneurism.‡ In the year 1842, this mode of treatment was successfully revived in this city by Dr. Hutton: the patient, Michael Duncan, æt. 30, a laborer, was admitted into the Richmond Hospital on the 3d of October, in the same year, laboring under a popliteal aneurism in the right ham. Dr. Hutton states, that "on November 1st, the patient being still reluctant to undergo the operation, I resolved to try compression of the femoral artery, and I entertained some hope of succeeding, being informed by Mr. Adams that the late Mr. Todd had succeeded in a similar case, of which no account has been published. Having at hand an instrument constructed for the suppression of secondary hemorrhage after ligature of the femoral artery, I applied it in this case. It was so contrived as to admit of pressure being made by a screw and pad upon the course of the femoral artery, and the counter-pressure upon the opposite surface of the limb, without interfering with the collateral circulation. In the first instance the compression was made upon the femoral artery in the middle third of the thigh, and, although it was effectual in compressing this vessel, it produced so much uneasiness that it could not be sustained, and after a few applications the apparatus was removed and adapted to the upper part of the limb. On November 12th, the apparatus was applied on the femoral artery in this case, immediately below Poupart's ligament, and the pressure was maintained for more than four hours. From this date to December 1st, the instrument was occasionally applied for a given number of hours at each time, and on this day the tumor was quite solid, much diminished in size, and altogether free from pulsation. On the 27th of December the patient was discharged at his own request." Dr. Hutton further reports:—"In six weeks he visited the hospital at my request: the tumor was about the size of a nutmeg, and solid. He had been at his usual employment."

---

* Dublin Hospital Reports, vol. iii. p. 91, &c.

† Medical Press, April 26, 1843; and Mr. Adams in Dub. Quar. Jour., Aug. 1846.

‡ Dub. Quar. Jour., Aug. 1846.

"*Remarks.*—Since this case occurred, Dr. Cusack has treated with success, by similar means, a case of popliteal aneurism in Dr. Stevens's Hospital, and Dr. Bellingham another in St. Vincent's Hospital. It would appear that this plan of treatment has been too hastily abandoned by the profession, probably from the compression employed being so excessive as to render it quite insupportable to the patient. The least possible pressure, which may be sufficient to close the vessel, should be used, and when this cannot be sustained, it will prove of use to partially compress the artery so as to lessen the impulse of the circulation."*

At a meeting of the Surgical Society, held on the 22d of April, 1843, Dr. Bellingham reported "two cases of popliteal aneurism recently cured by pressure upon the femoral artery." The first case, that of Michael Duncan as already stated, was treated by Dr. Hutton, the second by Dr. Bellingham himself, and as Dr. Hutton was prevented from attending, he furnished the notes of his own case to Dr. Bellingham, who read them to the society. This report of Dr. Hutton's case we need not quote, as the student is already in possession of the principal facts connected with it. In his communication, however, Dr. Hutton observes, "As the apparatus made use of by Dr. Bellingham was far superior to that which I had at my command, and as he will publish a description of it, it is unnecessary for me to refer to this part of the subject."

---

* Dublin Medical Journal, vol. xxiii. p. 364, &c.

In the same communication Dr. Bellingham related the following particulars of his own case:—

"Patient a servant, æt. 32, healthy, admitted into St. Vincent's Hospital, under Dr. Bellingham, March 25th, 1843, laboring under popliteal aneurism upon the right side. Tumor noticed three months previously; patient's attention attracted to it by a feeling of weakness in the limb; no cause assigned for it. The aneurism, seated high in the popliteal space, measures about three inches transversely, and a little more from above downwards; the sac can be completely emptied by pressure upon the artery in the thigh. Compression commenced April 3d; the pressure applied upon the artery as it passes over the ramus of the pubis; discontinued on the following day; reapplied April 6th; pulsation ceased on the following day, at which period the tumor is reported to have been about the size of a small orange, solid and hard. Instruments removed April 11th. Patient discharged a month afterwards; the tumor being then very small; he had perfect use of the limb. Duration of compression, two days." The report of the proceedings of this meeting, published in the Medical Press of May 3d, 1843, are accompanied with an engraving of the apparatus employed by Dr. Bellingham, and to which Dr. Hutton refers in his communication. In the Medical Press of May 15th, 1849, Dr. Hutton mentions a case of popliteal aneurism, in which he compressed the femoral artery with Dr. Carte's apparatus. The compression was employed for only *seven hours and a half successively;*

after this, the tumor became solid, and absorption soon commenced.

Many other cases have also been recently treated by several surgeons in this city as well as in England, with the most complete success; these cases appeared in the periodicals of the day, and have since been published in a collective form up to the year 1847, by Dr. Bellingham of St. Vincent's Hospital. Since that date the subject has been continued up to the year 1851 by Mr. Tufnell, one of the surgeons to the City of Dublin Hospital, in his "Practical Remarks on the Treatment of Aneurism by Compression."

The femoral artery gives off the following branches:—

Superficial Epigastric.
External Pudic.
Superficial Circumflexa Ilii.
Profunda Femoris.
Muscular.
Anastomotica Magna.

The *Superficial Epigastric Artery* arises a little below Poupart's ligament, pierces the fascia lata, and ascends towards the umbilicus in front of Poupart's ligament. It supplies the glands of the thigh, and the fascia and integuments of the abdomen, and anastomoses with the internal epigastric and mammary arteries.

The *External Pudic Arteries* are two in number, a superficial and a deep: the *superficial* comes off a little below Poupart's ligament, crosses *superficial* to the fascia lata, to reach the scrotum in the male, or labium in the female, in which parts, and in the abdominal muscles, it is lost; the *deep* pudic branch crosses *behind* the fascia lata, and below the former branch, and supplies the scrotum in the male, and the labium in the female, and terminates in the perineum. These branches anastomose with each other, and the superficial anastomoses with the superficial epigastric.

The *Superficial Circumflexa Ilii*, smaller than the preceding, follows the course of Poupart's ligament beneath the integuments, and at the anterior superior spine of the ilium terminates in anastomosing with the deep circumflexa ilii, the ilio-lumbar, glutæal, and external circumflexa femoris arteries.

The profunda is the next branch given off from the femoral; but it will be more convenient to examine the muscular and the anastomotic arteries first.

The *Muscular branches* are small and irregular: they arise from the femoral in its course down the thigh, and are distributed to the muscles of the thigh in the neighborhood of the femoral artery, chiefly to the sartorius and vastus internus.

The *Anastomotica Magna Artery* comes off immediately before the femoral artery passes between the tendons of the adductor magnus and vastus internus muscles: together with the internal saphenous nerve, it pierces the anterior wall of the Hunterian canal, and divides into three branches; one of these crosses transversely outwards through the fibres of the vastus internus muscle; another runs downwards and outwards in the course of the fibres of the same muscle; and a third descends with the saphenous nerve to the inside of the knee-joint, where it is distributed. These three branches sometimes come off separately from the femoral.

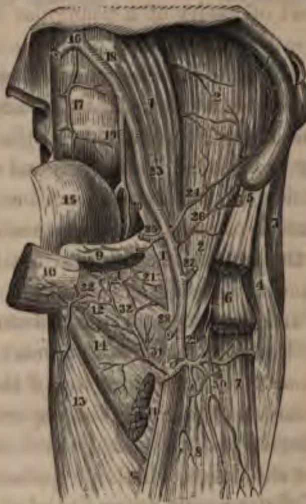
The PROFUNDA FEMORAL ARTERY.—This artery arises from the posterior and external part of the femoral, at about an inch and a half to two inches below Poupart's ligament; in some rare cases it arises much lower down. It proceeds obliquely, at first downwards and outwards, over the tendon of the psoas and the upper extremity of the cruræus muscle; it then turns inwards over the vastus internus muscle, becomes related externally to the anterior crural nerve at its division, and descends between the adductor longus and magnus, the former muscle separating it from the femoral artery. From its origin till it disappears behind its parent trunk, the artery forms a curve, the convexity of which is directed outwards: after its origin, it is situated on the outside of the femoral artery, afterwards it turns underneath it and becomes separated from it by the profunda and femoral veins, together with a quantity of areolar tissue containing several small vessels; and as it descends still lower, its terminating portion lies behind the adductor longus tendon. At first, therefore, the artery is comparatively superficial, but as it continues its course it becomes more deeply seated in the thigh.

The profunda artery gives off the following branches:—

External Circumflex. Internal Circumflex.
Perforating.

The *External Circumflex Artery* arises from the external side of the profunda, where the latter is forming its curvature in order to descend inwards: from this origin it runs almost transversely outwards behind the sartorius and rectus muscles, and through the midst of the fasciculus of branches descending from the anterior crural nerve. It terminates in three branches: an ascending, transverse, and descending. The *ascending branch*, considerably the smallest, runs upwards and outwards behind the tensor vaginæ femoris, in the interval between the iliacus internus and glutæus medius muscles, till it reaches the anterior superior spine of the ilium, where it terminates in anastomosing with the superficial and deep circumflexa ilii arteries, and with the glutæal and ilio-lumbar. The *transverse branch*, larger than the preceding, runs outwards, in front of the superior extremity of the shaft of the femur, and then curves round to its posterior surface: in this course it passes through the superior fibres of the vastus externus, and then pierces the insertion of the glutæus maximus. On raising the latter muscle, the termination of this branch is seen: it supplies the adductor muscles, the vastus externus, and the capsule of the hip-joint. The *descending branch* (or rather set of branches, as there are usually two and frequently more) is much the largest; it runs downwards and outwards, first between the rectus muscle and cruræus, and then between the vastus externus and cruræus: it sends many branches to these muscles, and terminates near the patella in inosculation with the anastomotic and external articular arteries. When there is but one descending branch, it goes to the vastus externus. This branch is sometimes greatly enlarged in cases of popliteal aneurism; and in amputations of the thigh it frequently requires the application of a ligature.

Fig. 61.—*Represents the Anastomosis between the Obturator and Internal Circumflex Arteries.*



1, 1, Psoas Magnus Muscle. 2, 2, Iliacus Internus Muscle. 3, Glutæus Medius Muscle. 4, Tensor Vaginæ Femoris Muscle. 5, Origin of Sartorius Muscle. 6, Portion of Rectus Femoris Muscle. 7, Vastus Externus. 8, Cruræus. 9, Origin of the Pectineus Muscle. 10, Origin of Adductor Longus. 11, Insertion of preceding Muscle into the middle third of the Linea Aspera. 12, Obturator Externus Muscle. 13, Adductor Magnus Muscle. 14, Adductor Brevis Muscle. 15, Urinary Bladder. 16, Division of Abdominal Aorta. 17, Middle Sacral Artery. 18, Left Common Iliac Artery. 19, Internal Iliac Artery. 20, Obturator Artery. 21, Capsular Ligament of hip-joint. 22, Muscular twig to the Adductors. 23, External Iliac Artery. 24, The Internal Circumflexa Ilii Artery. 25, Epigastric Artery, cut. 26, External Circumflexa Ilii Artery. 27, Superficial Epigastric Artery, cut. 28, Femoral Artery, cut. 29, Profunda Artery. 30, Descending branches of External Circumflex Artery. 31, Internal Circumflex Artery. 32, Anastomosis between Internal Circumflex and Obturator Arteries.

The *Internal Circumflex Artery*, usually larger than the external, arises from the posterior and internal part of the profunda. It first sinks, from before backwards, between the pectineus and the tendon of the psoas and iliacus; next between the obturator externus muscle above, and the superior edge of the adductor brevis below; and, lastly, between the lower margin of the quadratus femoris and the upper fibres of the adductor magnus. In this course it winds round the inside of the neck of the femur and capsule of the hip-joint: its termination may be seen by raising the glutæus maximus. The course of the artery between these layers of muscles and adjacent parts has been thus described by Dr. Harrison:—"It is surrounded by a quantity of loose cellular membrane, and is situated in a sort of cavity of a triangular figure, bounded externally by the capsular ligament, by the neck of the femur, and by the psoas and iliac muscles and tendon; superiorly by the obturator externus; and internally by the adductor muscles: this space is covered anteriorly by the pectineus, and partly closed posteriorly by the adductor magnus and quadratus femoris, between which muscles there is a narrow fissure, through which pass the terminating branches of this artery." The branches of the internal circumflex may be classed into the internal, external, ascending, and terminating. The *internal branches* are distributed to the adductor muscles, and sometimes supply the place of the superficial pudic arteries. The *external branch** is small; it passes through the notch in the internal margin of the acetabulum and beneath the transverse ligament, and is then conducted by the ligamentum teres to the head of the femur, which it supplies. The *ascending branches* supply the pectineus and origin of the adductor longus: on dividing the pectineus, we find them freely inosculating with the branches of the obturator artery; and still deeper there is a trochanteric branch, which ascends in front of the quadratus femoris muscle, to arrive at the digital fossa of the great trochanter: it supplies the muscles inserted in this situation, and inosculates with the sciatic, glutæal, and external circumflex arteries. On placing the subject on its face and raising the glutæus maximus muscle, we see the *termination* of the internal circumflex artery running inwards and backwards along the lower margin of the quadratus femoris muscle, through a space formed between this muscle *superiorly*, the upper part of the adductor magnus *inferiorly*, and the root of the trochanter minor *externally*. Here it supplies the origins of the hamstring muscles, the adductor magnus, and the sciatic nerve, and anastomoses freely with the sciatic and glutæal arteries.

---

* In complete fracture of the neck of the femur, within the capsular ligament, this and a similar branch of the obturator are the only direct sources from which the head of the bone can receive blood; and this is one of the reasons assigned by Sir A. Cooper why osseous union does not occur in those cases.

On one occasion M. Roux cut down on this vessel, and tied it; but such an operation will be seldom necessary.

The *Perforating Arteries* are three in number; the termination of the profunda is often described as a fourth. The *first* arises a little below the lesser trochanter; it passes backwards beneath the lower edge of the pectineus muscle, and above the adductor brevis, and pierces the aponeurosis of the adductor magnus: sometimes it passes through the adductor brevis muscle. It then divides into two principal branches, one of which ascends in the substance of the glutæus maximus, while the other descends in the long head of the biceps, and also supplies the vastus externus, semi-membranosus, and semi-tendinosus muscles. This artery anastomoses with the glutæal, sciatic, circumflex, and inferior perforating arteries. The *second* is the largest of the perforating arteries: it arises a little below the preceding, and pierces the tendons of the adductor brevis and magnus, sometimes of the great adductor only; it then divides into several branches which supply the glutæal and hamstring muscles, and communicate with the other perforating arteries. It also gives off the *nutritious artery* of the femur, or *artery of the medullary membrane:* this small vessel enters a foramen in the linea aspera usually near the centre of the bone; from this it runs along a canal which passes obliquely through the compact tissue of the bone towards its upper extremity, and ramifies on the medullary membrane. The *third* is the smallest of the three; it passes backward below the adductor brevis, then pierces the aponeurosis of the adductor magnus, and its branches are distributed in the same manner as the two other perforating arteries.

The *Terminating branch* appears as the continuation of the profunda itself, though greatly diminished in size: it lies upon a plane posterior to the adductor longus muscle, perforates the adductor magnus, supplies the hamstring muscles and inosculates with the perforating arteries, and the articular arteries about the knee. This vessel is sometimes called the fourth perforating artery.

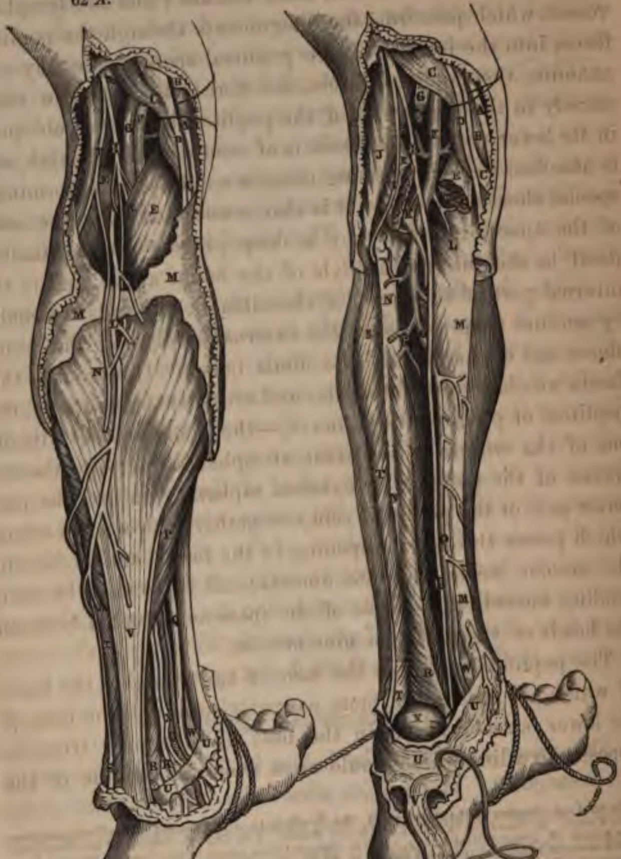
After the femoral artery has given off its anastomotic branch, it descends obliquely backwards through an oblique slit or opening between the adductor magnus muscle and the vastus internus, and, having arrived in the popliteal space, becomes the popliteal artery. The opening is bounded on the *outside* by the vastus internus; on the *inside* by the adductor magnus; *inferiorly* by the union of the tendon of this last muscle with the tendon of the vastus internus, and *superiorly* by the union of the tendons of the adductors longus and magnus. Its circumference is entirely tendinous, in order to provide against any obstruction to the circulation which would arise from the pressure of the muscular fibres upon the artery and vein in their passage through the opening.

THE POPLITEAL SPACE.

This name is given to the hollow in the posterior region of the knee-joint. It occupies about the inferior third of the posterior part of the thigh, and the superior fifth of the back part of the leg. On raising the integuments, we bring into view a layer of adipose and areolar tissue: in this layer we notice the terminating filaments of the *posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh*, which is a branch of the sacral plexus; and sometimes we find the posterior saphena vein: when this

Fig. 62.—Surgical Anatomy of the Popliteal Space and posterior part of Leg.

62 *A.* 62 *B.*



vein is so superficial, it passes through a small opening in the popliteal fascia and joins the popliteal vein: we find also in this stage of the dissection some minute veins and lymphatic vessels which pass from the integuments through the popliteal fascia into the interior of the popliteal space. We may next examine the popliteal fascia, the fibres of which run transversely in the upper part of the popliteal space, and obliquely in its lower part. The fascia is of considerable strength, and is attached to the hamstring muscles on either side, forming a special sheath for each: it is also connected along the sides of the space, internally by a deep process which attaches itself to the internal condyle of the femur above, and to the internal part of the head of the tibia below, and externally by another deep process to the external condyle of the femur above and to the head of the fibula below. Underneath this fascia we observe the muscular and articular branches of the popliteal or posterior tibial nerve,—the communicans tibialis one of the origins of the external saphenous nerve,—the entrance of the posterior or external saphena vein into the posterior part of the popliteal vein,—together with a small artery which passes through an opening in the fascia and is lost in the areolar tissue and integuments; all these may be seen tending towards the surface of the space and situated between the heads of the gastrocnemius muscle.

The popliteal space has the form of two triangles, the bases of which are united; or, more correctly speaking, the base of the lower is received within the base of the upper triangle, opposite to a line which would cross from one condyle of the

Fig. 62 *A.*—A, Tendon of the Gracilis. B, The Fascia Lata. C, C, Tendon of the Semi-membranosus Muscle. D, Tendon of the Semi-tendinosus Muscle. E, E, The two origins of the Gastrocnemius Muscle. F, The Popliteal Artery. G, The Popliteal Vein joined by the Posterior Saphena Vein. H, The Internal division of the great Sciatic or the Popliteal Nerve. I, The Peroneal Nerve. K, K, The Posterior Tibial Nerve, the continuation of the Popliteal. L, The Posterior or External Saphena Vein. M, M, The Fascia covering the Gastrocnemius Muscle. N, The Posterior Saphenous Nerve. O, O, The Posterior Tibial Artery. P, Portion of the Soleus Muscle. Q, The Tendon of the Flexor Digitorum Communis. R, Tendon of the Flexor Pollicis Longus. S, Tendon of the Peroneus Longus. T, Peroneus Brevis Muscle. U, U, The Internal Annular Ligament. V, Tendo Achillis. W, Tendon of the Tibialis Posticus Muscle. X, The Veins accompanying the Posterior Tibial Artery.

Fig. 62 *B.*—A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, Same as in *Fig. A.* B, The Internal Condyle of the Femur. K, The Plantaris Muscle lying posterior to the Popliteal Artery previously to its bifurcation. L, The Popliteus Muscle. M, M, The Tibia. N, N, The Fibula. O, O, The Posterior Tibial Artery. P, The Peroneal Artery. R, S, T, T, U, U, V, W, Same as in *Fig. A.* X, The Astragalus.

femur to the other. The superior triangle is bounded by the hamstring muscles; viz., on the outside by the tendon of the biceps; and on the inside by the semi-membranosus muscle, and the tendons of the sartorius, gracilis, and semi-tendinosus. The inferior triangle is bounded on the inside by the inner head of the gastrocnemius, and on the outside by the outer head of the gastrocnemius and the origin of the plantaris muscle: the origins of these muscles are situated between the inner and outer hamstring muscles. The fibular division of the great sciatic nerve may be seen descending obliquely outwards between the tendon of the biceps muscle and the outer head of the gastrocnemius; in this situation it becomes flattened and expanded: the slender tendon of the semi-tendinosus muscle may also be observed descending between the inner head of the gastrocnemius and the fibres of the semi-membranosus muscle. It may be observed that the outer boundary, or biceps muscle, is tied down to the femur by the origin of its short head, while the hamstring muscles on the inside have not the same close attachment; and therefore the popliteal space is more open in this direction. The *popliteal* or *posterior tibial nerve* descends along the external margin of the semi-membranosus muscle: in front of the nerve, and occupying the centre of the space, we find the popliteal vein, and still more in front, nearer to the articulation of the knee, we find the popliteal artery: at the top of the space both of these vessels are overlapped by the outer portion of the semi-membranosus muscle.

THE POPLITEAL ARTERY.

This artery extends from its entrance into the popliteal space, through the opening already described, to the lower margin of the popliteus muscle. Situated at first behind the femur above its internal condyle, it runs obliquely downwards and outwards, and terminates inferiorly, corresponding to the middle line of the limb. Its *anterior surface* corresponds superiorly to the posterior surface of the femur; lower down, to the ligamentum posticum of Winslowe, from which it is separated by one or two lymphatic glands; and still lower down, to the fleshy fibres of the popliteus muscle Throughout its extent its *posterior surface* is covered by the skin and superficial fascia, and by the popliteal fascia, together with a considerable quantity of adipose and areolar tissue: in the upper part of the space it is covered superiorly by the semi-membranosus muscle; in the middle of its course it is covered by its own vein and by the popliteal nerve, frequently by

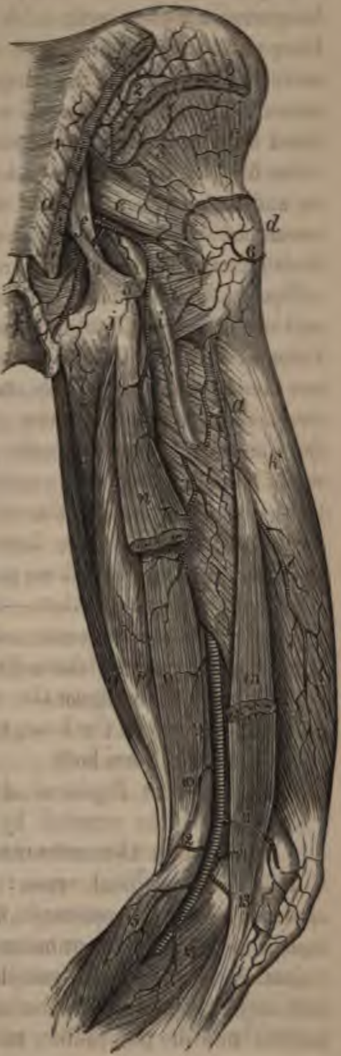


Fig. 63.—Arteries of the Back of the Thigh.

1, Glutæal Artery. 2, 3, Its superficial and deep Branch. 4, Internal Pudic Artery. 5, Ischiatic Artery. 6, Branch of the External Circumflex. 7, 8, Terminal Branches of the Perforating Arteries. 9, Popliteal Artery. 10, 11, Superior Internal and External Articular Arteries. 12, 13, Inferior Internal and External Articular Arteries. 14, Middle Articular Artery. 15, Gastrocnemial branches. *a*, Origin and Insertion of the Great Glutæal Muscle. *b*, Origin of the Middle Glutæal Muscle. *c*, Small Gluteal Muscle. *d*, Great Trochanter. *e*, Pyriform Muscle. *f*, Sacro-sciatic Ligaments. *g*, Internal Obturator Muscle. *h*, Quadrate Femoral Muscle. *i*, Sciatic Nerve. *j*, Tuberosity of the Ischium. *k*, External Vastus Muscle. *l*, Great Adductor. *m*, Short Head of the Biceps. *n*, Long Head. *o*, *p*, Semi-membranous and Semi-tendinous Muscles. *q*, Gracilis. *r*, Gastrocnemius.

a lymphatic gland, and inferiorly by the internal head of the gastrocnemius muscle. Its vein adheres firmly to its posterior surface, projecting a little to its external side above, but to its internal side inferiorly: the popliteal nerve is much more superficial, and some adipose tissue is interposed between it and the vessels: in the superior part of this space the nerve is found at the external margin of the semi-membranosus muscle, and therefore external to the artery, while inferiorly, on account of *the oblique direction of the artery*, the nerve is on a plane internal to it.

The student would do well to attend again to the relative positions of the popliteal nerve and vessels: at the upper part of the space, and passing from without inwards, he will find,—first the nerve, then the vein, and more internally the artery; about the centre of the space, that is, between the two condyles, they are grouped together, and do not lie obliquely with regard to each other, but, passing from behind forwards, the nerve is most superficial, the vein lies in front of it, and still deeper and nearer to the bone we find the artery. At the lower part of the space these parts are again placed obliquely with regard to one another,—the nerve is found most internally, the vein comes next, and lastly, most externally, we find the artery. Notwithstanding these alterations, throughout the entire of the space the nerve lies nearest to the skin, the artery nearest to the bone, and the vein corresponding to a plane between them both.

Ligature of the Popliteal Artery.—In its superior third, this artery may be exposed by an incision on the external margin of the semi-membranosus muscle, closely applied to which is the popliteal nerve: the muscle being drawn inwards, and the nerve outwards, the vein will be found closely applied to the posterior or cutaneous surface of the artery, and projecting a little to its outside: great caution is therefore necessary in separating the vessels from one another, and the needle should be passed from without inwards.

The popliteal artery may be secured in its inferior third by a vertical incision between the heads of the gastrocnemius muscle. The posterior saphenous nerve and vein being drawn out of the way, the popliteal nerve will be brought into view: deeper and more externally is the vein, and still deeper and projecting on the outside of the vein is the artery. The nerve may be drawn to the inside, and the vein either internally or externally, as may be found most convenient. The needle is to be introduced with its convexity to the vein.

It is not advisable to apply a ligature on the popliteal artery in the middle of its course, on account of its great depth, the unyielding nature of its lateral boundaries, and its vein and nerve lying so directly over it.

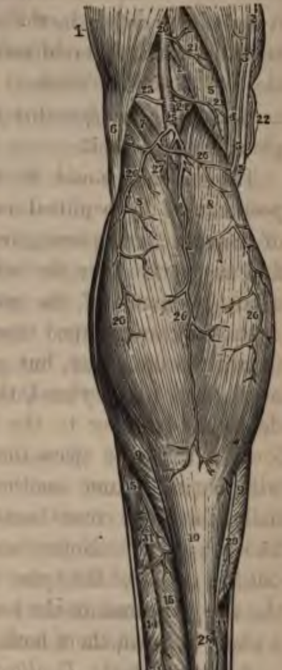


Fig. 64.—Represents the Superficial Arteries of the Ham and of the Posterior part of the Leg.

1, Vastus Externus. 2, 2, Tendon of the Sartorius. 3, 3, Tendon of the Gracilis. 4, The Semi-tendinosus. 5, The Semi-membranosus. 6, The Biceps Muscle. 7, The Plantaris. 8, 8, The Gastrocnemius. 9, 9, The Soleus. 10, 10, The Tendo Achillis. 11, The Long Flexor of the Toes. 12, Tendon of the Tibialis Posticus. 13, 13, Peroneus Longus. 14, 14, Peroneus Brevis. 15, 15, The Flexor Pollicis Longus. 16, Extensor Digitorum Brevis. 17, Peroneus Tertius. 18, Plantar Aponeurosis. 19. Adductor of the Little Toe. 20, Popliteal Artery. 21, 21, Muscular Branches from the Popliteal Artery. 22, Branch from Anastomotica Magna. 23, Superior External Articular Artery of Knee. 24, Superior Internal Articular Artery of Knee. 25, A Trunk sometimes common to the Inferior Muscular or Sural vessels of the calf. 26, 26, 26, 26, 26, Arteries of the calf. 27, Deep Muscular Twig. 28, 28, Posterior Tibial Artery. 29, Muscular Twig from Posterior Tibial Artery. 30, Branches from the Internal Malleolar Artery. 31, 31. Muscular Twigs from the Peroneal Artery. 32, The Posterior Peroneal Artery. 33, Twig from the preceding Artery. 34, Twig from the Posterior Tibial Artery. 35, Branch from the Anterior External Malleolar Artery. 36, External Dorsal Artery of little toe.

The branches of the popliteal artery within the space are the following:—

Superior Internal Articular.	Inferior Internal Articular.
Superior External Articular.	Inferior External Articular.

Muscular branches.

Azygos, or Middle Articular Artery.

and the terminating branches, viz.,

Anterior Tibial.	Posterior Tibial.

The *Superior Internal Articular Artery* arises under cover of the semi-membranosus muscle; it runs upwards and forwards and arches over the internal condyle of the femur, between that bone and the tendon of the adductor magnus; it terminates in two branches, one of which supplies the vastus internus, and the other is lost on the inside of the knee-joint: it anastomoses with the inferior internal articular artery, and with the anastomotic. Two superior internal articular arteries have been described, but one of them is that which has been mentioned already as the anastomotica magna branch of the femoral.

The *Superior External Articular Artery* passes upwards and outwards and arches over the external condyle of the femur, between that bone and the biceps tendon. It terminates in two branches, one of which supplies the vastus externus muscle, while the other is lost on the outside of the joint. It communicates with the anastomotic, with the external circumflexa femoris, and with the inferior external articular artery.

The *Inferior Internal Articular Artery*, larger than the external, runs downwards and inwards, along the superior margin of the popliteus muscle, then winds round the inside of the neck of the tibia, covered by the inner head of the gastrocnemius, by the internal lateral ligament, and by the tendons of the sartorius, gracilis, and semi-tendinosus muscles. It is lost in the structures on the inner side and front of the joint.

The *Inferior External Articular Artery* comes off a little lower down than the preceding. It crosses outwards beneath the external head of the gastrocnemius muscle, and then turns forwards between the external lateral ligament and convex margin of the external semi-lunar cartilage. At first this artery lies on the posterior surface of the popliteus muscle, it then crosses the muscle and afterwards lies at the lower margin of its tendon: finally it terminates in two branches, one of which ascends along the external margin of the patella, and anastomoses with the superior external articular artery; the other descends and divides into two branches, one of which sinks behind the ligamentum patellæ, and is lost in the fat in this situation; the second anastomoses with the tibial recurrent.

The *Muscular branches* have been divided into two sets, the *superior* and the *inferior;* the former are distributed to the muscles forming the upper boundaries of the popliteal space; the latter, called the *sural arteries,* are distributed to the heads of the gastrocnemii and plantaris muscles. The popliteal artery also gives off a small vessel which accompanies the posterior saphena vein.

The *Azygos* or *Middle Articular Artery* arises from the front of the popliteal artery, consequently will be best seen after the other branches have been dissected: it runs downwards and forwards, and pierces the posterior ligament of Winslowe, to supply the crucial ligaments and condyles of the femur: it is considerably smaller than either of the preceding arteries.

The division of the popliteal artery into its two terminating branches, the anterior and posterior tibial, takes place at the lower border of the popliteus muscle; sometimes, however, it takes place above this point, on the posterior surface of the muscle.

The ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.—This artery is smaller than the posterior tibial: it runs at first somewhat horizontally forwards from the posterior to the anterior region of the leg, through a foramen above the interosseous ligament: this aperture is bounded *internally* by the tibia, *externally* by the fibula, which is sometimes grooved by the artery, *superiorly* by the superior tibio-fibular articulation, and *inferiorly* by the upper fibres of the interosseous ligament, which present a concave margin towards the artery. In this stage of its course the vessel lies close to the fibula, and is occasionally accompanied by a small nerve which connects the posterior with the anterior tibial nerve: it then descends obliquely forwards, and nearly parallel to a line extending from the head of the fibula to the middle line of the ankle-joint. In the rest of its course it has been called by some the *Dorsalis Pedis:* it runs on the dorsum of the foot to the interval between the metatarsal bones of the great and second toes; here it terminates by dividing into two branches, viz.: the dorsalis pollicis and the arteria communicans.

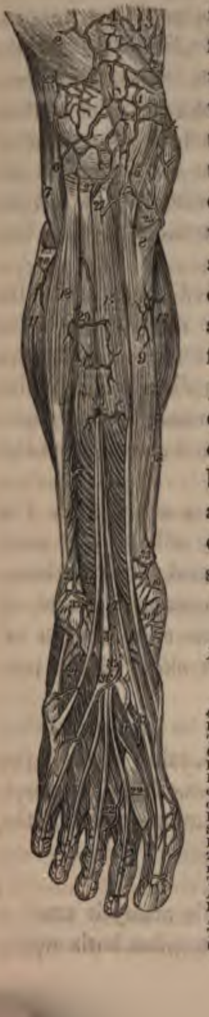


Fig. 65.—Represents the Superficial Arteries of the Anterior Aspect of the Leg and Foot.

1, The Patella. 2, 3, External and Internal portions of Triceps. 4, Tendon of Rectus. 5, Ligamentum Patellæ. 6, External Lateral Ligament of Knee. 7, Biceps Muscle. 8, Tendon of Sartorius. 9, Tibia. 10, Malleolus Internus. 11, Malleolus Externus. 12, 13, 14, Gastrocnemius and Soleus Muscles. 15, Tibialis Anticus. 16, Long Extensor Muscle of the Toes. 17, Extensor Pollicis Proprius. 18, Peroneus Longus. 19, Peroneus Brevis. 20, Peroneus Tertius or Anticus. 21, 21, 21, Extensor Digitorum Brevis. 22, 22, Interossei. 23, Superior External Articular Artery of Knee. 24, 24, Branch from Superior Internal Articular Artery of Knee. 25, A Superficial Branch from Inferior Internal Articular Artery of Knee. 26, Branch from Inferior External Articular Artery of Knee. 27, 27, Twigs from Anterior Tibial Recurrent. 28, Arterial Anastomosis over the Patella. 29, 29, 29, Superficial branches from Anterior Tibial Artery. 30, Anterior Peroneal Artery. 31, Anterior Tibial Artery. 32, Anterior External Malleolar Artery. 33, Twig from Posterior Internal Malleolar Artery. 34, Twigs from Anterior Internal Articular Artery. 35, Dorsal Artery of Foot. 36, Tarsal Artery. The dotted lines intended to show its course through the fibres of the short Extensor of the Toes. 37, The Dorsalis Pollicis.

In its course down the front of the leg its *posterior surface* rests, first, on a few fibres of the tibialis posticus which accompany the artery through the opening; then on the interosseous ligament, next on the anterior surface of the inferior extremity of the tibia, and lastly on the astragulus, scaphoid, and internal cuneiform bones: its *anterior surface* is covered by the anterior tibial nerve, and by the annular ligament; lower down it is crossed by the tendon of the extensor pollicis longus; and near its termination, by the internal tendon of the extensor brevis digitorum: its *internal surface* corresponds, in the greatest part of its extent, to the tibialis anticus muscle: the *external surface* is applied, superiorly, to the fibres of the extensor longus digitorum, from which it is separated lower down by the fibres of the extensor pollicis, the internal surface of which muscle guides the anterior tibial nerve over to the outer side of the artery. The tendon of this last muscle crosses in front of the artery on the dorsum of the foot, to get to its inside, and then the vessel is once more related externally to the extensor longus digitorum. In all this course the artery is accompanied by two venæ comites, one on either side. The anterior tibial nerve is a branch of the fibular, which winds round the outside of the head of the fibula, passing through the peroneus longus muscle, and meets the outer surface of the artery near the superior extremity of the extensor pollicis muscle. Thus the nerve is at first external to this vessel, then lies on it or in front of it, and inferiorly gets a little to its inner side.

Ligature of the Anterior Tibial Artery.—A line drawn downwards from the prominent portion of the external condyle of the tibia, anterior to the superior tibio-fibular articulation, would correspond to the tendinous intersection between the tibialis anticus and the extensor digitorum communis muscles; and deeper seated still, to the course of the artery when it has reached the front of the leg. If, however, the upper part of this vessel be wounded, the wound will be our guide to the artery, and our incisions should be made in the direction of the fibres of the muscles in this situation: its corresponding nerve will be seen lying on its outside, and on either side is a small vein. At the front of the instep the anterior tibial artery may be exposed by an incision made between the tendons of the extensor pollicis longus, and extensor digitorum communis. We may expect to meet in this operation, first, the internal division of the musculo-cutaneous nerve, and then the anterior tibial nerve, which either lies over, or is a little internal to, the artery.

The branches of the anterior tibial artery are—

Tibial Recurrent.
Muscular branches.
Internal Malleolar.
External Malleolar.
Tarsal.
Metatarsal;

and the terminating, viz.,

Dorsalis Pollicis.
Ramus Communicans.

The *Tibial Recurrent* arises from the anterior tibial artery, immediately after it has passed through the interosseous space: it curves upwards and inwards through the fibres of the tibialis anticus muscle, being crossed by the divisions of the tibial recurrent nerve: it spreads its branches over the anterior inferior part of the knee-joint and anastomoses with the inferior articular arteries.

Several *Muscular branches* are given off from the anterior tibial at various points of its course down the leg.

The *Internal Malleolar* is given off immediately above the ankle-joint; it crosses horizontally inwards behind the tendon of the tibialis anticus muscle, spreads its branches over the inside of the articulation, and anastomoses with the posterior tibial.

The *External Malleolar*, larger than the internal, comes off a little lower than the last; it passes outwards behind the extensor digitorum, extensor pollicis, and peroneus tertius muscles. Its branches are distributed to the external malleolus, and to the outside of the ankle-joint: it anastomoses with the tarsal, the external plantar, and the peroneal arteries.

The *Tarsal Branch* arises as the anterior tibial is passing over the scaphoid bone; it runs outwards through the fibres of the short extensor of the toes, and passes beneath the tendons of the long extensor and peroneus tertius; it supplies the short extensor and articulations of the tarsus, and anastomoses with the metatarsal, external malleolar, external plantar, and peroneal arteries.

The *Metatarsal Branch*, smaller than the preceding, proceeds forwards and outwards through the fibres of the short extensor, forming a curvature the convexity of which looks forwards, and terminates in anastomosing with the two small arteries last described, and with the external plantar. It gives many small branches to the articulations of the tarsus and to the short extensor muscles. Its most remarkable branches arise from its convexity: they are the *three interosseal branches:* they run forwards over the muscles fill-

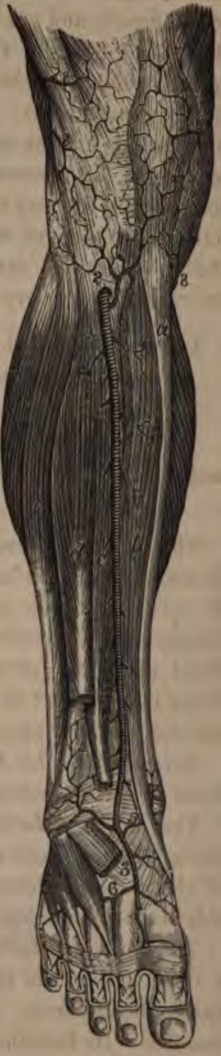


Fig. 66.—Arteries of the Front of the Leg.

1, Anterior Tibial Artery. 2, Recurrent Tibial. 3, Dorsal Pedal. 4, 5, External and Internal Malleolar Arteries. 6, Metatarsal Artery. 7, Dorsal Artery of the Great Toe. 8, Terminal Branches of the Articular Arteries. *a*, Tibia. *b*, Anterior Tibial Muscle. *c*, Extensor of the Great Toe. *d*, Long Extensor of the Toes. The Short Extensor occupies the back of the foot. *e*, Peroneal Muscles: on each side of the leg the bellies of the Gastrocnemius are visible.

ing the second, third and fourth interosseous spaces, and, having arrived at the bases of the phalanges, each of them divides into two small branches. In this manner are produced six smaller branches which supply the toes from the internal margin of the fifth, to the external margin of the second. Opposite the posterior extremities of the metatarsal bones, this artery communicates with the posterior perforating branches of the external plantar; and opposite their anterior extremities it communicates with the anterior perforating arteries, which are branches of the inferior digital.

The *Dorsalis Pollicis* advances to the interosseous space between the great and second toes, and divides into two branches, one of which passes under the extensor tendons of the great toe, sinks into the space between it and the second, passes obliquely across and in close contact with the under surface of the first metatarsal bone, and is lost on the inner surface of the great toe, anastomosing with the internal plantar artery: the other branch advances as far as the cleft between the great and second toes, and bifurcates to supply the external margin of the great toe and the internal margin of the second.

The *Ramus Communicans* sinks between the first and second metatarsal bones, and is continuous with the terminating branch of the external plantar artery.

The Posterior Tibial Artery.—This vessel may be exposed by cutting across the tendo Achillis at its upper part, and then reflecting the gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris muscles upwards: the deep tibial fascia may now be divided and the artery exposed. It extends from the inferior margin of the popliteus muscle to the fossa between the internal malleolus and os calcis: in this course it is directed obliquely downwards and inwards. *Posteriorly* it is crossed at its commencement by a tendinous arch connecting the two origins of the soleus muscle: the tendinous character of this arch will be well seen by cutting across the soleus muscle and turning up its superior portion, so as to expose its deep-seated surface. The artery is covered in the upper and middle third of the leg by the fleshy bellies of the gastrocnemius and soleus, by the plantaris tendon, and more immediately by an aponeurosis (the deep posterior tibial fascia) which is continuous with one of the expansions of the tendon of the semi-membranosus muscle.

In the inferior third of the leg the artery descends along the internal border of the tendo Achillis, which at first covers it a little, but lower down we find it covered only by the integuments and three layers of fascia, viz., by the deep tibial fascia just described, by another sent off from the internal margin of the tendo Achillis, and by a third, which may be distinguished by its gliding loosely over the posterior surface of the tendon. *Anteriorly* this artery corresponds successively, from above downwards, to the tibialis posticus muscle, to the flexor digitorum communis, and with the interposition of some areolar tissue, to the tibia. It is accompanied by two venæ comites, one

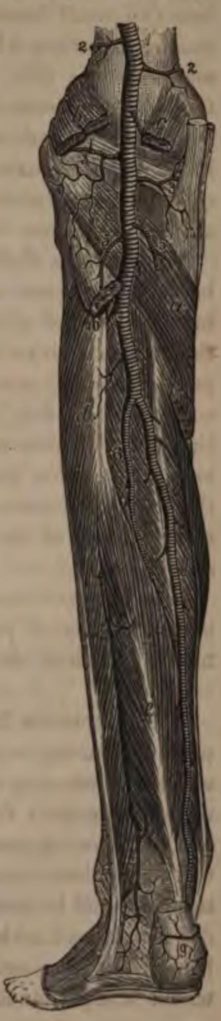


Fig. 67.—Arteries of the Back of the Leg.

1, Popliteal Artery. 2, 2, Superior Internal and External Articular Arteries. 3, 3, Inferior Internal and External Articular Arteries. 4, Middle Articular Artery. 5, Gastrocnemial Arteries. 6, Peroneal Artery. 7, Posterior Peroneal Branch. 8, Posterior Tibial Artery. 9, Calcanean Branches. *a*, Poplitea Muscle. *b*, *c*, Origin of the Gastrocnemius. *d*, Peroneal Muscles. *e*, Long Flexor of the Great Toe. *f*, Long Flexor of the Toes: that between the two latter is the Posterior Tibial Muscle.

on either side: its corresponding nerve is internal to it in the upper part of the leg; but as the nerve descends it crosses the artery superficially, so as to become external to it inferiorly, thus separating the posterior tibial from the fibular artery.

When the artery has arrived in the fossa between the os calcis and internal malleolus, it is accompanied by its nerve, together with vessels, and tendons, which lie in the following order; commencing at the internal malleolus, and passing backwards, we find, first, the tendon of the tibialis posticus, then the tendon of the flexor longus communis, then a small vein, then the artery, then another small vein, next the posterior tibial nerve, and nearest the os calcis the tendon of the flexor pollicis longus.

Ligature of the Posterior Tibial Artery.—This vessel may be secured in the middle part of its course, either according to Mr. Guthrie's plan, by a long incision made through the gastrocnemii muscles and deep-seated fascia down to the artery; or by the following proceeding:—the patient should lie on the outside of the limb, with the knee flexed, and the ankle extended: an incision is then to be made about four inches long, on the internal margin of the tibia, taking care to avoid the saphena vein. The inner edge of the gastrocnemius muscle is then to be detached from the bone, and the tibial origin of the soleus muscle divided on a director: the strong tibial fascia covering the vessel is now brought into view, and may also be slit up on a director. The artery will then be found at the distance of about an inch, or an inch and a half, from the internal edge of the tibia. The nerve will be seen crossing over towards its outer side, and on either side of it will be found a vein.

This artery may also require to be tied where it is passing behind the internal malleolus, in consequence of a wound to which it is particularly liable amongst ship-carpenters in the use of the adze; or in consequence of a wound of a large vessel in the sole of the foot. For the purpose of securing the vessel in this situation, an incision should be made about four inches long, nearly midway between the internal malleolus and tendo Achillis. This incision will take a curved direction, the concavity looking towards the inner malleolus: in this situation, we have to divide successively on the director the three layers of fascia already described: the artery will then be exposed; on either side of it is a small vein, and behind it, or nearer to the tendo Achillis, is the posterior tibial nerve. The needle should be carried under the artery from behind forwards.

The branches of the posterior tibial artery are the following:—

Muscular.	Peroneal.
Nutritious.	Calcanean.

Terminating, viz.:

Internal and External Plantar.

The *Muscular Arteries* are abundantly distributed to the heads of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles, and lower down to the tendons of the flexor muscles, and to the periosteum.

The *Nutritious Artery or Artery of the Medullary Membrane* of the tibia is the largest of the kind in the body: it arises from the posterior tibial shortly after its origin from the popliteal, it passes between the flexor muscles of the leg, then grooves the posterior surface of the tibia, and enters the nutritious foramen, running downwards towards the ankle through an oblique canal in the compact tissue of the bone, to be distributed on the medullary membrane.

The *Peroneal Artery* arises from the posterior tibial, a little below the commencement of the latter, and then inclines obliquely downwards and outwards to reach the fibula, along which it descends, till it arrives near the external malleolus.

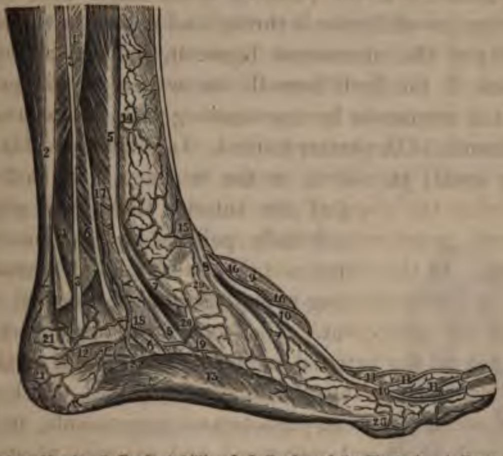
Here it terminates by dividing into the anterior and posterior peroneal. In this course the peroneal artery usually pierces the superior extremity of the tibialis posticus muscle, then lies on the interosseous ligament, being closely applied to the fibula, and covered by the flexor pollicis longus muscle. Its branches are distributed to the surrounding muscles and to the integuments and periosteum. In the inferior fourth of the leg it sends off a *transverse branch*, which passes inwards to anastomose with the posterior tibial. The *anterior peroneal artery* passes forwards through a foramen in the inferior extremity of the interosseous ligament, and is then found on the front of the limb beneath the tendon of the peroneus tertius : it terminates by anastomosing with the external malleolar branch of the anterior tibial. In some cases this artery is very small; in others, on the contrary, it is particularly large, takes the place of the anterior tibial, and gives off the tarsal, metatarsal, dorsalis pollicis, and communicating branches. In this latter case the anterior tibial is small, and ceases by communicating with the anterior peroneal on the front of the ankle-joint. The *posterior peroneal artery* descends behind the external malleolus, and divides on the outside of the os calcis into a number of branches, which supply the periosteum, adjacent tendons and integuments, and anastomose with the tarsal, metatarsal, and external plantar arteries.

Ligature of the Peroneal Artery.—The lower part of the peroneal artery may be exposed by an incision commencing at the mid-point between the tendo Achillis and external malleolus, and extending about four inches upwards and outwards towards the fibula. The fibres of the flexor pollicis longus thus exposed, may be detached from the fibula as far as necessary, and the muscle drawn inwards; the vessel will then be observed lying on the interosseous ligament close to the fibula. In order to reach this vessel Mr. Hey recommended sawing out a portion of the fibula.

In a case of a gunshot wound, Mr. Guthrie secured it about four inches below the head of the fibula, by an incision six inches long through the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles.*

Corresponding to the interval between the two origins of

Fig. 68.—Represents the Arteries of the Internal part of the Foot in an adult.



1, The Soleus Muscle. 2, Tendo Achillis. 3, 3, Tendon of the Plantaris. 4, Peroneus Brevis. 5, 5, Flexor Digitorum Longus. 6, 6, The Flexor Pollicis Longus. 7, Tendon of Tibialis Posticus. 8, Tendon of Tibialis Anticus. 9, Extensor Digitorum Brevis. 10, 10, Tendon of Extensor Pollicis Proprius. 11, 11, 11, Common Extensor Tendons of Toes. 12, Short Flexor of the Toes. 13, Abductor Pollicis. 14, A branch from the Posterior Tibial. 15, Internal Malleolar Artery. 16, 16, Tarsal Artery. 17, Posterior Tibial Artery. 18, Internal Plantar Artery. 19, A superficial branch of same. 20, 20, Anastomosis between the preceding artery and Tarsal Artery. 21, 21, Twigs to Calcis. 22, The External Plantar Artery. 23, Internal Artery of Great Toe, or Sixth Digital Artery.

the abductor pollicis muscle, the posterior tibial artery terminates by dividing into the internal and external plantar arteries. Immediately before this final division the posterior tibial artery gives off three or four small branches called the *internal calcanean*, which supply the inner part of the os calcis and the muscles arising from it, together with the areolar tissue and integuments covering the parts in this situation.

---

* Med. Chir. Trans., vol. vii. p. 234.

The *Internal Plantar Artery* is a branch of inconsiderable size: it advances above the abductor pollicis pedis; and after supplying this muscle, and the flexor pollicis brevis, terminates in branches which are distributed to the integuments of the great toe, and in anastomosis with the branches of the anterior tibial artery.

The *External Plantar Artery*, much larger than the preceding, passes obliquely forwards and outwards towards the base of the fifth metatarsal bone: in this the *first* part of its course, it nearly follows the outer margin of the flexor digitorum communis, having above it the accessory muscle, and beneath it the plantar fascia and short flexor of the toes. In the *second* part of its course it lies deeper, and passes forwards between the flexor brevis and the abductor minimi digiti, and then turns inwards through a triangular space, bounded in *front* by the transversalis pedis, *posteriorly* and *internally* by the adductor of the great toe, and *externally* by the short flexor of the little toe; the interosseous muscles lie above it, and the common flexor tendons beneath it: its corresponding nerve crosses to its

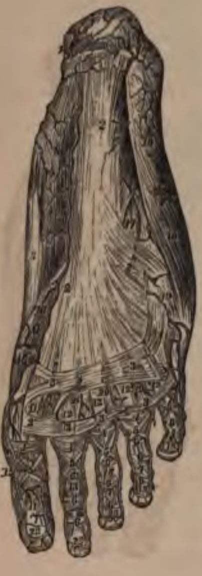


Fig. 69.—Represents the Superficial Arteries of the Sole of the Foot in an adult.

2, 2, 2, The Plantar Aponeurosis. 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, Transverse bands connecting the anterior divisions of Plantar Aponeurosis. 4, 4, 4, 4, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 7, 7, 7, Ligaments of the Plantar Aspect of the Toes. 8, 8, Abductor Pollicis Muscle. 9, Portion of the Flexor Pollicis Brevis Muscle. 10, 10, Abductor Minimi Digiti Muscle. 11, 11, Tendon of the Flexor Pollicis Longus. 12, 12, 12, 12, Tendons of the Short Flexor of the Toes. 13, 13, 13, 13, Tendons of the Long Flexor of the Toes. 14, 14, Arterial Anastomosis on the Calcis. 15, 15, Internal Plantar Artery. 16, 16, Internal Digital Artery of the Great Toe. 17, External Plantar Artery. 18, First or External Digital Artery of Little Toe. 19, Second Digital Artery. 20, Third Digital Artery. 21, Fourth Digital Artery. 22, Fifth Digital Artery. 23, 23, 23, Arches formed by the Anastomosis of the Digital Arteries.

inside, the artery being superficial at the crossing. Finally, the external plantar terminates by becoming continuous with the communicating branch of the anterior tibial between the metatarsal bones of the first or great toe and of that next to it, thus completing the plantar arch of arteries. From this account, it follows that the artery is deeply seated, and describes in its entire course a curvature, the convexity of which looks forwards and outwards : it is also curved to accommodate itself to the lateral and antero-posterior arches of the foot. In the fœtus and young subject, the ossification of the tarsal and metatarsal bones not being completed, these arches of the foot do not exist, and the artery consequently lies nearer to the integuments.

The branches of the external plantar artery may be classed into three sets, viz. :—

Superior or Perforating;
Posterior and Inferior, or Muscular;
 and the
Anterior or Digital.

The *Superior or perforating branches* ascend between the metatarsal bones, and anastomose with the interosseous branches of the metatarsal artery.

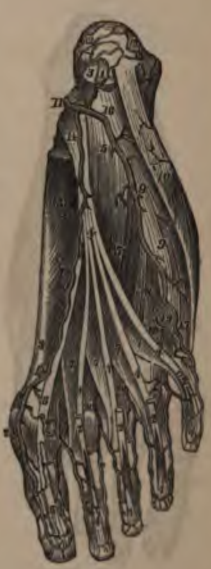


Fig. 70.—Represents the distribution of the Arteries of the Sole of the Foot. The Plantar Aponeurosis and the Short Flexor of the Toes have been removed.

1, Origin of the Short Flexor of the Toes, cut. 2, 2, 2, 2, Tendons of the preceding Muscle. 3, 3, Abductor Pollicis Muscle. 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, Tendons of the Long Flexor of the Toes. 5, 5, Accessory Muscle. 6, 6, Tendon of the Flexor Pollicis Longus. 7, 7, 7, 7, The Lumbricales. 8, Portion of the Short Flexor of the Little Toe. 9, 9, 10, Abductor Minimi Digiti. 11, Posterior Tibial Artery. 12, Branch to Calcis from preceding Artery. 13, Branch to Calcis from Posterior Peroneal Artery. 14, Internal Plantar Artery. 15, Sixth Digital Artery or Branch to the inner side of Great Toe from the Dorsalis Pollicis. 16, External Plantar Artery. 17, First Digital Artery running along the outside of Little Toe. 18, Second Digital Artery. 19, Perforating Twig from the preceding Artery. 20, 21, 22, Third, Fourth, and Fifth Digital Arteries. 23, Dorsal Twigs of Great Toe.

The *Posterior and inferior, or muscular branches*, are distributed to the interosseous muscles and lumbricales, and to the tarso-metatarsal articulations.

The *Anterior, or digital arteries*, are larger than the preceding, and usually four in number. The *first*, or most external, supplies the outer edge of the little toe. The *second*, *third*, and *fourth* advance in the three outer interosseous spaces till they reach the upper surface of the transversalis pedis muscle: here each of them sends off an *anterior perforating branch* which communicates with the corresponding interosseous branch of the metatarsal artery: after this, each of the digital arteries divides into two digital *branches:* the digital branches from the second supply the inner surface of the little toe and the external surface of the opposite toe; those from the third supply the inner surface of the fourth toe and the outer of the third; and those from the fourth supply the inner surface of the third toe and the outer of the second. Thus the three outer toes and the outer surface of the second are supplied by digital branches from the external plantar artery; whilst the inner and outer surfaces of the great toe, and the inner surface of the second, are supplied by the dorsalis pollicis branch of the anterior tibial: these too may be termed digital branches, that one which is situated in the most internal interosseous space being the fifth digital artery, and that on the inside of the great

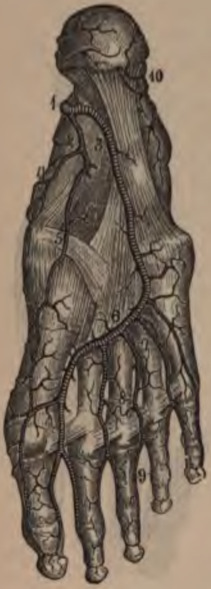


Fig. 71.—Arteries of the Sole of the Foot.

1, Posterior Tibial Artery dividing into 2, the Internal, and 3, the External Plantar Arteries. 4, Branch to the Inner side of the Foot. 5, Branch to the Great Toe. 6, Plantar Arch. 7, Perforating Arteries. 8, Common Digitals. 9, Digitals to the contiguous sides of the Toes. 10, Calcanean Branches of the Peroneal and Posterior Tibial Arteries.

toe being the sixth. As in the fingers, the terminating branches of the digital arteries which run at each side of the toes, keep up a free anastomosis with each other at the under surface of each of the ungual phalanges: each anastomosis forms an arch the convexity of which is directed forwards.

SOME OF THE PRINCIPAL

VARIETIES OR ANOMALIES OF THE ARTERIES.

VARIETIES OR ANOMALIES OF THE PULMONARY ARTERY.

THE pulmonary artery may arise from the aorta, or in common with it; or, the two ventricles may communicate at their bases, and the septum between the aorta and pulmonary artery may be deficient. The pulmonary artery has been known to arise from the left ventricle, and the aorta from the right: in such cases we either find the ductus arteriosus open, or the foramen ovale, or both. The pulmonary artery may arise from the left ventricle, the right being almost obliterated and communicating with the left. The pulmonary artery may give off the subclavian artery. In a case related by Dr. Farre, it had two origins,—one from the right, and the other from the left ventricle; it then gave off the descending aorta, while an ascending aorta arose directly from the heart, and supplied the head and upper extremities. In cyanosis, the pulmonary artery is frequently found contracted or obliterated at its origin. In such cases the blood reaches the lungs by passing first through the aorta, then through the ductus arteriosus, and so into the right and left pulmonary arteries: the bronchial arteries also, by means of their communications with the pulmonary arteries, will contribute to supply the lungs.

VARIETIES OR ANOMALIES OF THE AORTA.

The varieties of the commencement of the aorta, which we shall now consider, may be classed into those relating to its *situation*, its *form*, its *course*, and to the *branches* which arise from it.

1. VARIETIES AS TO THE SITUATION OF THE ARCH.—Mr. Quain mentions one case in which the arch was situated "but a little below the level of the top of the sternum;" and another, in which it was so low, that "its upper margin corresponded to the middle of the fourth vertebra."

2. VARIETIES AS TO FORM.—The aorta has usually at its origin the form of an arch: in some cases, however, this vessel has been observed to have no arch, but to divide soon after its origin into two great trunks, one of which, after having ascended for some distance, gave off three large branches, presenting the form of a cross, one branch, the continuation, which became the left carotid; a right horizontal branch which was the arteria innominata, and a left horizontal, which became the left subclavian: the other great trunk became the descending aorta. This is the natural arrangement in the horse, ass, sheep, goat, camel, and in many other mammalia, especially those having long necks.*

In other cases the aorta bifurcates as above, but *each* division gives branches to the head, neck, and upper extremity of the corresponding side, and after encircling the trachea and œsophagus, they unite to form the descending aorta. This is analogous to the natural structure in reptiles, and was first described by Hammel.

In a remarkable case described by Malacarne, the aorta arose by a single trunk of large size, and contained five semilunar valves; it then divided into two branches immediately after its origin; these two formed a loop, the sides of which united into one large trunk which became the descending aorta. From each of the two primary branches three branches arose; the first the subclavian, the second the external carotid, and the third the internal carotid. Thus in this case there was no arteria innominata. There are two specimens in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons in Ireland of the aorta having *four* valves at its origin. Mr. Hunter remarks, "I have found in the human subject only two valves to the aorta; but this is very rare."[*]

---

* In Abhandlungen der Josephinischen Med. Chir. Acad. Zuwien. Band 1, s. 271–1787.

A very singular case is related by Gintrac, in which the ascending aorta, which arose from the heart, gave branches to the head and upper extremities; while the descending aorta was a continuation of the pulmonary artery.

Lastly, the aorta has been known to arise by two roots, one from the left ventricle and the other from the right.

VARIETIES AS TO THE COURSE OF THE AORTA.—In some cases the aorta, instead of crossing to the left side of the spine, passes backwards towards its right side, and then either descends on the same side, or crosses over to the left behind the trachea and œsophagus.[†] In other cases there is a complete transposition of the viscera; and the direction of the heart and origins of its great vessels are altogether reversed, the systemic cavities of the heart being situated at the right side, and the pulmonic on the left, the aorta making its arch to the right side, and descending along the right side of the spine even to its termination in the iliac arteries. The vena cava in these cases descended on the left side of the spine, instead of on the right; the left carotid and left subclavian arose from an arteria innominata, on the right side of which arose separately from the arch the right carotid and right subclavian arteries.[‡]

---

[*] Treatise on the Blood, &c., p. 202.

[†] Meckel, Anat., t. ii. p. 312.

[‡] Phil. Trans. 1793; and Houston's Catalogue of Museum of Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland, p. 61.

VARIETIES AS TO THE BRANCHES OF THE ARCH.—*Varieties with two primary branches.*—These varieties are exceedingly numerous. There may be a common trunk on the right side, giving off the right subclavian, and both carotids. This is the natural disposition in the simiæ, and has been also observed in the dog, fox, wolf, lion, hyena, bear, and many other mammalia.

There may be a common trunk on the left side, giving off the left subclavian and both carotids. This is a much rarer variety than the preceding.

There may be two arteriæ innominatæ, one giving off the right common carotid and subclavian, and the other giving off the left common carotid and subclavian. This is the natural arrangement in the cheiroptera, and, according to Cuvier, occurs in the dolphin.*

There may be a left arteria innominata giving off the left carotid and subclavian, while the right carotid comes directly from the arch, and the right subclavian comes from the thoracic aorta.

Mr. Green remarks, "This tendency of the vessels towards the left side leads to an anomaly extremely rare, an example of which I have before me; in this variety all the vessels arise from the left side of the arch. First, the right carotid, which crosses the lower part of the trachea, giving off the right vertebral; next to this arose the left carotid and subclavian, nearly from the same point; the right subclavian is detached from the back part of the arch a little below the left subclavian: it passed to the right side, behind the œsophagus and trachea."†

Lastly, There may be two arteriæ innominatæ, one giving off the two carotids, and the other the two subclavians.

Varieties with three primary branches.—This may consist in mere transposition of the vessels, as when we find an arteria innominata on the left side, and the right carotid and subclavian arising separately from the arch without any other transposition. This is very rare.

---

* "Leçons d'Anatomie Comparée," tome iv. p. 249.

† Varieties of the Arteries, p. 7.

The two carotids may arise between the subclavians by a common trunk. This is the regular disposition in the elephant.

There may be a common trunk for the two carotids; on the left side of this may be the origin of the left subclavian; and at the extremity of the arch, the origin of the right subclavian.

Lastly, there may be an arteria innominata on the right side for the right subclavian, and the two common carotids; on the left side of this, the origin of the left vertebral; and still more to the left, the origin of the left subclavian.

Varieties with four primary branches.—In addition to the usual branches, there may be a left vertebral arising between the left carotid and left subclavian, as in the phoca vitulina; or a left vertebral arising beyond the left subclavian; or an inferior thyroid artery, usually the right one, arising between the innominata and left carotid; or a middle thyroid artery, arising in the same situation; or an internal mammary, or a thymic branch, arising from the arch of the aorta.

The right subclavian and carotid arteries may arise separately from the arch, in which case the right subclavian may be the first branch; or the right subclavian may arise between the right and left carotids; or between the left carotid and left subclavian; or beyond the left subclavian: of this last variety there are many cases on record. Mr. Kirby presented to the College of Surgeons, in this city, a preparation in which a piece of fish-bone pierced the right subclavian artery as it passed behind the œsophagus.* This artery may, however, pass between the œsophagus and trachea, or even in front of the latter. In such cases the inferior laryngeal nerve of this side does not curve under the right subclavian artery, but after its origin from the pneumogastric nerve in the lower portion of the neck, it passes directly inwards to the inferior part of the larynx. The first case in which this peculiar course of the right inferior laryngeal nerve was observed, is related by Dr. Stedman.* The next case is related by Dr. Hart, who was moreover the first author that explained the reason of the deviation. He observes, that "in the earlier periods of the existence of the fœtus, the rudiment of the head appears as a small projection from the upper and anterior part of the trunk, the neck not being yet developed. The *larynx* at this time is placed *behind* the ascending portion of the arch of the aorta, while the brain, as it then exists, is situated so low as to rest on the thymus gland, and *front* of that vessel. Hence it is that the inferior laryngeal nerves pass back to the larynx, separated by the ascending aorta,—the left going through its arch, while the right goes below the arteria innominata."† Now it can be readily understood how the ascent of the brain, as the neck becomes developed, brings higher up the origins of the recurrent nerves; and the ascent of the larynx on a deeper plane brings up their terminations in that organ, so that they are made to form loops,—the right under the subclavian artery, and the left under the arch of the aorta. It is therefore clear that if the right subclavian artery should come off from the arch beyond and behind the left subclavian, and pass behind the trachea and œsophagus, or even between the two in order to reach the right side, the artery will be situated behind the destination of the nerve, so that the right nerve will pass at once to the larynx without passing under the right subclavian artery. Or again, should the right subclavian artery, arising thus irregularly, pass in front of the trachea in order to reach the right side, and in its course be placed lower down than the ordinary situation of the arteria innominata, the right inferior laryngeal nerve in this case also will go directly to the larynx above the right subclavian artery. It is therefore clear that in all such cases the right subclavian artery will not have the effect of depressing the inferior laryngeal nerve of the right side into the form of a loop underneath the vessel.

---

* Houston's Catalogue, p. 79.

---

* Edin. Med. and Surg. Jour. for 1823.

† Same Journal, April, 1826.

The left subclavian may be the first branch of the arch on the right side; and after that may arise, in succession, the right subclavian, right carotid, and left carotid arteries. Or, lastly, the vessels may arise from the arch in the following order: left carotid, right carotid, left subclavian, and right subclavian arteries.

Varieties with five primary branches.—In addition to the three usual branches, the left vertebral, and the right internal mammary, or the left vertebral and right inferior thyroid, may be found arising from the arch; or there may be the three usual branches with two vertebrals, one on either side of the left carotid.

The subclavians and carotids may arise separately from the arch, with a common trunk for the left vertebral and inferior thyroid; or with a right inferior thyroid artery; or with a left vertebral, in which case the right subclavian may be either the first or last branch.

I shall have occasion, hereafter, to notice particularly a very remarkable case which I observed in the Carmichael or Richmond Hospital School, in which five branches arose from the arch, in consequence of the subclavian and external and internal carotids of the right side coming off separately from the aorta.

Varieties with six primary branches.—The subclavians, carotids, and vertebrals, have been observed to arise separately from the arch, each vertebral being between the subclavian and carotid of its own side.

Hence it appears, that omitting the coronary arteries, two is the smallest number, and six the greatest number of primary branches arising from the arch: these extremes are much less common than the intermediate numbers.

Sometimes varieties with regard to the coronary arteries have been observed; there may be but one; again, there may be three, or even four of the vessels found. These deviations are, however, rare.

VARIETIES OF THE ARTERIA INNOMINATA.

Some of the irregularities in the origin of this vessel have been already described: in addition it may be remarked, that it has been seen to take its origin from the descending aorta. When it does not arise from the arch at the usual place, it must necessarily vary in its course. Velpeau mentions a curious irregularity of this vessel:—"After its origin, it passed to the left, in order to turn over the trachea, then penetrated between this organ and the œsophagus, and replaced itself on the right side at the moment of its bifurcation, but much more deeply than in the natural state."*

In some cases its length is less, and in others greater than what we have described. Guthrie states that in ordinary cases the artery is two inches and a half in length.

BRANCHES OF THE ARTERIA INNOMINATA.—The *Middle Thyroid of Neubauer*, when present, usually arises from this vessel: the inferior thyroid also may arise from it.

VARIETIES OF THE COMMON CAROTID ARTERY.

Some years back I observed a very remarkable variety in a subject at the Carmichael, then the Richmond Hospital School of Medicine: in this subject there was no common carotid on the right side; and the external and internal carotids arose separately from the arch of the aorta. The order of the vessels was,—right subclavian, right external carotid, right internal carotid, left common carotid, left subclavian. I showed this preparation to the younger Tiedemann when he visited the school, and he remarked, that no similar case had been observed or heard of by himself or his father. Mr. Harrison states that he has known two examples of the internal and external carotids arising on one side separately from the aorta.

---

* Velpeau's Surg. Anat., American Trans., p. 433.

In some cases the common carotid is crossed in front by the inferior thyroid artery. In other cases the vertebral artery ascends behind it to pierce the third or second cervical vertebra. Cases are recorded in which the common carotid ascended behind the angle of the lower jaw before it bifurcated; and on the other hand, it may bifurcate as low as the inferior margin of the thyroid cartilage, or at the sixth cervical vertebra: lastly, it sometimes happens, that there is no bifurcation,—the common carotid and internal carotid forming a continuous trunk, which gives off the branches of the external carotid. The common carotid may give off the inferior thyroid, superior laryngeal, pharyngea ascendens, superior thyroid and right vertebral arteries.

VARIETIES OF THE SUPERIOR THYROID ARTERY.—This artery sometimes arises by a trunk common to it and the lingual, or it may arise directly from the common carotid: in some cases the common carotid, instead of bifurcating, divides into three branches, the internal carotid, the external carotid, and the superior thyroid.

VARIETIES OF THE OCCIPITAL ARTERY.—In some cases this artery arises from the internal carotid.* Dr. Green relates a case in which it arose from the vertebral.* Lastly, it may give off the pharyngea ascendens.†

---

* Tiedemann, Exp. Tab. Art., p. 81.

VARIETIES OF THE POSTERIOR AURICULAR ARTERY.—This artery sometimes arises by a trunk common to it and the occipital. It sometimes gives off the transversalis faciei.

VARIETIES OF THE PHARYNGEA ASCENDENS ARTERY.—The pharyngea ascendens is sometimes a branch of the common carotid artery, and in still rarer cases it may arise from the internal carotid, in which case there is usually an accessary pharyngeal from the external carotid. It has also been observed to arise from the occipital,‡ or from the superior thyroid,§ or facial.|| Finally, there are sometimes two, and at other times three, instead of a single artery.¶

VARIETIES OF THE TRANSVERSALIS FACIEI ARTERY.—In many cases this artery arises from the temporal. Dr. Hart has seen it arise from the external carotid, opposite the angle of the jaw, beneath which it passed forwards and joined the labial at the anterior edge of the masseter muscle. He has also seen it arise from the posterior auricular. When the facial artery is small, this vessel is proportionally large, and gives off the dorsalis nasi or angularis artery, or both.

VARIETIES OF THE INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY AND ITS BRANCHES.

We have already observed that the external carotid is sometimes deficient, in which case, the internal is a continuation of the common carotid, and gives off the branches which usually arise from the external; and that it sometimes arose

---

* Green, p. 10.

† Op. Cit., p. 9.

‡ Cruveilhier, Ang., p. 102.

§ Meyer, Lehre von der Blut, p. 49.

|| Green, p. 9.

¶ Sœmmering, Op. cit. p. 126.

near the base of the skull. In many cases we find that at the side of the sella turcica it passes through a foramen formed by the existence of a middle clinoid process, or spicula of bone connecting the tip of the anterior clinoid process to the side of the body of the sphenoid bone. In some cases its anterior branch to the cerebrum unites directly with that of the opposite side, instead of being connected with it by one or more transverse branches, and, after a short course, the common trunk divides into two branches. Occasionally its posterior communicating branch is of considerable size, and its continuation forms the posterior artery of the cerebrum, being connected to the basilar trunk by a short branch. There are cases on record, in which Haller had observed the two anterior arteries of the cerebrum furnished by the carotid of one side, and the two middle arteries of the cerebrum furnished by the carotid of the opposite side.

VARIETIES OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

In addition to the great number of varieties already noticed, we shall only add, in this place, that, in some cases, the subclavian artery passes in front of the scalenus anticus muscle along with the vein,* whilst, on the other hand, this latter vessel may be found behind the muscle together with the artery. Both of these varieties have been observed by Velpeau. M. Robert has observed, that the little scalenus, when present, in passing to its insertion into the rib, frequently separates the two inferior fasciculi of the brachial plexus, and pushes them forwards against the artery. In some cases, the muscular relations differ: the omo-hyoid muscle may have an additional origin from, or attachment to, the clavicle.

Bouillaud mentions that Breschet observed a very remarkable anomaly, in which the left subclavian artery arose from the pulmonary artery. In some cases the *thyroid axis* is deficient, and its usual branches arise by two or more separate trunks. In its third stage, the subclavian frequently gives off the posterior scapular. Professor Hargrave has seen the internal mammary arise in this situation and descend in front of the scalenus anticus muscle.

---

* Hird, Lond. Med. Gazette, Feb. 4, 1837.

VARIETIES OF THE VERTEBRAL as to its origin have been alluded to on page 380.

VARIETIES OF THE INTERNAL MAMMARY ARTERY.—This artery may arise from the arch of the aorta, arteria innominata, thyroid axis, and even from the third stage of the subclavian, as observed by Professor Hargrave. Bichat has seen its *comes nervi phrenici* branch as large as the trunk of the internal mammary, and Cruveilhier met a subject in which its third intercostal branch was large enough to appear a bifurcation of it.

VARIETIES OF THE POSTERIOR SCAPULAR ARTERY.—We have already seen that this artery, in its normal state, arises from the thyroid axis, but that sometimes it arises from the subclavian in its third stage; in such cases it may pass through the brachial plexus of nerves, and take its ordinary place along the vertebral margin of the scapula. In cases of this description of variety, the *cervicalis superficialis*, as already stated, forms a distinct branch of the thyroid axis.

VARIETIES OF THE SUBSCAPULAR ARTERY.—This artery sometimes arises in common with the posterior circumflex, and Dr. Monro has seen it arising from the inferior thyroid.

VARIETIES OF THE POSTERIOR CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY.—In some cases this artery winds round the humerus by passing beneath the tendons of the teres major and latissimus dorsi, and not through the quadrangular space already described. In such cases it usually gives off the superior profunda artery.

VARIETIES OF THE BRACHIAL ARTERY.

The most common irregularity of the brachial artery is a high bifurcation into the ulnar and radial. This may occur in any part of its course. In this case the ulnar and radial arteries, having arrived in the fore-arm, may pursue their usual course; or the radial may, in certain cases, run superficially, or the ulnar may be the superficial branch: usually, however, in these irregularities, the ulnar follows the ordinary deep course of the brachial artery. Mr. Burns observes, that, when the ulnar is the anomalous branch, the bifurcation usually takes place higher up than when the radial is irregular.

In the high bifurcation, the radial artery usually lies at first on the inside, and afterwards crosses the ulnar, or continued trunk, to become external. These two vessels may be connected in their course by a transverse branch; and the transverse branch may give off a *median artery*, which descends on the front of the fore-arm in company with the median vein: in other cases, the median artery may come from the brachial, radial, or ulnar: it usually terminates in the superficial palmar arch, sometimes in the deep one.

Dr. Quain mentions a remarkable instance, in which the brachial artery divided into two branches, and, lower down, reunited to form a single trunk, which afterwards bifurcated regularly into the radial and ulnar.* A similar instance is recorded by Professor Quain;† and a preparation of the same kind of irregularity exists in the Macartney collection in the Anatomical Museum of the University of Cambridge. Mr. Norton, of the Royal Liverpool Institution, has met with a similar case. Dr. Geddings, of Maryland, in speaking of the varieties of the brachial artery, observes, "In some instances the radial and ulnar arteries, after separating high in the arm, or axilla, pass for a limited distance down the arm, and then unite." He gives no reference, however, but may possibly allude to the following passage in the work of Dr. Green, who is quite explicit on the subject:—"Sometimes the axillary artery divides into two vessels which again unite at the fold of the arm, so that there are in reality two brachial arteries lying close to one another, and of equal magnitude. I have seen two striking examples of this kind. In one case, the brachial divided into two branches, which in like manner conjoined above the fold of the arm."*

---

* Elements of Anatomy, 4th edition, p. 558.

† Anatomy of the Arteries of the Human Body, p. 221.

In three cases out of forty, Professor Harrison found "a small branch arising from the upper part of the brachial and descending to the elbow, where it joined the radial artery; in two instances this superficial branch descended in the fore-arm beneath the superficial flexors, and was distributed to the muscles in this region; and in two cases it accompanied the brachial nerve beneath the annular ligament of the carpus, and joined the superficial palmar arch of arteries."† These have been described under the name of "*vasa aberrantia*:" they are frequently of considerable size.

The next variety to be noticed is that of the brachial artery giving off the interosseal: a case of this kind has been observed by Dr. Flood in the Richmond Hospital School. In some rare cases the brachial artery divides at one point into three branches, viz., the radial, ulnar, and interosseous.

VARIETIES OF THE ULNAR AND RADIAL ARTERIES.—The origin of either vessel in the arm or axilla has been already noticed. Sometimes the ulnar artery arises regularly at the bend of the elbow, yet afterwards it descends on the cutaneous surface of the muscles arising from the internal condyle, and accompanies the basilic vein. The radial artery may also, though regular in its origin, run superficial to the fascia. These latter irregularities are very rare. Dr. Green, when speaking of the irregular origin of the ulnar high up in the arm, observes, "it pursues its course along the fore-arm, immediately under the fascia."*

---

* Green on the "Varieties in the Arterial System," p. 17.

† Surgical Anatomy of the Arteries, p. 192.

He remarks also, concerning the irregular origin of the radial, that "in some rare instances the vessel pierces the brachial aponeurosis, and becomes quite superficial; but more usually it is covered by the tendinous expansion." He states that he has seen but one instance of the irregular radial lying superficial to the fascia:† Tiedemann makes the same remark.‡

Dr. Barclay describes a case in which *both radial and ulnar* were superficial. Dr. Green saw a case in which a transverse branch joined the radial and ulnar at the lower third of the fore-arm. Sometimes the radial artery gives off the superficialis volæ high up in the fore-arm: this is more likely to occur in case of a high bifurcation of the brachial. If the superficialis volæ arise high up, the continued trunk of the radial may either descend along with it and on a deeper plane, or may turn round the radius near the lower third of the fore-arm, and descend in this region to the hand. Dr. Green saw two cases of this description.

In addition to the above, we may quote the following remarkable variety, observed by Mr. Bennett Lucas at the North London School of Medicine:—

"A female, aged seventy, exhibited in the distribution of her arteries the most uniform irregularity. Those of the upper extremities I have alone preserved, as they are highly interesting in a practical point of view. The brachial artery of the right side bifurcated as usual at the bend of the elbow into radial and ulnar arteries; but the radial was infinitely the larger. The ulnar artery, after running its usual course for about two inches, suddenly sent off a leash of branches; viz., a large recurrent, several fair-sized muscular, a huge interosseal, which ran down to terminate in the deep palmar arch, and a middle-sized 'continued trunk,' which lost itself in the superficial palmar arch, as it scarcely could be said to assist in its formation. The great radial trunk went its way, detaching few and insignificant twigs, and a quarter of an inch above the wrist-joint sent off a superficialis volæ, more as a matter of form than any thing else, for it soon expended itself in the muscles of the thumb. The undiminished trunk of the radial now turned round the outer edge of the carpus, and, at the angle formed by the metacarpal bones of the thumb and index finger, sent off two branches, the larger of which (the other being spent in the adductor pollicis and abductor indicis muscles) coursed along the inner edge of the metacarpal bone of the thumb, furnishing the princeps pollicis, radialis indicis, and a retrograde branch, to form, with the nearly exhausted ulnar artery, the superficial palmar arch. From this arch proceeded four branches, the smaller of which went to the inner edge of the little finger, the next bifurcated to supply the opposed sides of the little and ring fingers, the third bifurcated to supply the opposed sides of the ring and middle fingers, but the fourth, a pitiable vessel, ran to the head of the third metacarpal bone, and there joined a large digital trunk derived from the deep palmar arch. The continued trunk of this radial artery, at length sensibly diminished, took its usual course to form the deep palmar arch. At the proximal end of the metacarpal bone of the index finger, the large digital artery, already alluded to (merely acknowledging the receipt of the fourth superficial palmar artery), bifurcated to supply the opposed sides of the middle and index fingers. After forming the deep palmar arch, which sent off the usual arteries to the smaller palmar muscles, the radial trunk ran under the cover of the muscular mass of the little finger, sending numerous branches therein, and then playfully turned upwards under the annular ligament, and united with the large interosseal artery from the ulnar.

---

* Green on the "Varieties in the Arterial System," p. 21.

† Op. Cit., p. 19.

‡ Tied. Tab. Art., p. 169.

"In this very uncommon, if not unique, distribution of arteries, we find the radial (a huge trunk) taking its usual course, and supplying the palm of the hand and all the fingers. Intent upon this purpose, it sends off but few, and these small, muscular branches, and a superficialis volæ of no account; and, merely condescending to make an intimacy with the ulnar and interosseal arteries, it takes upon itself, not alone to form the superficial palmar arch, but to form it much less in extent than the deep palmar arch,—the arch which it forms in the natural distribution, and which is in such case much the smaller.

"On the left side of this subject the brachial artery divided as usual; but here the ulnar artery was very large and the radial artery very small. The radial, *immediately after its origin*, sent off the superficialis volæ, which vessel, though nearly the length of the fore-arm, was very delicate, and, after detaching several small muscular branches, lost itself in the muscles of the thumb, without participating in the formation of the palmar arch. In its course, it occupied the position of the radial artery. The radial trunk itself ran very superficially, and, at the junction of the middle and inferior thirds of the fore-arm, turned round the edge of the radius to the space between the metacarpal bones of the thumb and index finger, where it sent off the palmaris profunda to form the deep palmar arch in the usual manner, the radialis indicis and the princeps pollicis, and, in addition, a second palmaris profunda, which formed, by joining the trunk of the ulnar artery, a second deep palmar arch.

"The large ulnar sent off its recurrent branches, a posterior interosseal artery, two anterior interosseal arteries, and a long muscular artery. At the wrist it sent off its usual communicating artery, and in the palm of the hand, having received the second deep palmar branch of the radial, it supplied, as usual, three fingers and a half, without, however, forming any superficial palmar arch.

"The practical inferences to be deduced from these unusual distributions are plain, and of some importance. Had this individual been the subject of illness during her life, a very erroneous estimate of its intensity must have been indicated by the pulse; and did the practitioner depend chiefly on its condition, his practice would have been guided by the wrist he felt it at. Here, if the right pulse be felt, from the size of the radial, depletory measures would in all likelihood have been pursued; and were it the left, an opposite mode of treatment may have been adopted; and if both wrists were examined, they would, at the least, have given cause for deliberation in the case.

"In addition to the varieties of arteries always being, when they exist, a source of difficulty when a vessel is required to be secured, this individual, did she require to have her left fore-arm amputated, would have presented to the surgeon no less than seven considerable arteries for the ligature."

VARIETIES OF THE ABDOMINAL AORTA.

The aorta sometimes bifurcates at the third lumbar vertebra, or as high as the second,* or immediately after giving off the renal arteries.† Dr. Green met with the following varieties in this vessel:—In a child born with imperforate anus, the aorta divided in the lumbar region into two branches; *one* of which gave off the inferior mesenteric, then crossed to the back of the bladder, and ascended along the median line to bifurcate at the umbilicus: *the other* branch, situated behind the former, was reflected towards the right sacro-iliac symphysis: having supplied the left side of the pelvis and left lower extremity, the continuation of it became the right femoral: the arch of the aorta gave off three branches: first, a trunk common to both carotids; secondly, a left subclavian; thirdly, a right subclavian, which crossed behind the œsophagus. The left kidney and renal artery were wanting. A case of obliteration of the aorta immediately below its arch is related by Dessault.* It appeared, from examination of the body, that during life the blood which was expelled from the heart must have been transmitted into the trunk of the aorta below the constriction, by passing through the subclavian, axillary, and cervical arteries. From these latter it passed into the vessels of the thoracic and abdominal viscera, and those of the lower extremities. Dr. Graham, of Glasgow, published another example of complete obstruction of the aorta just below the ductus arteriosus.† There are several other cases of this kind recorded.

---

* "Anatom. Societ. a. g. Mars," 1835.

† Journal des Progrès, 1828, vol. viii. p. 191.

The following instances, having occurred in the abdominal region, are more to our present purpose. M. A. Severin speaks of an obstruction of the aorta beneath the emulgent arteries. Monro describes an obliteration of this vessel above the common iliac arteries. Crampton also saw it obliterated in the abdominal region; and Larrey and Key have described similar cases. Dr. Goodison, of Wicklow, examined at Paris the body of a woman in whom the aorta was obliterated immediately beneath the inferior mesenteric artery. The left common iliac artery was impervious in its entire length, and the right common iliac in one-half: the limbs did not appear at all emaciated.‡ The history of this case could not be ascertained. The late Sir P. Crampton examined the preparation, and was of opinion that the obliteration was the effect of a process by which an aneurism had been spontaneously cured. In all the above cases, the circulation had been established below the obstruction; and in none, except the cases of Larrey and Key, did there appear to have been any weakness in the limbs.

---

* Dessault's Journal, vol. ii.

† Med. Chir. Trans., vol. v. p. 287.

‡ Dub. Hosp. Rep., vol. ii. p. 193.

VARIETIES OF THE CŒLIAC AXIS.—The Cœliac axis may be deficient; or it may give off only the hepatic and splenic arteries; or the hepatic, splenic, and capsular; or it may, in addition to its usual branches, give off the phrenic and gastro-epiploica dextra, or the superior mesenteric.

VARIETIES OF THE GASTRIC, OR CORONARIA VENTRICULI ARTERY.—This artery has been found arising from the aorta, in common with one of the phrenics; and it frequently gives a branch to the liver.

VARIETIES OF THE HEPATIC ARTERY.—This has been said to be wanting. There may be two hepatic arteries; one from the cœliac axis, and the other from the aorta, or from the gastric artery. The hepatic artery may come directly from the aorta or from the superior mesenteric artery. Accessary branches from the renal, or from other sources, may be expended in the liver.

VARIETIES OF THE SUPERIOR MESENTERIC ARTERY.—This artery sometimes arises in common with the cœliac axis. It has been known to give off an hepatic artery, and in another case it gave off the gastro-epiploica dextra.

The superior mesenteric artery may be absent; or its branches may not anastomose with those of the inferior mesenteric artery; or it may be double. In a case of high division of the aorta, the superior mesenteric has come from the internal iliac.

VARIETIES OF THE INFERIOR MESENTERIC ARTERY.—This artery may be wanting. In a very remarkable case where the right kidney and its artery were absent, the common iliac arteries were united by a transverse branch, and from the left common iliac came off the inferior mesenteric.*

VARIETIES OF THE PHRENIC ARTERIES.—Both phrenics have been found arising by a common origin from the right emulgent; or they may arise by a common origin from the aorta; or one or both may come from the cœliac axis. Sometimes they arise from the first lumbar, but rarely from the gastric or renal.

VARIETIES OF THE CAPSULAR ARTERIES.—These arteries are very small in the adult, but as large as the renal in the fœtus: there are often three or four of them. The supra-renal capsules have arteries from three different sources, viz.: from the inferior phrenic, from the aorta, and from the renal arteries.

VARIETIES OF THE RENAL ARTERIES.—These arteries are liable to many varieties, affecting their number, origin, direction, and branches given off from them. *Number.*—In some cases there are two on one or both sides: when this occurs on the right side, one branch usually goes behind and the other in front of the inferior cava. Occasionally there is a distinct artery sent to one of the extremities of the kidneys; this may be either a branch of the renal, or it may arise separately from the aorta, internal iliac, or middle sacral, or from the common iliac. In one very extraordinary case the kidney was placed transversely in the pelvis and supplied by the middle sacral artery.† Portal saw the right and left arteries arise by a common origin from the aorta. The right renal artery and kidney may be absent. *Origin.*—The renal artery may arise lower down than usual from the aorta; or it may come from the common or internal iliac: this is more likely to occur when the kidney is found in the iliac fossa, as sometimes happens. Cruveilhier has seen an accessary branch, from the bifurcation of the aorta, go to the kidney in this situation. Meckel has seen the two renal arteries arise by a common trunk from the front of the aorta. *Direction.*—The renal arteries usually form somewhat less than a right angle with the continued trunk; but their direction must obviously vary according as they rise high or low. In some cases in which there were two renal arteries on one side, they were found twisted on each other like the umbilical arteries.

---

* Petsch, Syl. Observ. Anat. Select., § 76.

† Archives Générales, Fév. 1835.

Branches from the Renal Arteries.—The spermatic arteries on one or both sides may arise from these arteries.

VARIETIES OF THE SPERMATIC ARTERIES.—The spermatic artery on one or both sides may come from the renal: this is more likely to occur on the right side than on the left. Sometimes they arise from the aorta by a common trunk; and Cruveilhier has seen the left one arise from the aorta as low down as the inferior mesenteric.

The spermatic artery may likewise arise from the capsular; or from the external or internal iliac; or from the lumbar, or even from the epigastric.

VARIETIES OF THE COMMON ILIAC ARTERY.—The common iliac artery has been known to give off the middle sacral, also the lateral sacral, and in some cases the ilio-lumbar. We have referred already to cases in which the renal artery arose from it, and to another case, in which the inferior mesenteric artery arose from the left common iliac.

VARIETIES OF THE UMBILICAL ARTERY.—These arteries have been known to unite, and form a single trunk, and many cases are recorded in which the artery of one side was absent.

VARIETIES OF THE OBTURATOR ARTERY.—The obturator artery not unfrequently comes off from the epigastric; and fig. 46, on page 293, represents three different routes which it may take, in order to arrive at the obturator foramen. First, it may arise from the internal iliac, and accompany the obturator nerve; this is its usual origin and course. Secondly, it may arise from the epigastric, and descend, without crossing the femoral ring, towards the obturator foramen. Thirdly, it may arise from the epigastric, and get to the inside of the ring, by running along its anterior margin, *i.e.* along Poupart's ligament. These two last varieties are marked G, G, in the figure. It may arise from the epigastric and pass obliquely along the horizontal ramus of the pubis internally, and then dip into the obturator foramen.

It is evident, that it is only when the irregular obturator passes along the back of Poupart's ligament, and coasts along the internal margin of the femoral ring in order to reach the obturator foramen, that it can be endangered in the operation for the relief of strangulated femoral hernia. This peculiarity in its course was first pointed out by Mr. Wardrop, who relates two cases of this kind, one seen by himself and Dr. Barclay, in Edinburgh; and another by himself, in Paris.*

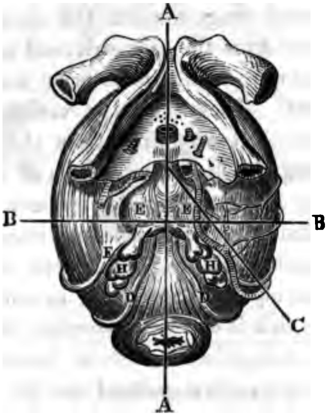
The obturator artery may also arise from the external iliac, or from the femoral, or by a double root from the internal iliac and obturator. Green relates a case in which it was wanting on one side, and its place supplied by branches of the profunda. The preparation is in the late Dr. M'Cartney's museum.

VARIETIES OF THE PUDIC ARTERY.—The trunk of the pudic artery, in some cases, instead of going out of the pelvis through the great sciatic notch, descends along the inferior surface of the bladder, and then over the prostate gland, to be distributed to the penis, or it may keep close to the outer edge of the vesicula seminalis and then pass close to the inferior surface of the corresponding lateral lobe of the prostate gland delineated in figure 72.

---

* Med. and Surg. Journal for 1806.

Fig. 72.—Represents the Abnormal Course of the Left Internal Pudic Artery, under the left lobe of the Prostate (after Maclise).



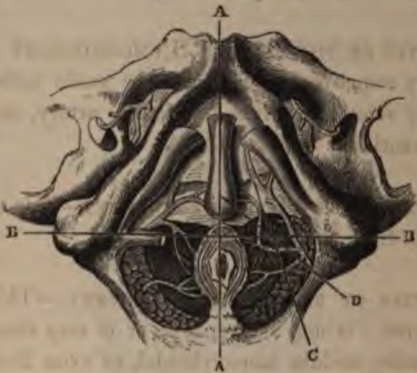
A, A, Median Line intersecting B, B, dividing the deeper parts into Anterior and Posterior Regions. C, Incision showing that the Pudic Artery must be divided when it runs this course. D, D, Vas Deferens of each side. E, E, Right and Left Lobes of the Prostate. F, Ureter. H, H, Vesiculæ Seminales.

VARIETY OF THE ARTERY OF THE BULB.—This artery may arise far back from the pudic, opposite to the tuber ischii, and, running in a tortuous direction internally, may thus reach its destination. This variety is delineated in figure 73.

VARIETIES OF THE DORSAL ARTERY OF THE PENIS.—This artery sometimes comes directly from the iliac, and passes along the side of the prostate gland, to arrive at its destination. The late Dr. M'Dowel remarked that this variety was more frequent on the left than on the right side.

Dr. Green has seen the dorsal artery arising from the obturator, which was given off from the femoral a little below Poupart's ligament. Cruveilhier has seen the dorsal artery of the penis arise from the superficial or external pudic, near the aperture for the saphena vein, and, after forming a curvature in the groin, with its convexity turned downwards, proceed along the lateral surface of the penis. In another case, in addition to its usual root, which was diminutive, it had a second of considerable size, which arose from the obturator artery, and passed under the symphysis pubis, to join the former.

Fig. 73.—Represents the Surgical Anatomy of the Male Perineum, the Artery of the Bulb arising farther back than usual, opposite the Tuber Ischii (after Maclise).



A, A, Median Line, intersecting B, B, dividing the Perineum into the Anterior and Posterior Regions. C, D, Lines showing the course of incisions which would divide the Artery of the Bulb in a case of this Abnormal Origin; or the Internal Pudic Artery in case the Incision be carried too far outwards. An incision, which C represents, would also divide the Artery of the Bulb in its Normal Situation.

VARIETIES OF THE ILIO-LUMBAR ARTERY.—This vessel not unfrequently comes from the glutæal: sometimes it is double,—its iliac and lumbar branches arising separately. Its size often seems to depend on the number of lumbar arteries;

the ilio-lumbar being small whenever there happens to be a fifth lumbar artery.

VARIETIES OF THE LATERAL SACRAL ARTERY.—This artery sometimes arises from the ilio-lumbar, and frequently from the glutæal. Occasionally, instead of forming an arch inferiorly, it terminates by entering the last sacral foramen.

VARIETIES OF THE MIDDLE HÆMORRHOIDAL ARTERY.—This artery sometimes comes from the pudic before it leaves the pelvis; sometimes from the sciatic artery, and occasionally it is wanting.

VARIETIES OF THE UTERINE ARTERY.—This vessel sometimes arises from the internal pudic.

VARIETIES OF THE VAGINAL ARTERY.—This artery is very irregular; it may be wanting, or it may come from the uterine, pudic, middle hæmorrhoidal, or even from the obturator.

VARIETIES OF THE EPIGASTRIC ARTERY.—This artery may arise higher up than usual; or it may arise in common with the obturator, or from the upper part of the femoral, or from the profunda femoris.

VARIETIES OF THE CIRCUMFLEXA ILII ARTERY.—This vessel is sometimes double. It may arise from the femoral or from the epigastric.

VARIETIES OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY.

This artery is sometimes double: Gooch has cited three examples; Velpeau mentions a fourth, and refers to Casamayor, who saw a fifth. In Velpeau's case the supernumerary artery gave off the branches usually given off by the profunda; and its peculiarity seems to consist in its having afterwards preserved sufficient size to descend below the knee. Sir C. Bell found the femoral artery dividing into two equal trunks, which afterwards united to form the popliteal: Mr. Houston has described a similar instance. Another variety consists in a high bifurcation of the vessel. Sandifort relates a case in which the artery divided a little below Poupart's ligament into two vessels, the continuations of which were the posterior tibial and peroneal arteries; and Portal refers to a case in which it divided high up in the femoral region into two vessels, the continuations of which formed two popliteal arteries.

VARIETIES OF THE PROFUNDA FEMORIS.—This artery sometimes arises within the pelvis from the external iliac; this is its regular origin in birds. In the case in which Mr. James tied the aorta, the profunda arose above Poupart's ligament and gave off the epigastric.

VARIETIES OF THE EXTERNAL CIRCUMFLEX FEMORIS.—This artery may arise after the internal circumflex, or in common with it; or it may arise from the femoral, or be large enough to appear as a branch of bifurcation from the profunda.

VARIETIES OF THE INTERNAL CIRCUMFLEX FEMORIS.—This vessel sometimes comes off before the external circumflex; sometimes directly from the femoral, sometimes from the external iliac, or it may arise by a common trunk with the external circumflex.

VARIETIES OF THE POPLITEAL ARTERY.—The principal varieties of this artery are included in those of the femoral. We have only to add that the popliteal artery sometimes divides at one point into three branches; viz.: the anterior and posterior tibial, and fibular. In a remarkable case referred to by Dr. Green, the popliteal artery was a continuation of the sciatic, the femoral having terminated at the knee-joint. In this case the internal iliac artery was much larger than the external. Either the two superior or the two inferior articular branches may arise by a common trunk.

VARIETIES OF THE ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.—This artery may arise above the popliteus muscle and descend across it. Or when it has arrived in the anterior region of the leg, Pelletan observes that it may descend immediately under the integument and not between the muscles. In some instances it may be expended at the lower part of the leg, and its place on the dorsum of the foot supplied by the anterior peroneal; or the artery may be altogether absent, in which case its place is supplied by perforating branches of the posterior tibial.

VARIETIES OF THE POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY.—This vessel may be deficient, and its place supplied by branches of the fibular, or there may be two in the same limb, as observed by Dr. Green, or it may arise higher or lower than usual.

VARIETIES OF THE PERONEAL ARTERY.—We have already seen that the *anterior peroneal artery* may be of considerable size, and may take the place of the anterior tibial upon the dorsum of the foot; giving off the tarsal, metatarsal, dorsalis pollicis, and communicating branches. In such cases there is an arrest of development of the anterior tibial artery, so that its termination on the dorsum of the foot is exceedingly diminished in size, and anastomoses directly with the above variety of the anterior peroneal.

THE END.

MILITARY BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

PHILADELPHIA.

Major-General McClellan's Works.

The Armies of Europe: comprising descriptions in detail of the Military Systems of England, France, Russia, Prussia, Austria, and Sardinia. Adapting their advantages to all arms of the United States Service. Embodying the Report of Observations in Europe during the Crimean War, as Military Commissioner from the United States Government in 1855–56. By GEO. B. MCCLELLAN, Major-General U.S. Army. Originally published under the direction of the War Department, by order of Congress. 1 vol. 8vo. Illustrated with a fine steel Portrait and several hundred Engravings. $3.50.

This most interesting volume, prepared with great labor by General MCCLELLAN, from copious notes taken during his tour of observation in Europe, under orders from the War Department, opens to the reader much of his own military history and culture. Here will be found his matured views on subjects of immediate and absorbing interest, and the noble and bold suggestions contained herein he is now in position to realize, and is, in fact, every day applying in practice. The book is a striking prophecy, of which his present position and his assured fame are the bright fulfilment.

Regulations and Instructions for the Field Service of the U.S. Cavalry in Time of War. By GEO. B. MCCLELLAN, Major-General U.S. Army. To which is added, the Basis of Instruction for the U.S. Cavalry, from the authorized Tactics,—including the formation of regiments and squadrons, the duties and posts of officers, lessons in the training and use of the horse,—illustrated by numerous diagrams, with the signals and calls now in use; also, instructions for officers and non-commissioned officers on outpost and patrol duty. With a drill for the use of cavalry as skirmishers, mounted and dismounted. 1 vol. 12mo. Fully illustrated. $1.50

European Cavalry, including details of the organization of the Cavalry Service among the principal nations of Europe; comprising England, France, Russia, Prussia, Austria, and Sardinia. By Geo. B. McClellan, Major-General U.S. Army. 1 vol. 12mo. Fully illustrated. $1.25.

Manual of Bayonet Exercises. Prepared for the Use of the Army of the United States. By Geo. B. McClellan, Major-General U.S. Army. Printed by order of the War Department. 1 vol. 12mo. Fully illustrated. $1.25.

United States Infantry Tactics. For the Instruction, Exercise, and Manœuvres of the U.S. Infantry, including Infantry of the Line, Light Infantry, and Riflemen. Prepared under the direction of the War Department, and authorized and adopted by Simon Cameron, Secretary of War. Containing the School of the Soldier, the School of the Company, Instructions for Skirmishers, the General Calls, the Calls for Skirmishers, the School of the Battalion, the Articles of War, and a Dictionary of Military Terms. 1 vol. complete, illustrated with numerous Engravings. $1.25.

War Department, Washington, May 1, 1861.

This System of United States Infantry Tactics for Light Infantry and Riflemen, prepared under the direction of the War Department, having been approved by the President, is adopted for the instruction of the troops when acting as Light Infantry or Riflemen, and, under the act of May 12, 1820, for the observance of the militia when so employed.

SIMON CAMERON, *Secretary of War.*

Cooke's U.S. Cavalry Tactics. Cavalry Tactics; or, Regulations for the Instruction, Formations, and Movements of the Cavalry of the Army and Volunteers of the United States. Prepared under the direction of the War Department, and authorized and adopted by the Secretary of War, Nov. 1, 1861. By Philip St. George Cooke, Brigadier-General U.S. Army. In two vols. 18mo. $1.50.

Vol. I. School of the Trooper, of the Platoon, and of the Squadron.
Vol. II. Evolutions of a Regiment and of the Line.

Revised Regulations for the Army of the United States. 1861 By authority of the President of the United States and the Secretary of War. With a full Index. 1 vol. 8vo. 559 pp. *$1.75.*

Jomini's Art of War. The Art of War. By BARON DE JOMINI, General and Aid-de-Camp of the Emperor of Russia. A New Edition, with Appendices and Maps. Translated from the French by Capt. G. H. MENDELL, U.S.A., Corps of Topographical Engineers, and Lieut. W. P. CRAIGHILL, U.S.A., Corps of Engineers. Demi 8vo. $1.50.

A new translation is here presented of the well-known standard work of one of the ablest modern military critics and historians. It treats fully of strategy and tactics, of the relation of diplomacy to war, of various branches of military policy, and many other important topics connected with the science of arms. An excellent index and several supplementary essays enhance the value of the volume.—*N. Y. Tribune.*

In a small octavo volume, Jomini treats of strategy and tactics, grand tactics, the art of moving armies, and the formation of troops for battle, in a manner which the world has agreed to call *masterly*. . . . While everybody is criticizing the war, would it not be well for somebody to read this greatest of military critics, and know a mere smattering about the matters so dogmatically discussed? With the utmost diffidence or the utmost assurance, it might be convenient occasionally in conversation to back up an opinion by an allusion to the Baron de Jomini, General and Aid-de-Camp of the Emperor of Russia. *It must be confessed that he knows something about war.—Conn. Courant.*

It is a book to be *studied*, not skimmed. Jomini is the first of living military critics.—*The Press.*

To one who desires to be well informed on the principles, science, and art of war, this work is most invaluable.—*Chicago Journal.*

Marmont's Military Institutions. The Spirit of Military Institutions; or, Essential Principles of the Art of War. By MARSHAL MARMONT, Duke of Ragusa. Translated from the latest edition, revised and corrected by the Author, with Illustrative Notes, by HENRY COPPÉE, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania, late an Officer of Artillery in the Service of the United States.

This book contains, in a small compass, the principles of the art of war, as learned and practiced by this great marshal during the Napoleonic wars. It treats of strategy, tactics, and grand tactics,—of the organization and formation of armies,—the principles of fortification,—of military justice, wars offensive and defensive, marches and encampments, reconnoissances, battles,—and various important topics, including the tactics of the three arms as applied in actual movements before the enemy,—with the peculiar characteristics and duties of general officers.

The Ordnance Manual, for the use of the Officers of the Army and others. Prepared under the direction of the War Department. Third edition. 1 vol. demi-8vo. Fully illustrated. $2.50.

CONTENTS.—CHAP. I. Ordnance. II. Shot and Shell. III. Artillery Carriages. IV. Machines, etc., for Siege and Garrison Service. V. Artillery Implements and Equipments. VI. Artillery Harness and Cavalry Equipments. VII. Paints, Lackers, etc. VIII. Small Arms, Swords, and Accoutrements. IX. Gunpowder, Lightning-Rods. X. Ammunition of all kinds, Fireworks. XI. Equipment of Batteries for Field, Siege, and Garrison Service. XII. Mechanical Manœuvres. XIII. Artillery Practice, Ranges, Penetration, etc. XIV. Materials, Strength of Materials. XV. Miscellaneous Information, Tables of Weights and Measures, Physical Data, Mathematical Formulæ, Ballistics, Tables, etc.

This most valuable work to persons engaged in the military service and in the preparation of any of the various military supplies, (the construction of which is given in minute detail,) will also prove useful to mechanics generally for the valuable tables and miscellaneous information which it contains.

Hardee's Rifle and Light Infantry Tactics, for the Exercise and Manœuvres of Troops when acting as Light Infantry or Riflemen. Prepared under the direction of the War Department. By Brevet Lieutenant-Colonel W. J. HARDEE, U.S.A. 2 vols. complete. VOL. I. Schools of the Soldier and Company; Instruction for Skirmishers. VOL. II. School of the Battalion. $1.50.

Henderson on the Examination of Recruits. Hints on the Medical Examination of Recruits for the Army, and on the discharge of Soldiers from service on Surgeon's Certificate. Adapted to the service of the United States. By THOMAS HENDERSON, M.D., Asst. Surgeon U.S. Army. A new edition, revised by RICHARD H. COOLIDGE, M.D., Asst. Surgeon U.S. Army. 1 vol. 12mo. $1.00.

A Manual of Military Surgery; or, Hints on the Emergencies of Field, Camp, and Hospital Practice. By S. D. GROSS, M.D., Professor of Surgery in the Jefferson Medical College of Philadelphia. 1 vol. 18mo. 50 cents.

Cavalry Tactics. Published by order of the War Department. FIRST PART.—School of the Trooper, of the Platoon and of the Squadron Dismounted. SECOND PART.—Of the Platoon and of the Squadron Mounted. THIRD PART.—Evolutions of a Regiment. 3 vols. 18mo. $3.75.

War Department, Washington, Feb. 10, 1841.

The system of Cavalry Tactics adapted to the organization of Dragoon regiments, having been approved by the President of the United States, is now published for the government of the said service.

Accordingly, instruction in the same will be given after the method pointed out therein; and all additions to, or departures from, the exercises and manœuvres laid down in this system are positively forbidden.

J. R. POINSETT, *Secretary of War.*

Instruction in Field Artillery. Prepared by a Board of Artillery Officers. 1 vol. demi-8vo. $2.50.

Baltimore, Md., Jan. 15, 1859.

COL. S. COOPER, Adjt. Gen. U.S.A.

SIR:—The Light Artillery Board assembled by Special Orders No. 134, of 1856, and Special Orders No. 116, of 1858, has the honor to submit a revised system of Light Artillery Tactics and Regulations recommended for that arm.

WM. H. FRENCH, Bt. Major, Captain First Artillery.
WILLIAM F. BARRY, Captain Second Artillery.
HENRY J. HUNT, Bt. Major, Captain Second Artillery.

War Department, March 6, 1860.

The system of instruction for Field Artillery, prepared by a Board of Light Artillery Officers, pursuant to orders from this Department, having been approved by the President, is herewith published for the information and government of the army.

All exercises, manœuvres, and forms of parade not embraced in this system are prohibited in the Light Artillery, and those herein prescribed will be strictly observed.

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF WAR.

The Handy-Book for the United States Soldier, ON COMING INTO SERVICE. Containing a Complete System of Instruction in the School of the Soldier; embracing the Manual for the Rifle and Musket, with a preliminary explanation of the Formation of a Battalion on Parade, the Position of the Officers, &c. &c. Also, Instructions for Street-Firing. Being a First Book or Introduction to the authorized United States Infantry Tactics. Complete in 1 vol. 128 pages, illustrated. 25 cents.

To the recruit just mustered into service, the system of tactics seems extensive and difficult.

The design of this little Handy-Book is to divide the instruction, and, by presenting a complete system for the drill of the individual soldier, to prepare him for the use and study of the authorized United States Infantry Tactics, in the school of the company and the battalion.

Evolutions of the Line. Field Manual of Evolutions of the Line, arranged in a tabular form, for the use of officers of the United States Infantry; being a sequel to the authorized United States Infantry Tactics. Translated, with adaptation to the United States Service, from the latest French authorities, by Captain Henry Coppée, late Instructor in the United States Military Academy at West Point. 18mo. 50 cents.

From Brigadier-General J. K. A. Mansfield, U.S.A.

I received in due time your little book of the "Evolutions of the Line." I am delighted with it. It is the best thing of the kind I have seen. It is concise, to the point in every particular, and deserves the exclusive patronage of the Government.

Manual of Battalion Drill. The Field Manual of Battalion Drill, containing all the movements and manœuvres in the School of the Battalion, with the commands arranged in tabular forms and properly explained. Translated from the French, with adaptation to the United States Service, by Captain Henry Coppée, late Instructor in the United States Military Academy at West Point. 18mo. 50 cents.

From General George A. McCall, U.S.A.

Thank you for the two beautiful little volumes,—"The Field Manual of Battalion Drill," and the "Field Manual of Evolutions of the Line." I have examined them with great care, and I have much pleasure in assuring you that in my estimation you have brought forth the very best thing of its kind that could possibly have been produced at this particular time. Greatly condensed, it is still full enough to satisfy the student, and is, in fact, the best *vade-mecum* I have ever seen.

From General John E. Wool, U.S.A.

I am greatly obliged for the volumes of your "Field Manual of Battalion Drill" and "Evolutions of the Line." The arrangement is no less admirable than it is well calculated to aid the officer in acquiring with ease and facility the "battalion drill," as well as the "evolutions of the line." Altogether, I think them the best Field Manuals I have ever seen. I hope the whole army will be furnished with both volumes.

Manual for Courts-Martial. A Manual for Courts-Martial, containing full Explanations of the Duties of all Officers employed on such Service, with complete Forms of Proceedings. By Captain Henry Coppée, late Instructor in the United States Military Academy at West Point. (Nearly ready.)

MILITARY PUBLICATIONS.

Will the

LANE MEDICAL LIBRARY

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on or before the date last stamped below.

Guth Var
in of
Ro ing
to t ade
dui ery
on S.
On

Macl the
Wa not
Wo to
the li-
tar vol.
12r

Jomi er,
Ge di-
tio by
Ca nd
Lie mi
8vo

Marn ns,
fro pt.
He a-
der

Cook for
the the
Ar the
dir by
the n,
Bri

Revised Army Regulations. Revised Regulations for the Army of the United States, 1861. By authority of the President of the United States and the Secretary of War. With a full Index. Just published. One vol. 8vo.

MILITARY PUBLICATIONS.

ield Artillery. Instruction in Field Artillery. Prepared by a Board of Artillery Officers. One vol. 8vo. $2.50.

Hardee's Tactics. ifle and Light Infantry Tactics, for the Exercise
and Manœuvres o
 Light Infantry or Rifle-
men. Prepared
Brevet Lieutena
plete. $1.50.

United States In
Exercise, and I
of the Line, I
direction of th
SIMON CAMER
trated with n

Instructions fo
and Non-com
The Skirmis
by the Secr

Jebb's Treat
JEBB, K.C
I. Practical
lages, Ho
in comm
Evolutio
Royal E
II. Practi
trenchm
Practic
Royal
III. Pra
Office
of th
whic
Sir

E191 Power, J.H. Anatomy
P887 of the arteries.
1862 7888

NAME	DATE DUE